

For distribution only with a new PC
User's Guide



Microsoft

WINDOWS
FOR WORKGROUPS

User's Guides

Microsoft® Windows™ for Workgroups

**Operating System
Version 3.11**

This book contains two separate manuals:

- Volume I Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for Windows
 User's Guide**
- Volume II Microsoft Windows User's Guide**

A comprehensive Index at the end of the book lists entries for both manuals. To locate a topic or Index entry in the text, be sure to look in the appropriate volume. Each volume also contains its own table of contents.

The *Microsoft Windows Users Guide* provides information about basic skills you need to use Microsoft Windows version 3.1. The *Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for Windows User's Guide* provides information about enhancements and new applications for Windows for Workgroups version 3.11. Because of these enhancements, there may be minor differences between the illustrations in the *Microsoft Windows User's Guide* and what you see on your screen when Windows for Workgroups is running. Note that because Windows for Workgroups runs in enhanced mode only, references to standard mode in the *Microsoft Windows User's Guide* are not applicable.

Microsoft Corporation

Microsoft® Workgroup Add-On for Windows™

User's Guide

For the Microsoft Windows Operating System

Microsoft Corporation

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. Companies, names, and data used in examples herein are fictitious unless otherwise noted. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Microsoft Corporation.

©1985–1993 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.
Printed in the United States of America.

Arial and Times New Roman fonts. Copyright © 1991 Monotype Corporation PLC. All rights reserved.

Microsoft, MS, and MS-DOS are registered trademarks, and Microsoft At Work, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows NT logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

3Com, Etherlink II, and 3+Open are registered trademarks of 3Com Corporation. The Symbol bitmap fonts provided with Windows version 3.1 are based on the CG Times font, a product of AGFA Compugraphic Division of Agfa Corporation. AppleTalk and TrueType are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. Banyan and VINES are registered trademarks of Banyan Systems, Inc. CompuServe is a registered trademark of CompuServe, Inc. ArcNet is a registered trademark of Datapoint Corporation. DEC and Pathworks are registered trademarks of Digital Equipment Co. Epson is a registered trademark of Epson America, Inc. GEnie is a trademark of General Electric Corporation. Hayes is a registered trademark of Hayes Microcomputer Products, Inc. Hewlett-Packard, DeskJet, HP, LaserJet, PCL, and Vectra are registered trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company. Intel is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation. IBM, OfficeVision, AT, and PS/2 are registered trademarks of International Business Machines, Inc. Arial, Monotype, and Times New Roman are registered trademarks of The Monotype Corporation PLC. Novell and NetWare are registered trademarks of Novell, Inc. 386Max is a trademark of Qualitas, Inc. QEMM is a trademark of Quarterdeck Office Systems.

Contents

What Is Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for Windows?	ix
Using Microsoft Windows for the First Time	x
Upgrading from Microsoft Windows Version 3.1	x
Upgrading from Microsoft Windows for Workgroups	xi
New Features	xii
Network Connectivity and Performance	xii
Sharing Resources: File Manager and Print Manager	xii
Electronic Mail	xiii
Built-In Fax	xiii
Scheduling Appointments Online: Schedule+	xiii
New Network Applications	xiv
Sharing Information: ClipBook Viewer	xiv
Networking Enhancements in Control Panel	xv
Other Windows Documentation	xv
Chapter 1 A Brief Overview of Microsoft Windows Networking	1
Connecting Computers Together	1
Organizing Computers into Workgroups	2
Exchanging Information	5
Sharing Resources	6
Connecting to Resources	8
Network Choices	11
What to Do Next	11
Chapter 2 Setting Up and Starting Windows for Workgroups	13
Running Setup	13
Choosing the Setup Method You Need	14
Express Setup	15
Custom Setup	15
Starting and Logging On to Windows for Workgroups	16
Logon Names and Passwords	16

Chapter 3 New File Manager and Print Manager Features	19
Setting Up Sharing for Files and Printers	19
Sharing Resources by Using File Manager	20
Changing Drives and Directories	21
Connecting to Shared Directories	21
Sharing Your Directories	23
Displaying the Names of People Using Your Shared Directory	24
Closing Files in a Shared Directory	24
Additional File Manager Toolbar Buttons	25
More Ways to Use File Manager	25
Sharing Printers by Using Print Manager	26
Before You Print	27
Connecting to a Network Printer	27
Sharing Your Printer	29
Choosing the Default Printer	30
Pausing and Resuming Printing	30
Canceling the Printing of a Document	30
Additional Print Manager Toolbar Buttons	31
More Ways to Use Print Manager	31
Chapter 4 Mail	33
Connecting to a Post Office	33
Creating Your Account	35
Signing In to Mail	36
Changing Your Password	37
Sending a Message	37
Reading a Message	38
Replying to a Message	39
Deleting a Message	40
Quitting Mail	41
The Message File	41
Additional Features of Mail	42
Chapter 5 Microsoft At Work PC Fax	43
Setting Up PC Fax	43
Using a Fax Modem Attached to Your Computer	44
Using a Fax Modem on the Network	45
Specifying the Active Fax Modem	46
Sharing Your Fax Modem	46
Stop Sharing a Fax Modem	48

Sending a Fax	48
Adding Fax Numbers to the Personal Address Book	50
Setting Fax Options	50
Managing Outgoing Faxes	51
Receiving a Fax	52
Forwarding a Fax	53
Using Security	54
Sending or Receiving a Password-Secured Fax	54
Establishing and Maintaining Advanced Security	55
Managing Security Keys	56
Sending and Receiving Key-Secured Faxes	58
Tips for Travelers	59
Chapter 6 ClipBook Viewer	61
Using the ClipBook Viewer Window	61
Saving the Contents of the Clipboard	63
Sharing Information with Other People	64
Sharing Local ClipBook Pages	64
Connecting to a ClipBook on Another Computer	65
Embedding or Linking an Object from Another Computer	66
Chapter 7 Network Applications	69
Chat	70
Log On/Off	70
Net Watcher	71
Schedule+	72
WinMeter	73
WinPopup	73
Chapter 8 Customizing Network Settings and Improving Performance	75
Customizing Microsoft Windows Network Settings	75
Customizing Network Settings by Using Control Panel	76
Enabling and Disabling Sharing by Using Setup	80
Improving Performance	81
32-Bit Disk Access	81
32-Bit File Access	82

Chapter 9 Using Other Networks	85
Setting Up Windows for Workgroups to Work with Another Network	85
Connecting to a Directory on a Network Server	86
Connecting to a Network Printer	87
Using Microsoft Windows NT and Microsoft LAN Manager	88
Appendix A Maintaining Mail	89
Creating a Workgroup Post Office	90
Verifying Disk Space	90
Creating the Post Office and the Administrator Account	90
Sharing the Workgroup Post Office	93
Starting Postoffice Manager	94
Adding a Person to the WGPO	94
Modifying an Account	95
Removing an Account	96
Managing Disk Space	96
Checking the Status of Shared Folders	96
Compressing Shared Folders	97
Managing the Mail System Files	97
Backing Up and Restoring the MSMAIL.MMF File	98
Using Mail with Other Message Systems	99
Appendix B Accessibility for People with Disabilities	101
Access Pack for Microsoft Windows	102
Keyboard Layouts for Single-Handed Users	102
Documentation on Audio Cassettes and Floppy Disks	103
Products for People Who Are Blind or Have Low Vision	103
Customizing Windows for Workgroups	104
Getting More Information	106
Appendix C Installing Network Hardware	107
Installation Overview	107
1. What You Need	108
2. Configuring Your Network Card	110
Use Default Settings When Possible	110
When to Configure the Card	111
Using Jumpers and Switches to Configure a Network Card	111
How to Determine Which Configuration Settings to Use	112

3. Installing the Network Card	116
Before You Insert the Card	116
Placing the Card in Your Computer	118
Software-Configured Cards	121
4. Connecting Cables	122
Thin Ethernet	123
Thick Ethernet	125
Twisted-Pair Ethernet	128
Token Ring	130
The Next Step	131
Appendix D Configuring Network-Adapter Drivers	133
Installing a Network-Adapter Driver	133
Removing a Network-Adapter Driver	136
Changing Protocols and Network-Adapter Settings	136
Appendix E Troubleshooting	139
Setting Up Windows for Workgroups	139
Your system locks up during the MS-DOS part of Setup	139
Windows won't start after a successful Setup	140
Using the Network Features of Windows for Workgroups	142
No network features of Windows for Workgroups are available	142
Using the Microsoft Windows Network	143
You forget your logon password for the Microsoft Windows Network	143
Other computers on the network are not listed	143
You cannot share directories on your CD-ROM drive	144
A LAN Manager server is not listed	144
A Windows NT or LAN Manager server is listed, but you cannot connect to it	145
You need to connect to or share resources before starting Windows	145
Using Novell NetWare	145
You cannot connect to a Novell NetWare server	145
Computers or NetWare servers are not listed	146
Setting Up a Network Card	146
You're trying to install a network card	147
Using Microsoft Network Diagnostics to Troubleshoot Networking Problems ..	149

Using Mail	150
You cannot create a workgroup post office.	150
The post office administrator forgets his or her password.	151
A user forgets his or her password.	151
A message file is corrupted.	151
Using Microsoft At Work PC Fax	151
You cannot configure or share a modem.	151
You tried to send a fax from an application, but your system locked up.	151
Mail locks up.	152
You add a network modem, but you still can't send faxes.	152
You set up PC Fax, but could not add a fax address to the Personal Address Book.	152
You attached a document to a fax, and the icon for the document flashes.	152
You sent a fax by using a shared modem in someone else's computer, but the fax is waiting in the queue.	152
You want to use a modem speed higher than 9600 bps.	152
Streamlining the CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files	153

What Is Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for Windows?

Microsoft® Workgroup Add-On for Windows™ adds integrated networking capabilities and additional features to the Microsoft Windows version 3.1 operating system to give you Microsoft Windows for Workgroups version 3.11.

This book describes how to use these networking capabilities and additional features.

This chapter describes how to get started if you are:

- Using Microsoft Windows for the first time or upgrading from versions earlier than version 3.1.
- Upgrading from Microsoft Windows version 3.1.
- Upgrading from Microsoft Windows for Workgroups version 3.1.

Windows for Workgroups version 3.11:

- **Offers networking that's easy to set up, use, and maintain.**

The Setup program detects which network-adaptor you're using, making setting up easy. The familiar Windows interface and new toolbars make connecting to network resources as easy as pointing and clicking. There are many security features, such as password-protected logon.

- **Provides all the software you need to start a cost-effective network.**

Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 provides the networking software you need to gain access to files and printers on other computers and share files and printers on your own computer.

You can communicate easily with other people, using applications such as Mail, Microsoft At Work™ PC Fax, and Schedule+, all included with Windows for Workgroups version 3.11.

- **Integrates easily with server-based systems when you're ready to grow.**

You can setup Windows for Workgroups without a network and add a network later, if needed. You can use a variety of networks, including server-based systems such as Windows NT™ Advanced Server and Novell® NetWare®, giving you room to grow without changing your desktop software.

- **Improves the performance of your computer.**

New 32-bit software components speed up access to network resources by as much as 100% and speed up access to data on a hard disk drive by as much as 50% over Windows version 3.1 and Windows for Workgroups version 3.1.

Using Microsoft Windows for the First Time

If you are setting up Microsoft Windows for the first time or are using a version of Windows earlier than 3.1, read this section.

The following table shows minimum software and hardware requirements.

Component	Requirement
Computer	386SX or higher processor.
MS-DOS	Version 3.3 or later. Version 6.0 or later is recommended. (To check your version, type <code>ver</code> at the command prompt.)
Memory	3 MB of RAM; 4 MB is recommended. With networking capability turned off, only 2 MB are required.
Disk space	10.5 MB of free disk space; 15.5 MB is recommended.
Components	One floppy disk drive. Display adapter (monitor) that works with Windows version 3.1. A color VGA or better resolution monitor is recommended.
Network hardware	To connect your computer to other computers by using the Microsoft Windows Network or other networks, you need cables and a network adapter (network card) that are Microsoft Windows-compatible.
Fax	To send or receive faxes, you need a Class 1, Class 2, or Communications Application Specification (CAS) fax modem or network access to one. You need a Class 1 fax modem for binary file transfers.
Options	Microsoft Mouse or compatible pointing device. A mouse is recommended. Hayes® or compatible modem. Audio board. CD-ROM drive.

If you plan to set up Windows for Workgroups 3.11 *with networking*, read Appendix C of this guide, "Installing Network Hardware," and Chapter 2, "Setting Up and Starting Windows for Workgroups," followed by your *Microsoft Windows User's Guide*.

If you plan to set up Windows for Workgroups 3.11 *without networking*, read Chapter 2 of this guide, "Setting Up and Starting Windows for Workgroups," followed by your *Microsoft Windows User's Guide*.

Upgrading from Microsoft Windows Version 3.1

Before upgrading to Windows for Workgroups version 3.11, make sure your computer system meets the following requirements.

Component	Requirement
Computer	386SX or higher processor.
MS-DOS	Version 3.3 or later. Version 6.0 or later is recommended. (To check your version, type ver at the command prompt.)
Memory	3 MB of RAM; 4 MB is recommended. With networking capability turned off, only 2 MB are required.
Disk space	4.5 MB of free disk space; 9.5 MB is recommended.
Network hardware	To connect your computer to other computers by using the Microsoft Windows Network or other networks, you need cables and a network adapter (network card) that are Microsoft Windows-compatible.
Fax	To send or receive faxes, you need a Class 1, Class 2, or Communications Application Specification (CAS) fax modem or network access to one. You need a Class 1 fax modem for binary file transfers.

If you plan to set up Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 *with networking*, read Appendix C of this guide, “Installing Network Hardware,” and then Chapter 2, “Setting Up and Starting Windows for Workgroups.”

If you plan to set up Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 *without networking*, read Chapter 2 of this guide, “Setting Up and Starting Windows for Workgroups.”

Upgrading from Microsoft Windows for Workgroups

The network hardware that you used with Windows for Workgroups version 3.1 should work with no modifications.

Before upgrading, make sure your computer system meets the following requirements. Then read Chapter 2 of this guide, “Setting Up and Starting Windows for Workgroups.”

Component	Requirement
Computer	386SX or higher processor.
Memory	3 MB of RAM; 4 MB is recommended. With networking capability turned off, only 2 MB are required.
MS-DOS	Version 3.3 or later. Version 6.0 or later is recommended. (To check your version, type ver at the command prompt.)
Disk space	4.5 MB of free disk space; 9.5 MB is recommended.
Fax	To send or receive faxes, you need a Class 1, Class 2, or Communications Application Specification (CAS) fax modem or network access to one. You need a Class 1 fax modem for binary file transfers.

New Features

The networking features of Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 make it easy for you to communicate and share information with other people.

Network Connectivity and Performance

Networking is now much easier.

- You can use Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 with a wide variety of leading network software. Using the Microsoft Windows Network, you can set up a network quickly with other people in your office who are using Windows for Workgroups. If you or other people are using compatible networks, such as Novell NetWare or Banyan® VINES®, you can use Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 to gain access to information on those networks as well. If you're not ready to use a network now, you can easily set one up later from within Windows for Workgroups.
- Network performance is improved. New 32-bit network software speeds performance and conserves memory so that more is available for your MS-DOS-based applications.

Sharing Resources: File Manager and Print Manager

Using File Manager and Print Manager, you can share resources, such as directories and printers. You can also monitor how shared resources are being used.



File Manager now includes the ability to share directories on your computer so that other people can use your files. Also, you can use files and directories that others are sharing. An icon marks directories you are sharing. You can also view the names of people who are using your shared directories.



Using Print Manager, you can designate a printer to be shared so that other people can connect to and print to it. Icons make it easy for you to see which printers are connected to your computer and which printers you are sharing. The printer queue shown in the Print Manager window lists documents that you and others have sent to shared printers.

Using the toolbar in File Manager and in Print Manager, you can perform common file and print management tasks with a click of the mouse. The status bar (at the bottom of the File Manager or Print Manager window) displays information about the task you're performing.

Electronic Mail



Mail

Mail is an application that you can use to exchange files and electronic messages with people on your network. You can also print your messages, organize and store messages in folders, and search for messages.

Using object linking and embedding (OLE), you can embed objects, such as cells from a spreadsheet and text or graphics from a document, within a message.

Built-In Fax



Fax

Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 has built-in fax software, called Microsoft At Work PC Fax. You can send and receive faxes whether or not you're using a network. PC Fax works just like Mail, so it's easy to learn and to use. If you are using the Microsoft Windows Network, you can share a fax modem with other people on the network, and you can send a message to a group of people—to some people via fax, and to some via electronic mail.

You can send and receive faxes from a variety of fax machines and from computers equipped with fax modems. You have a choice of sending and receiving faxes as images or as copies of original documents (such as Microsoft Excel spreadsheets). You have a wide range of options for customizing your faxes, such as delaying their send times until phone rates are lowest or enhancing the image of a fax for printing.

By using the security features, you can ensure that no one but the intended recipient can read the faxes you send. You can also use a digital signature to identify yourself legally as the sender of a fax.

Scheduling Appointments Online: Schedule+



Schedule+

You can use Schedule+ to keep track of appointments and tasks and to record notes to yourself. If you want to carry your schedule with you, you can print copies in a size that fits your personal organizer.

You can also set up meetings with others in your workgroup without leaving your desk, and share your schedule so that others in your group can view it or set up appointments and tasks for you.

New Network Applications

The following network applications are included with Windows for Workgroups version 3.11.



Chat

- **Chat**

You can use Chat to communicate with up to seven other workgroup members at a time by typing messages back and forth.



Net Watcher

- **Net Watcher**

You can use Net Watcher to monitor how other people are using your shared resources, such as files, directories, and printers. You can also view an event log that shows which resources have been used at what time.



WinMeter

- **WinMeter**

You can use WinMeter to monitor the performance of your system. WinMeter shows how much of your processing time is taken up by your tasks and by the tasks of people who are using your shared resources.



WinPopup

- **WinPopup**

You can use WinPopup to send and receive messages to and from another person or computer, or you can send a message simultaneously to all members of a workgroup. WinPopup can notify you when a printer has finished printing a document.



Log On/Off

- **Log On/Off**

You can log on to or off of Windows for Workgroups at any time, making it easy for more than one person to use a computer and protecting your resources that have passwords.



Network Setup

- **Network Setup**

You can choose which network you want to use, set up file and printer sharing, or change network drivers.

Sharing Information: ClipBook Viewer



ClipBook Viewer

A Local ClipBook provides a personal notebook to store information you want to move, save, or use in other places. You can use your and others' Local ClipBooks to share information. Combined with the powerful tool of object linking and embedding (OLE), ClipBook Viewer makes it possible to keep shared information accurate and up-to-date.

Networking Enhancements in Control Panel

Control Panel has new features that help you configure your network hardware and Microsoft Windows Network software settings.



Network

Using the Network option in Control Panel, you can:

- Change your computer name and the workgroup you belong to.
- Provide a comment about your computer that other people can view when browsing through a list of workgroup computers.
- Change your logon password.
- Specify how much of your central processing unit (CPU) time is allocated to running applications and to sharing information and printers with other workgroup members.
- Track how your shared resources are being used.
- Specify Windows for Workgroups startup settings.



Fax

Using the Fax option in Control Panel, you can:

- Set up your network for sending and receiving faxes.

Other Windows Documentation

This guide is only part of the documentation that describes Windows for Workgroups version 3.11. There is also an online Tutorial and an extensive online Help system. In addition, several online documents (formatted for use with Write, an application included with Windows) are copied to your hard disk during Setup.

Note Your Windows version 3.1 or Windows for Workgroups version 3.1 documentation provides information about basic skills you need to use Windows. Because Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 includes enhancements and new applications, there may be minor differences between the illustrations in your version 3.1 documentation and what you see on your screen. Note that because Windows for Workgroups runs in enhanced mode only, references to standard mode in the *Microsoft Windows User's Guide* are not applicable.

The following table lists the available online documents.

Filename	Contents
SETUP.TXT	Information about software and hardware configurations that require special handling in order for you to successfully set up and start Windows for Workgroups version 3.11. (You can view this file by using any text editor.)
README.WRI	Information updated after this guide was printed.
PRINTERS.WRI	Information about configuring particular printers and fonts.
NETWORKS.WRI	Information about running Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 with other networks.
MAIL.WRI	Procedures for modifying settings in the MSMAIL.INI file (for advanced users only).
SYSINI.WRI	Procedures for modifying settings in the SYSTEM.INI file (for advanced users only).
WININI.WRI	Procedures for modifying settings in the WIN.INI file (for advanced users only).

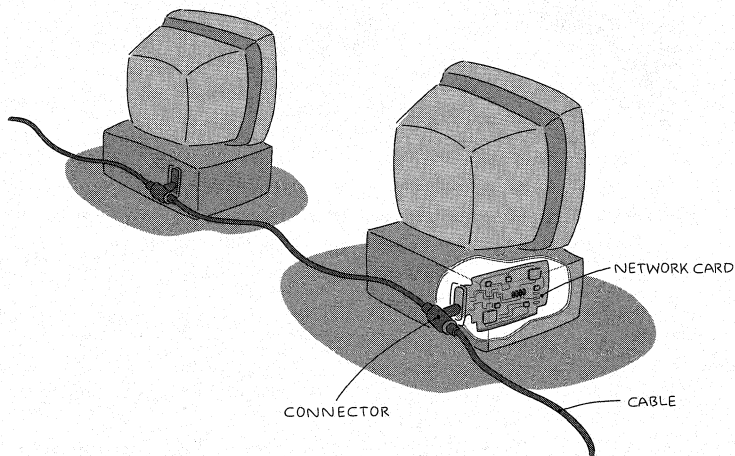
CHAPTER 1

A Brief Overview of Microsoft Windows Networking

This chapter contains an introduction to the basic concepts of the Microsoft® Windows™ for Workgroups version 3.11 operating system and the Microsoft Windows Network, such as workgroups, resources, sharing, and connecting. When you are familiar with these concepts, you can take better advantage of Windows for Workgroups features.

Connecting Computers Together

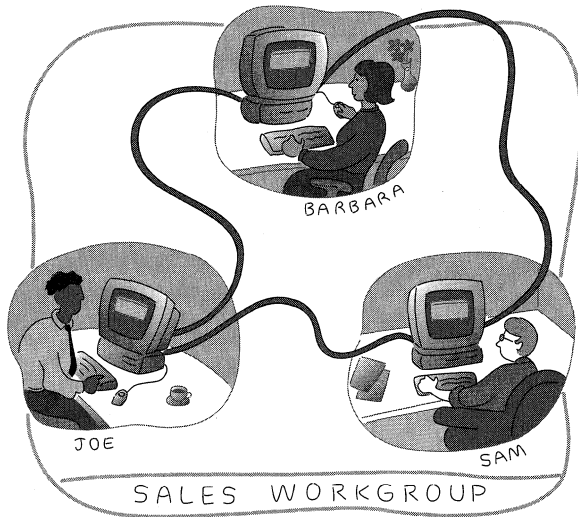
When two or more computers are physically connected together, a *network* is formed. To connect computers together, you need cables, connectors, and *network adapters*, or *cards*. A network card fits inside your computer and enables you to send information to and receive information from other computers.



A network can include a few computers within a single department or many computers in several departments within your company. Using Windows for Workgroups, you can take full advantage of your network.

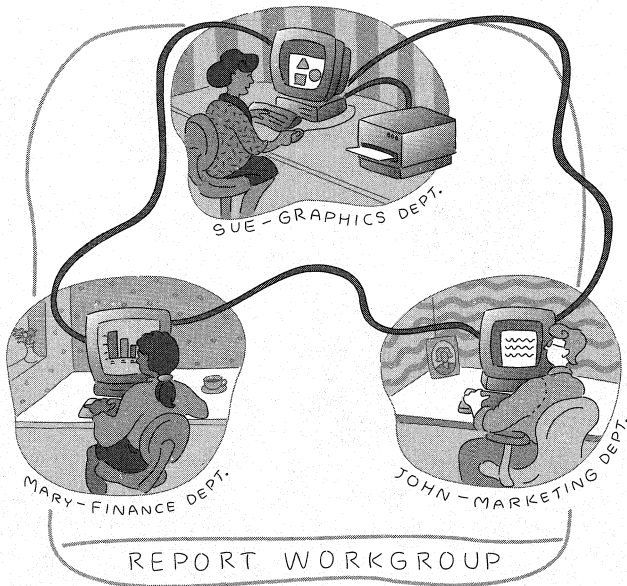
Organizing Computers into Workgroups

A network can contain one or more workgroups. A *workgroup* is a group of connected computers that is organized for a purpose. For example, a workgroup named SALES might be organized for everyone in your company's sales department.

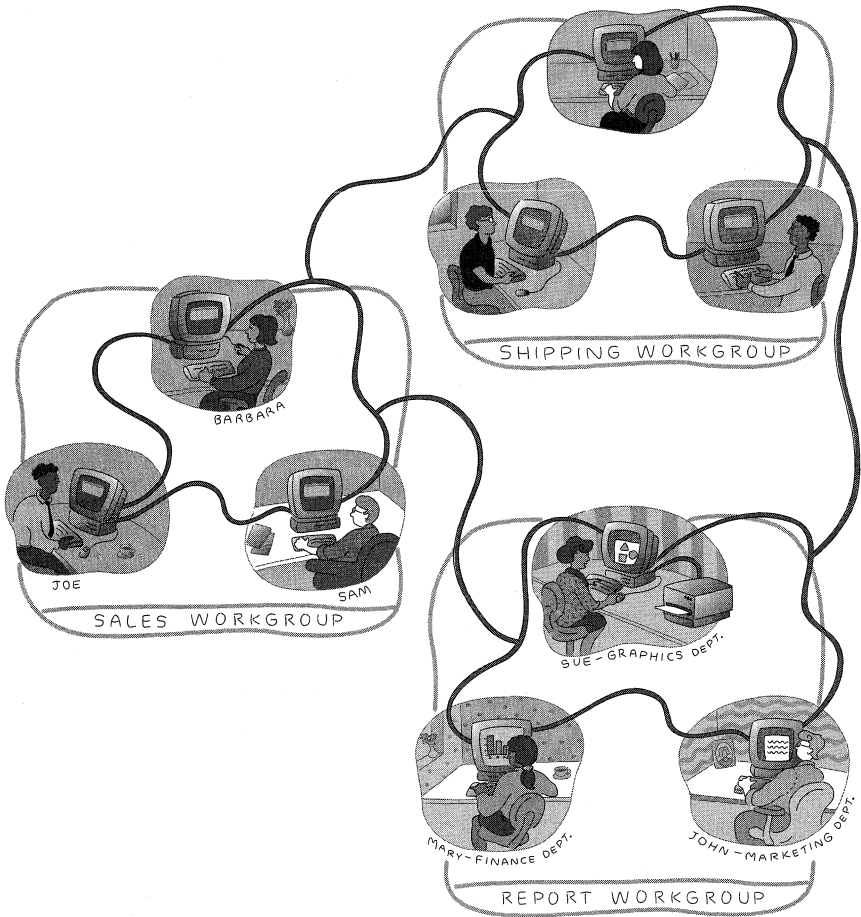


Each computer in the workgroup is identified by a *computer name*. This can be any name, but it usually matches the name of the person using the computer.

Another way to organize workgroups is by project. For example, a project team that includes a writer named John, a graphic artist named Sue, and a financial analyst named Mary might be working on the company's annual report. Although these people work in different departments, they can create a temporary workgroup called REPORT to make it easier to share information during the course of the project.



No matter how workgroups are organized, all the computers in your company can exchange information, as long as they are connected. For example, in the following illustration, the computers in the SHIPPING, SALES, and REPORT workgroups are all connected. Because of this, they can all exchange information.



A workgroup makes it easier for the people who are in it to find and use shared resources. You don't need to change the location of computers to form a workgroup. A workgroup is formed just by giving all the computers in the group the same workgroup name. You can do this when you set up Windows for Workgroups or later.

Exchanging Information

By using Windows for Workgroups, sharing information is easy. For example, although they work in different departments, John, Sue, and Mary can take turns working on the company's annual-report document without leaving their desks or passing around a floppy disk. They can even design the report so that each time someone updates it on one computer, the information is automatically updated on every computer that contains a copy of the report.



In this example, John, who works in the marketing department, writes the text for the annual report.

Sue, who works in the graphics department, opens the file and adds the illustrations.

Mary, who works in the finance department, opens the file and adds financial information. Then she prints a copy of the report, using Sue's printer.

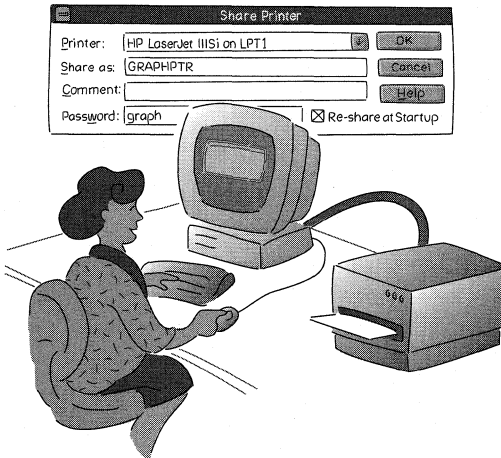
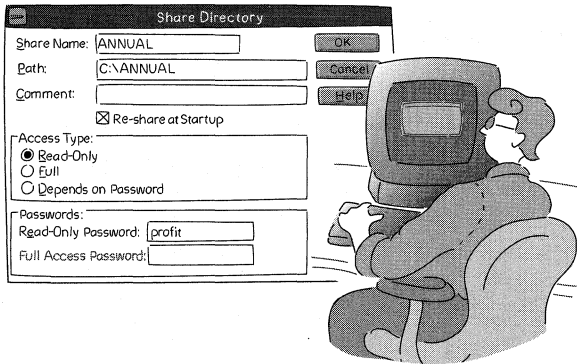
Finally, John sends an electronic mail message notifying reviewers that the annual report is ready for them to see. John can even include the entire report within the mail message or use Windows for Workgroups to fax the report to reviewers who are not in the office.

Sharing Resources

A *resource* is an item, such as a directory or printer, that you and others can use. If you have such a resource, you can make it available to others by *sharing* it. If you do not designate your resource as shared, only you can use it.

When you share a resource, you assign a *share name* to it. Just as the computer name you assign identifies your computer to other people, the share name identifies the resource you are sharing.

You can determine which people use your shared resource by assigning it a *password*. When you share your directories, you can assign different levels of access that require different passwords. If you do not assign a password, the resource is available to anyone using the network.



John assigns the share name ANNUAL to his ANNUAL directory. The share name matches the name of the directory, for easy identification. John assigns read-only access and a password to his directory. Only those who know the password can view his files.

Sue assigns the share name GRAPHPTR and a password to her graphics printer. Only those who know the password can print to her printer.

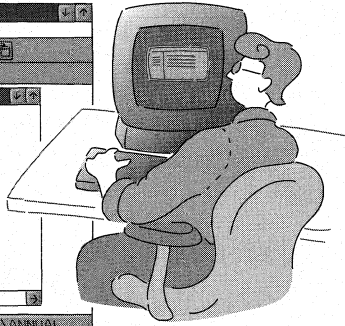
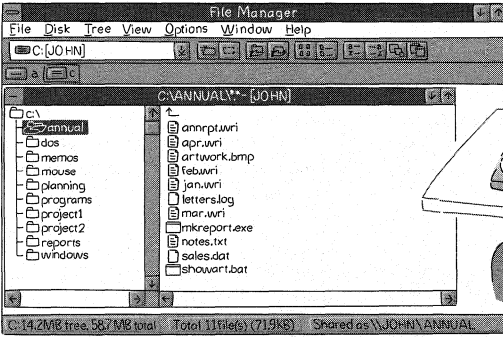
Connecting to Resources

You can use directories and printers that are being shared by other people by *connecting* to them. You use different applications included with Windows for Workgroups to connect to different resources.

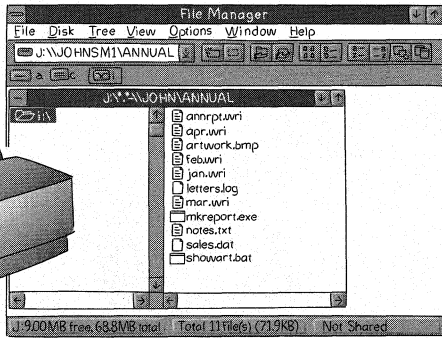
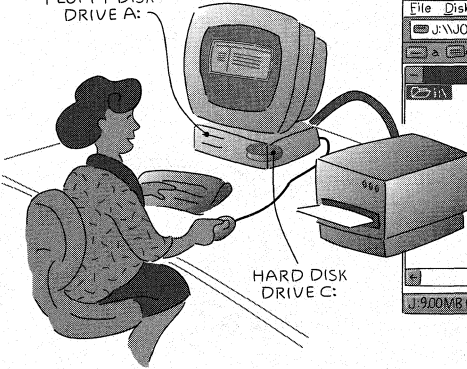
Connecting to Directories

To connect to a directory that someone is sharing on his or her computer, you use File Manager. When you connect to a directory, you assign it a drive letter, and specify the name of the computer that the directory is on and the share name assigned to the directory. When using an application, you use this drive letter to open or save files that are in the shared directory, just as you may use the drive letter C to open or save files on your hard disk. For example, Sue can use the drive letter J to connect to the ANNUAL directory on John's computer.

If the directory is password protected, you also need to type the password to connect to the directory.



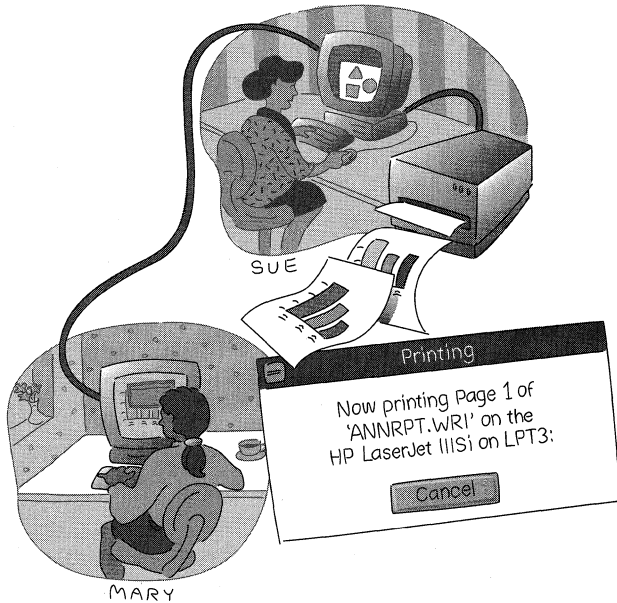
FLOPPY DISK DRIVE A:



Connecting to Printers

To connect to a printer that someone else is sharing, you use Print Manager. You can also use Print Manager to view the status of a document you are printing.

The way you connect to a shared printer is similar to the way you connect to a shared directory: You specify the name of the computer that the printer is on, the printer's share name, and a password (if required). Instead of assigning a drive letter to the printer, you assign it a port. Your computer uses this port to send your documents to the printer.



Network Choices

The Microsoft Windows Network is part of Windows for Workgroups. You can also connect your computer to other networks, such as the Microsoft Windows NT™ operating system, Windows NT Advanced Server, Microsoft LAN Manager, Novell® NetWare®, 3Com® 3+Open®, DEC® Pathworks®, or IBM® LANServer. When your computer is connected to a network, you have access to shared resources on the network, and, depending on the network, other people may have access to shared resources on your computer.

Other networks might use different terms to describe how the network is organized. With some networks, the term *domain* is used instead of *workgroup* to describe groups of computers. The term *server* may be used for a computer that is primarily used to provide shared resources, and *workstation* for a computer that is used by an individual and does not provide shared resources for other people.

For more information, see Chapter 9, “Using Other Networks.”

What to Do Next

Now that you know what workgroups and resources are and you have an overview of how to share your own resources and connect to resources on other computers, you are ready for the next step: preparing your computer to exchange information and resources.

You need to do the following:

1. Install a network card and connect your computer to the network.
For information, see Appendix C, “Installing Network Hardware.”
2. Set up Windows for Workgroups on your computer.
For information, see Chapter 2, “Setting Up and Starting Windows for Workgroups.”
3. Start Windows for Workgroups, and then log on.
Logging on identifies you to other people using the network, and gives you access to all the networking features in Windows for Workgroups.

Setting Up and Starting Windows for Workgroups

This chapter describes how to set up the Microsoft® Windows™ for Workgroups version 3.11 operating system on your computer.

Running Setup

During Setup, your computer system is analyzed to determine whether it meets minimum system requirements. If your system does not meet these requirements, or if it contains features that are incompatible with the Setup program or Windows for Workgroups, a warning message is displayed.

Caution If you use any pop-up message programs that print directly to your screen, such as a printing notification message, make sure you turn the programs off before you start Setup. Such programs are incompatible with Setup.

If you are setting up the full Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 product, you can choose Express Setup or Custom Setup. It is recommended that you use Express Setup. Both methods are described in the following sections.

If you are using Microsoft Workgroup Add-On to upgrade a previous version of Windows to Windows for Workgroups version 3.11, Express Setup is the only option. You must set up Windows for Workgroups in the same directory as the previous version.

► **To set up Windows for Workgroups**

1. Insert Setup Disk 1 in a floppy disk drive.
2. At the command prompt, type the letter of the drive you're using, followed by a colon (:), and then press ENTER. For example:

```
C> a:
```

3. Type **setup** and then press ENTER.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Note If you have problems setting up, see Appendix E, "Troubleshooting."

Choosing the Setup Method You Need

This section describes the two methods of setting up Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 on your computer.

If you will be using Windows for Workgroups with a network, you need to know the following things, regardless of whether you use Express or Custom Setup:

- The type of network you want to run with Windows for Workgroups.

If you have no network software already installed on your computer, Setup can install the Microsoft Windows Network.

If you already have a network installed, Windows for Workgroups will be set up to work with it. Networks you can use together with, or in place of, the Microsoft Windows Network include Novell® NetWare® and Banyan® VINES®.

You can also use the Microsoft Windows Network to gain access to shared resources on networks that are compatible with Microsoft LAN Manager, such as the Microsoft Windows NT™ operating system, Windows NT Advanced Server, 3Com® 3+Open®, DEC® Pathworks®, and IBM® LANServer.

You can also use any network that is 100% MSNet-compatible instead of the Microsoft Windows Network, or any network whose manufacturer provides Windows network drivers. For more information, see your network documentation and the NETWORKS.WRI online document.

- The type of network adapter (card) you are using.
- You may also need to specify the interrupt request level (IRQ), base I/O port, and base memory address for your network adapter if these settings are not detected during Setup.

Note For information about installing a network adapter, see Appendix C, “Installing Network Hardware.” If you need to use multiple network adapters, you must either run Custom Setup or set up the additional adapters later from within Windows.

Express Setup

When you use Express Setup, all you do is type your name, answer a few basic questions (such as what type of printer and network card you have), and insert disks when requested.

To use Express Setup, you need to know the following things:

- What type of printer you have, if any. This includes any network printers you intend to use.
- Which port your printer is connected to.

Note A *port* connects hardware (such as a printer or mouse) to your computer. There are two kinds of ports: *parallel* (such as LPT1) and *serial* (such as COM1). A port can be a socket located on the front or back of your computer, or it can be an internal connection, defined by the software, such as your system connection to a network printer.

Custom Setup

Custom Setup is for experienced computer users who want to alter the standard Windows for Workgroups configuration. For example, if you want to control how your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files are modified, use this method.

If you have limited space on your hard disk, you can use Custom Setup to choose which optional Windows components (or individual files) you want to set up.

During Custom Setup, you are prompted to verify or specify the following:

- The type of computer you are using
- Your display (monitor) type
- Your mouse, if you are using one (highly recommended)
- Your keyboard and keyboard layout
- The language you will work in
- Which optional Windows components to set up

- The printer and printer port you use, including network printers
- Which applications on your hard disk you want to run with Windows
- Changes to your AUTOEXEC.BAT and CONFIG.SYS files, if necessary

Starting and Logging On to Windows for Workgroups

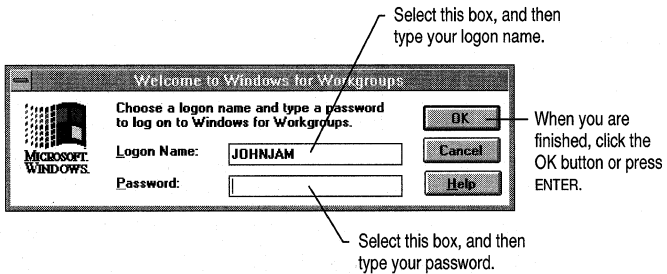
After running Setup, you are prompted to either restart your computer or return to the command prompt. You should restart your computer before running Windows for Workgroups.

- ▶ **To start Windows for Workgroups**
 - At the command prompt, type **win** and then press ENTER.

Logon Names and Passwords

When you start Windows for Workgroups, the logon dialog box appears, displaying a *logon name* that matches your computer name. You can use this name or type a new one. If several people use your computer, each person can have his or her own logon name.

The following illustration shows the logon dialog box, with the logon name Windows for Workgroups would assign if your name were John James.



► **To log on**

1. In the logon dialog box, type a logon name. Or use the default logon name that Windows for Workgroups supplies.
2. If you want to create a logon password, type a password.
3. Choose OK.

The first time you log on to Windows for Workgroups and any time you log on using a new logon name, you are prompted to create a *password-list file*. You use the passwords in this list to connect to any shared resources, such as workgroup printers, that require passwords.

If you choose to create a password-list file, the password for each shared resource you connect to is added to the list. You then do not have to type the password each time you connect to that resource. If you choose not to create a password-list file, you must type the password every time you connect to a shared resource that requires one. When you log off of Windows for Workgroups or off of the Microsoft Windows Network, the password list is “locked” so that nobody else can use it. Each person who uses your computer has his or her own password-list file.

To protect your password list, you can use a *logon password*. When you log on, you supply this password. This unlocks your password list and restores your connections. Your logon password can contain up to 14 characters. Your password should be easy to remember and should be changed periodically for security. For information about changing your password or creating one at a later time, see Chapter 8, “Customizing Network Settings and Improving Performance.”

If you choose to create a password list and you do not specify a logon password, anyone can start your computer and gain access to these connections, because the password list will be unlocked automatically and the password-protected connections will be restored.

CHAPTER 3

New File Manager and Print Manager Features

This chapter describes File Manager and Print Manager enhancements in Microsoft® Windows™ for Workgroups version 3.11. For basic information about File Manager and Print Manager, see your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user's guide.

You can *share* your files, directories, applications, and printer with other people and gain access (*connect*) to the resources that others are sharing.

File Manager and Print Manager now include a *toolbar*. Buttons on the toolbar are available for common tasks, such as specifying what information is displayed for each file, or starting and stopping print jobs. You can also perform these tasks by using File Manager and Print Manager menu commands.

Setting Up Sharing for Files and Printers

If you did not select the file and printer sharing options when you set up Windows for Workgroups, you can set up your computer to share resources now.

Note If you are not using the Microsoft Windows Network, you will not be able to share your resources. Also, if your network administrator has disabled file and/or print sharing for your network, you cannot share your files and/or printers.

► **To set up Windows for Workgroups to share files and printers**

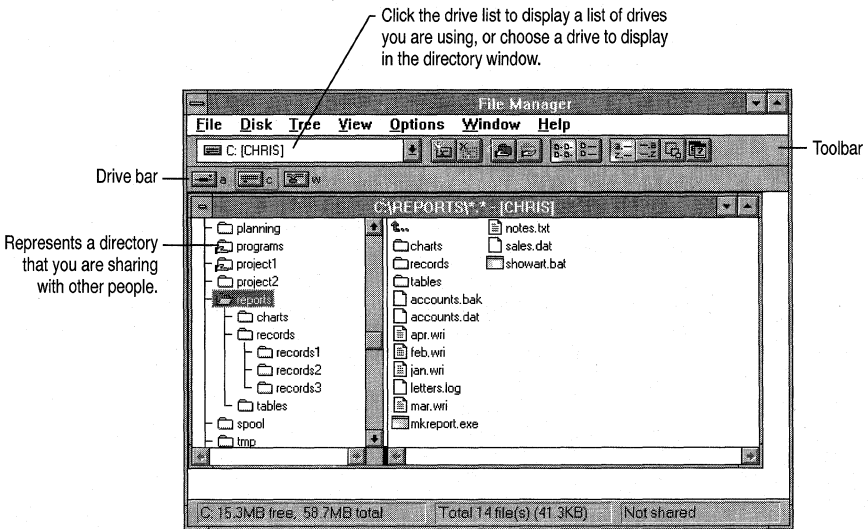
1. In the Network group, choose the Network Setup icon.
2. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose Sharing.
3. To make sharing available, select one or both check boxes, and then choose OK.
4. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose OK.

A dialog box appears, notifying you that your SYSTEM.INI file has been modified. When you choose OK again, a dialog box appears, prompting you to restart Windows.





5. Choose Restart Windows to restart.

Sharing Resources by Using File Manager

Using the Microsoft Windows Network, you can share your directories with other people and connect to directories that other people are sharing. The File Manager window includes some new items relating to sharing resources.



The following table shows toolbar buttons and commands available for managing shared resources.

Use this button	Or this command from the Disk menu	To
	Connect Network Drive	Connect to a shared directory.
	Disconnect Network Drive	Disconnect from a shared directory.
	Share As	Share a directory with other people or add or change a comment or password.
	Stop Sharing	Stop sharing a directory with other people.

Changing Drives and Directories

The files you want to work with may be on a different drive or in a different directory. The File Manager toolbar enables you to easily view and work with the files you want.

► To change the current drive by using the toolbar

- In the list of drives on the toolbar, select the drive you want. The contents of the active directory window change to reflect the new drive. You can also click a drive icon in the drive bar. Or you can double-click the icon to create a new directory window that displays information about the new drive.

You can also press and hold down CTRL while typing the letter of the drive you want. This method works even if the drive bar is not displayed.

Connecting to Shared Directories

By using File Manager, you can connect to directories other people are sharing.

When you connect to someone else's shared directory, File Manager assigns the directory the next available drive letter (or you can assign a letter of your choice). This creates a *network drive*. After you are connected to a shared directory, you can use the resulting network drive as you would any other drive.

When you assign a network drive to a shared directory, you might need to know the shared directory's *path*. This path contains the *computer name* and the *share name*, with the format `\\computername\sharename`. For example, the path `\\HEADQTRS\TELLER1` identifies HEADQTRS as the computer name and TELLER1 as the share name.

If you are using Novell® NetWare® with Windows for Workgroups, see Chapter 9, "Using Other Networks," for information about connecting to shared directories.

**► To connect to a shared directory**

1. On the toolbar, click the Connect Network Drive button. Or choose Connect Network Drive from the Disk menu.
2. If you want to use a drive letter different from the one shown in the Drive box, open the list, and then select the letter you want. Or type the letter.
3. In the Path box, type the shared directory's path. Or, if you want to use a path that you've used recently, open the Path list, and then select a path.

If the Always Browse check box is selected, the Show Shared Directories On box appears each time you use the Connect Network Drive dialog box. If you clear the Always Browse check box, you can choose Browse to see the Show Shared Directories On box.

In the Show Shared Directories On box, you can expand (choose) a workgroup, select a computer listed below the workgroup name, and then, from the Shared Directories box, select a shared directory.

To display directories on a computer not in your workgroup, type `\\computername` and then choose OK. Select the shared directory you want, and then choose OK.

4. To connect to the selected directory, choose OK.

For help, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.

If the Open New Window On Connect command (on the Options menu) is in effect, a new directory window appears, displaying the contents of the network drive. This command is in effect by default.

You can also specify whether to automatically connect to the network drive every time you start Windows for Workgroups. For more information about this and other features, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the Connect Network Drive dialog box.

**► To disconnect from a network drive**

1. On the toolbar, click the Disconnect Network Drive button. Or choose Disconnect Network Drive from the Disk menu.
2. In the list, double-click the drive you want to disconnect from. Or select it, and then choose OK.

You can extend the selection to include more than one drive.

Sharing Your Directories

With the Microsoft Windows Network, you can share your directories, making the files in them available to other people. You can use passwords to protect your files. If you assign a password to a shared directory, only those people who know the password can use files in that directory. If you do not assign a password, anyone on the network can use the files.

You can also control whether people who have access to your shared directory can make changes to the files in it.

Use this setting	To enable others to
Read-Only	Read files and run applications.
Full	Create, change, delete, rename, move, or read files, and run applications.
Depends On Password	Have either read-only access or full access, depending on the password they use.

Note If you select Depends On Password, and leave one password blank, people requesting access to your directory will always be prompted to enter a password. Pressing ENTER at the password prompt will give them access to the file.



► To share a directory or change information about your shared directory

1. In the directory window, select the directory you want to share or modify.
2. On the toolbar, click the Share As button. Or choose Share As from the Disk menu.
3. In the Share Name box, type the name you want to assign to this directory. Or you can use the name shown.
4. If you want to control access to files, select the appropriate option.
5. If you want password protection, type a password.

You can also specify a comment to appear next to the directory in the Connect Network Drive dialog box and specify whether the directory will be automatically shared every time you start Windows for Workgroups.

6. Choose OK.

For help, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.

**► To stop sharing a directory**

1. On the toolbar, click the Stop Sharing button. Or choose Stop Sharing from the Disk menu.

If this button or command appears dimmed, no directories are shared.

2. In the list, double-click the name of the directory you want to stop sharing. Or select it, and then choose OK.

You can extend the selection to include more than one directory.

Caution If other people are connected to your directory when you stop sharing it, a dialog box appears, prompting you for confirmation. If you choose the Yes button, these people may lose their data.

Displaying the Names of People Using Your Shared Directory

You can find out who is using files in your shared directory. For example, if you cannot open a file in your shared directory because someone else has it open, you may want to find out who that person is.

► To find out who is using files in a shared directory

1. In the directory window, select the directory. Or, if you only want to find out who is using a file, select the file.
2. From the File menu, choose Properties.
3. Choose Open By.

The Open Files dialog box is updated every few seconds.

Note Also, you can use the Net Watcher application to display names of people using a shared directory. For more information, see Help for Net Watcher.

Closing Files in a Shared Directory

You can close files in a directory you are sharing, even if someone is using them. For example, if you cannot open a file because someone is using it, you can close the file so that other people, including yourself, can use it.

► To close files in a shared directory

1. In the directory window, select the shared directory. Or, if you only want to close a file, select the file.
2. From the File menu, choose Properties.







3. Choose Open By.
4. In the Network Properties dialog box, select the file or files you want to close, and then choose Close Files.

A dialog box appears, prompting you to confirm the closure.

Caution If you choose Yes, anyone using the file may lose data.

Additional File Manager Toolbar Buttons

In addition to using some toolbar buttons to manage and view shared resources, you can use the following buttons to control how files are displayed.

Use this button	To
	Display only the names of each file.
	Display all the information about each file.
	Display files in alphabetic order, based on the filename.
	Display files in alphabetic order, based on the filename extension.
	Display files in order of size, from the largest to the smallest.
	Display files in chronological order, based on the last date each file was changed.

Note These buttons affect only the list of files in the active directory window. If the directory window is displaying only the directory tree, the buttons do not affect the window.



If you are using Mail, you can send mail directly from File Manager by using either the Mail menu or the Send Mail button on the toolbar. For more information about sending mail, see Chapter 4, “Mail.”

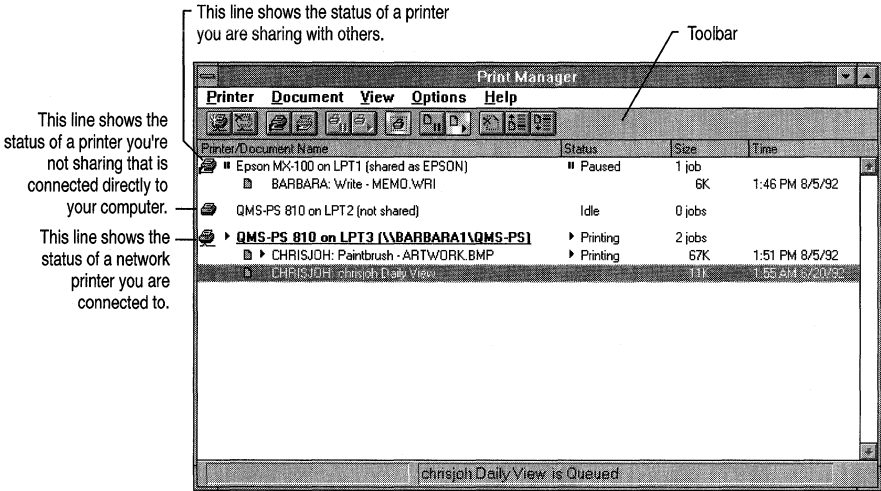
More Ways to Use File Manager

There are many other features that you can use to customize File Manager to your needs and to perform various tasks. For more information, see your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user's guide, or see Help for File Manager.

Sharing Printers by Using Print Manager



You can share your own printer with others and connect to *network printers* that other people have shared.



When you start Print Manager, the following window appears.



- Each printer has its own *print queue*, which is a list of documents, both yours and others', that are printing or waiting to print.
- You can use the toolbar to manage shared printers and perform common printing tasks. These buttons are shortcuts for menu commands.

The following table shows toolbar buttons and commands available for managing shared printers.

Use this button	Or this command from the Printer menu	To
	Connect Network Printer	Connect to a shared printer.
	Disconnect Network Printer	Disconnect from a shared printer.

Use this button	Or this command from the Printer menu	To
	Share Printer As	Share your printer with other people, or add or change a comment or password.
	Stop Sharing Printer	Stop sharing your printer with other people.

Note Print Manager must be running for you to share your printer. It is recommended that you do not put Print Manager in your Startup group.

Before You Print

With network printers, as with your own printer, you must do two things before you can print:

1. Set up the printer driver on your computer. For information, see “Setting Up a Printer” in your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user’s guide, or see Help for Print Manager.
2. Connect to the printer. For information about how to connect to a network printer, see the following section.

Connecting to a Network Printer

Your own (*local*) printer is physically connected by a cable to a parallel or serial *port* in the back of your computer. The port is represented by a name in Windows (such as LPT1, LPT2, COM1, or COM2).

A network printer is connected to a port in the back of another computer in a *workgroup*, and is connected to a port name in your computer by network hardware and software.

When a port name in your computer is connected to a network printer, your computer does not need port hardware corresponding to that name. This allows you to use multiple network printers, even though your computer does not have a physical port for each one. For more information about using multiple network printers, see Help for Print Manager.

When you connect to a network printer, you might need to know the network printer’s *path*. This path contains the *computer name* and the *share name*, with the format `\\computername\sharename`. For example, `\\HEADQTRS\PRINTER1` identifies HEADQTRS as the computer name and PRINTER1 as the share name.

If you are using Novell NetWare with Windows for Workgroups, see Chapter 9, “Using Other Networks,” for information about connecting to shared printers.

**► To connect to a network printer**

1. Make sure you have set up a printer driver on your computer for the network printer you want to connect to. For more information, see “Setting Up a Printer” in your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user’s guide.
2. On the toolbar, click the Connect Network Printer button. Or choose Connect Network Printer from the Printer menu.
3. If the port shown in the Device Name box is not the one associated with the appropriate printer driver, open the list, and then select the port name you want. Note that this list shows workgroup connections that already exist. If you select a port that is already connected to a network printer, you are prompted later to replace that connection. You can also type the port number (1 for LPT1, 2 for LPT2, and so on) in the Device Name box.
4. In the Path box, type the network printer’s path. Or, if you want to use a path that you’ve used recently, open the Path list, and then select a path.

If the Always Browse check box is selected, the Show Shared Printers On box appears each time you use the Connect Network Printer dialog box. If you clear the Always Browse check box, you can choose Browse to see the Show Shared Printers On box.

In the Show Shared Printers On box, you can expand (choose) a workgroup, select a computer listed below the workgroup name, and then select a network printer from the Shared Printers box.

5. Choose OK.

For help, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.

You can also specify whether to automatically connect to the printer every time you start Windows for Workgroups. For more information about this and other features, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the Connect Network Printer dialog box.

**► To disconnect from a network printer**

1. On the toolbar, click the Disconnect Network Printer button. Or choose Disconnect Network Printer from the Printer menu.
2. In the list, double-click the name of the printer you want to disconnect. Or select it, and then choose OK.

You can extend the selection to include more than one printer.

Sharing Your Printer

You can share your printer with other people. This may be useful, for example, if yours is the only printer among a group of people.

Note If you chose Yes in the Do You Want To Share Printer Now dialog box when you set up Windows for Workgroups, your printer is already shared.

Before you can share a printer, you must set it up. For information, see “Setting Up a Printer” in your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user’s guide, or see Help for Print Manager.



► To share a printer or change information about your shared printer

1. In the Print Manager window, select the printer you want to share or modify.
2. On the toolbar, click the Share Printer As button. Or choose Share Printer As from the Printer menu.
3. In the Share Printer dialog box, type any share name or password you want in the appropriate box, and then choose OK.

For help, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.

You can also specify a comment to appear next to the printer in the Connect Network Printer dialog box and specify whether to share the printer automatically each time you start Windows for Workgroups. For more information, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the Share Printer dialog box.

Note You can use the Net Watcher application to display the names of people using a shared printer. For more information, see Help for Net Watcher.



► To stop sharing a printer

1. On the toolbar, click the Stop Sharing Printer button. Or choose Stop Sharing Printer from the Printer menu.
If this button or command appears dimmed, no printers are shared.
2. In the Shared Printers box, double-click the name of the printer you want to stop sharing. Or select it, and then choose OK.

You can extend the selection to include more than one printer.

Choosing the Default Printer

Many Windows-based applications use the default printer when you choose the Print command.



► To choose a default printer

1. In the Print Manager window, select the printer you want documents sent to.
2. On the toolbar, click the Set Default Printer button. Or choose Set Default Printer from the Printer menu.

Pausing and Resuming Printing

You can pause the printing of another person's document on a printer you are sharing, or you can pause your entire printer. In the print queue for a network printer, you can pause only the printing of your own document—you cannot pause the printer or anyone else's document.

For more information about pausing and resuming printing, see your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user's guide, or see Help for Print Manager.

Canceling the Printing of a Document

You can cancel the printing of a document by deleting it from the list of documents waiting to print. When using a network printer, you can delete only your own document and only before it starts printing. When using your own (local) printer, whether shared or not, you can delete any document at any time.



► To cancel the printing of a document

1. In the Print Manager window, select the document you want to delete.
2. On the toolbar, click the Delete Document button. Or choose Delete Document from the Document menu. You can also use the DEL key.
A dialog box appears, prompting you to confirm the deletion.

► To cancel the printing of all documents on your printer, shared or not shared









- From the File menu, choose Exit to quit Print Manager. All documents in the queue will be deleted.

A dialog box appears, prompting you to confirm the deletion.

Note If you quit Print Manager while a document is printing in graphics mode, you might need to restart your printer or select the reset option on your printer.

Additional Print Manager Toolbar Buttons

In addition to using some toolbar buttons to manage shared printers, you can use the following buttons to control documents and printers.

Use this button	To
	Temporarily stop your printer from printing.
	Start your printer again if it has been paused.
	Specify the selected printer as the default printer for your Windows-based applications.
	Temporarily stop a document from printing.
	Start a document printing again if it has been paused.
	Remove any document from the print queue for your printer, or your document from a queue for a network printer.
	Move a selected document closer to the top of the print queue, making it print sooner.
	Move a selected document closer to the bottom of the print queue, making it print later.

More Ways to Use Print Manager

There are many other features that you can use to customize Print Manager to your needs and to perform various tasks. For more information, see your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user's guide, or see Help for Print Manager.

CHAPTER 4

Mail

This chapter describes how to use Mail to read messages from and send mail to other people who are using the Microsoft® Windows™ Network.

When you start Mail for the first time, you must do the following:

- Connect to or create a post office. If a Mail version 3.0 post office has been assigned for your workgroup, or someone in your workgroup has already created a workgroup post office (WGPO), you need to connect to it. See Appendix A, “Maintaining Mail,” if you are the person responsible for creating a post office, if you are creating a post office on a Microsoft LAN Manager or Novell® NetWare® network, or if you would like to set up your system to read mail from other message systems.
- Create an account in the post office, if no one has set up one for you.

If you have already connected to a post office and created an account, see “Signing In to Mail” later in this chapter.

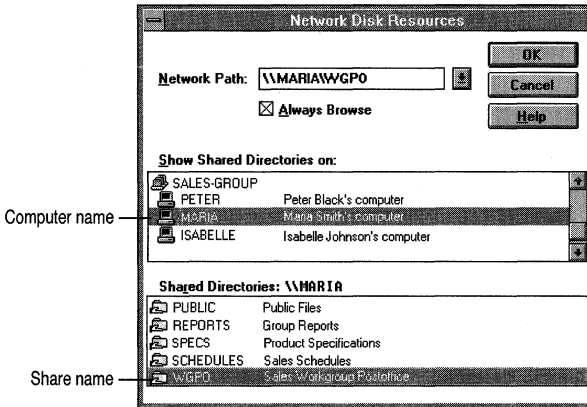
Connecting to a Post Office

Before connecting to a post office, ask the person who is managing Mail to give you the computer name and the name of the shared directory where the post office is located, and verify that your computer has enough available disk space. You also need to find out the password for the shared directory, if there is one.

The disk space that you need in order to use Mail depends on the number and type of messages you expect to store in Mail. A small number of messages requires about 100K of disk space; a large amount may require several megabytes.

► **To connect to a post office**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. In the Welcome To Mail dialog box, select **Connect To An Existing Postoffice**, and then choose **OK**. The following dialog box appears.



3. Select the post office you want to connect to by doing one of the following:

In the Network Path box, type the path (`\\computername\sharename`) of the post office.

Or

In the Show Shared Directories On box, select the computer name for your post office. In the Shared Directories box, select the shared directory for your post office.

4. Choose **OK**.

If the shared directory requires a password, the Enter Shared Directory Password dialog box appears. Type the password, and then choose **OK**.

5. A dialog box appears. If you already have an account, choose **Yes**. You will then be prompted for your password. If you have not specified a password, your password was set to the default password that your administrator specified. By default, the workgroup password is **PASSWORD**.

If you need to create an account, choose **No**. The Enter Your Account Details dialog box appears.

6. Create your account as described in the following section.

For help, choose the **Help** button or press **F1** while using the dialog boxes.

Creating Your Account

After you have connected to a post office, you need to create an account. Before doing so, check with the person maintaining Mail to find out whether an account has already been set up for you.

► **To create your account**

- In the Enter Your Account Details dialog box, fill in the appropriate information, and then choose OK.

Tip No distinction is made between uppercase and lowercase letters; for example, *MARIAS*, *MariaS*, and *marias* are considered to be the same. Choose a name that is easy to remember.

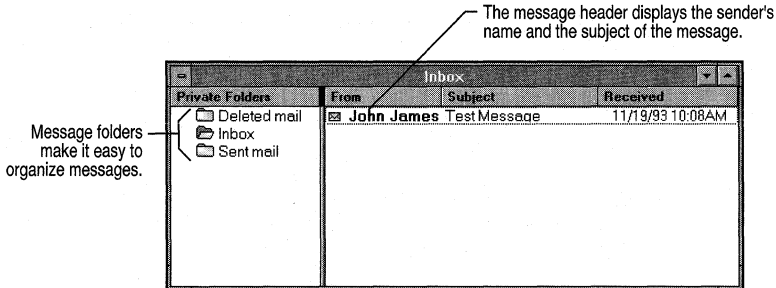
The following is required information you must specify.

Box	Description
Name	Type your full name. The maximum length is 30 characters, and the default is the name you used when setting up Windows for Workgroups.
Mailbox	Type a name that is easy to remember; for example, your first name and the first initial of your last name. You will use this name to sign in to Mail. The maximum length is 10 characters, and the default is your Windows logon name.
Password	Type a password that is easy to remember; you will use it and your mailbox name to sign in to Mail. The maximum length is 8 characters, and the default is PASSWORD.

The following is optional information you can specify.

Box	Description
Phone #1	Type your phone number. The maximum length is 32 characters.
Phone #2	Type your second phone or fax number. The maximum length is 32 characters.
Office	Type your office number. The maximum length is 32 characters.
Department	Type the name of your department. The maximum length is 32 characters.
Notes	Type any comments about your account. The maximum length is 128 characters.

After you have created an account, the Inbox appears, displaying your messages and folders.



Signing In to Mail

When you finish creating your account, you are automatically signed in to Mail. The next time you start Mail, you sign in by typing your password. You can choose to have your password automatically supplied when you start Mail.

► To sign in to Mail

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon. The Mail Sign In dialog box appears.
2. In the Password box, type your password.
3. If you want your password to be supplied automatically each time you start Mail, select the Remember Password check box.

Be aware that if you have selected the Remember Password check box, or if people know your password, they can read your mail. To protect your privacy, do not share your password with other people and do not select the Remember Password box.

4. Choose OK.

Changing Your Password

If security is a concern, change your password regularly. If you forget your password, see your Mail administrator.

► **To change your password**

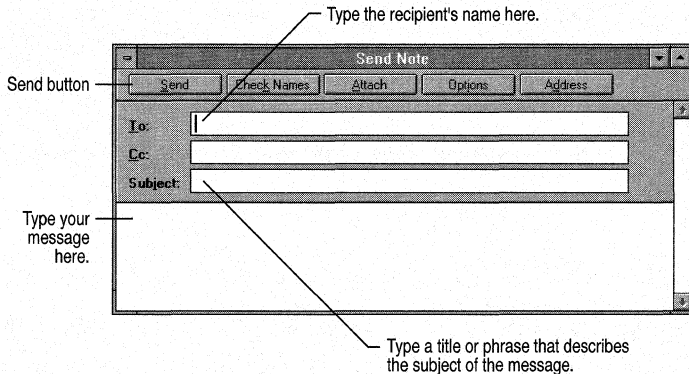
1. From the Mail menu in Mail, choose Change Password.
2. In the Old Password box, type your previous password, and then press TAB. For security reasons, you do not see the characters you type.
3. In the New Password box, type your new password, and then press TAB.
4. In the Verify New Password box, type the new password again.
5. Press ENTER. If your second attempt to type the new password does not match the first, the computer beeps; start over with a new password, and then verify it.

Sending a Message

Sending a message involves a few simple steps: addressing it, typing a subject line, typing the message, and sending it.

► **To send a message**

1. On the toolbar, click the Compose button. Or choose Compose Note from the Mail menu. The following window appears.



2. In the To box, type the names of the people you want to receive the mail. Use a semicolon (;) to separate names. If you want to send copies to other people, type their names in the Cc box.

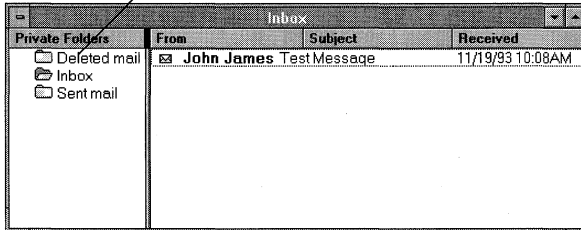
You can use the Personal Address Book in Mail to store names of people you send messages to. For more information, see Help for Mail.

3. Click the Subject box or press TAB, and then type a title or phrase that describes the message.
4. Click anywhere in the message area or press TAB, and then type your message.
When your text reaches the right margin, the next word moves to the next line; you don't need to press ENTER at the end of each line.
5. To send the message, choose Send.

Reading a Message

Your Inbox displays information about each message, including the name of the sender and the date and time the message was received.

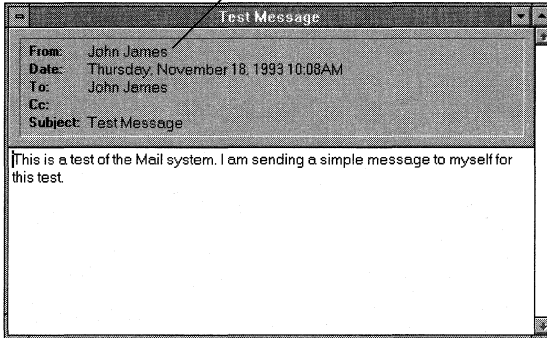
When you have an unread or new message, Mail displays a closed-envelope symbol and displays the sender's name in bold type.



► **To read the message**

- Double-click the message. Or use the arrow keys to select the message, and then press ENTER.

The message heading displays the name of the person who sent the message.

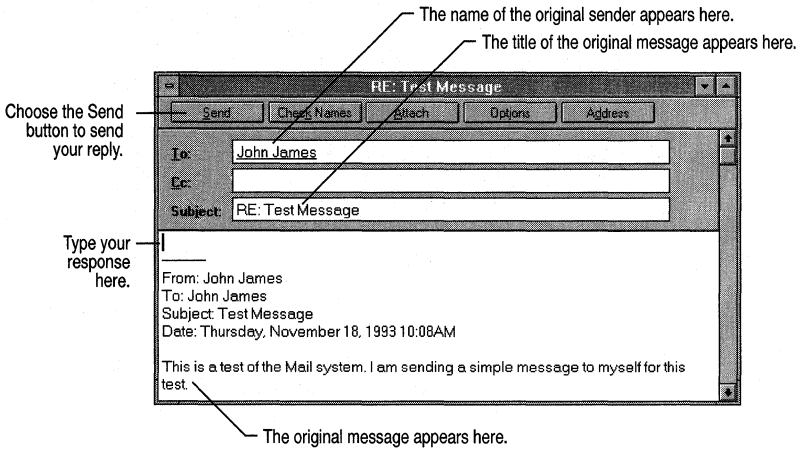


Replying to a Message

When you send a reply, your message is addressed for you. Your response includes the original message, and you can add comments to it, if needed. If you choose the Reply All button or command, the message is addressed to everyone in the To and Cc boxes.

► **To reply to a message**

- On the toolbar, click the Reply button. Or choose Reply from the Mail menu. The following window appears.



Deleting a Message

To keep your mailbox from becoming cluttered, you can delete messages you no longer need.

► **To delete a message**

1. Select the message that you want to delete.
2. On the toolbar, click the Delete button. Or choose Delete from the File menu.

The message moves to the Deleted Mail folder. By default, the Deleted Mail folder is emptied each time you quit Mail. You can change this option by using the Options command on the Mail menu. You can retrieve the message from the Deleted Mail folder at any time until you quit Mail.

Quitting Mail

There are two commands you can use to quit Mail.

- Use the Exit command to quit Mail without signing out.

This command is useful if you are running an application, such as Microsoft At Work™ PC Fax or Schedule+, that uses Mail to communicate with other people. The other application continues to run, even though you have quit Mail.

If you use this command and you leave your computer unattended, another person can start Mail and read your messages without being prompted for a password.

- Use the Exit And Sign Out command to quit Mail and sign out.

If you use this command, any other application (such as PC Fax or Schedule+) that uses Mail to communicate with other people also stops running. If you restart Mail, you need to sign in.

By default, all messages in the Deleted Mail folder are deleted when you quit Mail. You can change this option by using the Options command on the Mail menu.

- ▶ **To quit Mail and remain signed in**
 - From the File menu, choose Exit.
- ▶ **To quit Mail and sign out**
 - From the File menu, choose Exit And Sign Out.

The Message File

After you connect to your post office and sign in, an MSMAIL.MMF file is created in the directory where you set up Windows for Workgroups. This file is called your *message file*. It stores your messages, message folders, and Personal Address Book. The file is updated when you receive messages. If your message file becomes corrupted, you are given the option to fix it.

Additional Features of Mail

There are many other features you can use in Mail. For information about the following tasks, see Help for Mail:

- Using folders to organize your messages
- Finding a specific message
- Using the Address Book
- Creating and using a message template
- Embedding an object in a message
- Sorting messages

Microsoft At Work PC Fax

Using Microsoft® At Work™ PC Fax version 1.0, you can send faxes to and receive faxes from standard fax machines and computers equipped with fax modems. Using PC Fax is like using electronic mail. The only difference between a mail message and fax message is the way you address it. A fax consists of a typed message and can also include a cover sheet and attached documents, such as Microsoft Excel spreadsheets.

This chapter describes how to:

- Set up PC Fax for use with a fax modem attached to your computer or with a shared fax modem on the network.
- Share your fax modem with other people.
- Send and receive faxes and attach documents.
- Use the security features to send and receive secured faxes.
- Use PC Fax when you're traveling.

Setting Up PC Fax

This section describes how to set up your computer to use either a fax modem on your computer or a fax modem connected to another computer on the network. It also describes how to select which fax modem to use, if there is more than one fax modem available.

Before starting to use PC Fax, make sure you:

- Have enough disk space. You need approximately 80K of disk space for each fax page.
- Disable any fax software other than PC Fax. You can use only one fax application with a modem at a time.

Using a Fax Modem Attached to Your Computer

You can attach a fax modem to your computer and set it up either for yourself or for other people on your network as well.

The modem must be a Class 1, Class 2, or Communication Application Specification (CAS) modem. For information, check your fax-modem documentation.

You need to take the following steps in order to use a fax modem attached to your computer:

1. Set up the hardware for the fax modem.
2. If you have a CAS modem, set up the driver (software) for the fax modem.
3. Configure the fax modem.
4. If you plan to share your fax modem with other people using the network, specify that you're sharing your fax modem. For information about sharing, see "Sharing Your Fax Modem" later in this chapter.

Setting Up Hardware for Your Fax Modem

To install the hardware on a serial port (COM1, COM2, COM3, or COM4) on your computer, refer to your fax-modem documentation.

Note Although you can use your telephone line with your fax modem, a separate line for your fax modem is recommended so that fax transmissions won't be interrupted accidentally. If you use the telephone line, it must be in analog format.

Setting Up Software for Your Fax Modem

Do not set up the fax driver (software) that accompanies a Class 1 or Class 2 fax modem; you will be using PC Fax instead. If you install a CAS modem, however, you must set up the fax driver supplied with it. For instructions, see your CAS modem documentation.

Configuring the Fax Modem

The configuration settings determine how your fax modem handles faxes. You can change these settings at any time.

► **To configure your fax modem**

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the Fax icon.
2. If you have set up Mail and connected to a post office, the Fax Modems dialog box appears.

Otherwise, the Microsoft At Work Fax dialog box appears. Select **Email And Fax** if you plan to use Mail to send mail messages to other people on your network. Select **Fax Only** if you won't be using Mail to communicate with others via mail messages. You will still use Mail to read and send faxes. Choose **OK**.

If you select **Fax Only**, you will be prompted to set up Mail when you finish configuring your fax modem.

3. In the **Fax Modems** dialog box, choose **Add**. The **Add Fax Modems** dialog box appears.
4. In the **Type** list, select the type of fax modem you want to add, and then choose **OK**.
5. In the **Fax Phone Number** dialog box, type your fax number (including country and area code), and then choose **OK**.
6. In the **Fax Modems** dialog box, choose **Setup**. A dialog box appears for the fax modem you are setting up.

Under **Answer Mode**, you can select options to specify how your fax modem answers incoming calls.

Choose **Speaker** to specify speaker mode and volume.

Choose **Dialing** to specify dialing prefixes required for outgoing calls from your phone line and other dialing options.

7. Choose **OK**.

For help with the dialog boxes, choose the **Help** button or press **F1** while using the dialog boxes.

After you set up the fax modem, you need to specify it as the active modem. For more information, see "Specifying the Active Fax Modem" later in this chapter.

Using a Fax Modem on the Network

If you plan to use a fax modem located on another computer on your network, you need to specify the name of the computer and the name of the shared directory. You may also need to supply a password for the shared directory. Your workgroup administrator or the person whose fax modem it is can give you this information.

► To set up your computer to use a shared fax modem

1. In the **Control panel** window, choose the **Fax** icon.
2. In the **Fax Modems** dialog box, choose **Add**.
3. In the **Type** box, select **Shared Network Fax**, and then choose **OK**. The **Connect Network Fax** dialog box appears.

4. If the Connections list includes the path for the shared fax modem, go to step 6. If the Connections list does not include the path for the shared fax modem, choose Network. The Connect Network Drive dialog box appears.

5. In the Path box, type the computer name and the name of the shared directory, and then choose OK. The Connect Network Fax dialog box appears.

For information about using the Connect Network Drive dialog box to find the shared directory or how to reconnect to the directory each time you start Windows for Workgroups, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.

6. In the Connections list, select the path for the shared fax modem, and then choose OK.

After you set up the fax modem, use the following procedure to specify it as the active modem.

Specifying the Active Fax Modem

Before you can use a fax modem you have just set up, you must specify it as active. Also, only one fax modem can be used at a time. If you have more than one available, you need to specify which one you want to be active. Make sure that Mail is closed and the Outbox is empty before you specify the active modem.

► **To select a fax modem**

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the Fax icon.
2. In the Fax Modems dialog box, select the modem you would like to use.
3. Choose Set As Active Modem, and then choose OK.

You must restart Mail after specifying the active fax modem.

Sharing Your Fax Modem

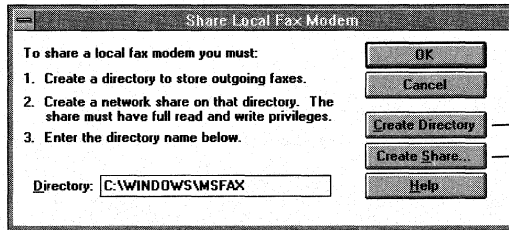
When you share a fax modem, anyone using the network can connect to it to send faxes. Because of this, you might receive faxes for other people in addition to faxes intended for you. You need to forward faxes intended for others. For information about forwarding faxes, see "Forwarding a Fax" later in this chapter.

► **To share a fax modem with other people on the network**

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the Fax icon.
2. In the Fax Modems dialog box, select the modem you want to share, and then choose Share.

This button appears only if file sharing is set up on your computer. To set up file sharing, see “Setting Up Sharing for Files and Printers” in Chapter 3, “New File Manager and Print Manager Features.”

3. The Share Local Fax Modem dialog box displays a directory name in the Directory box. If you want a different directory, type the path and name of the directory that you want to use for the fax modem.



Choose this button if the directory does not already exist.

Choose this button if the directory is not already shared.

Or

If you have not already created the directory, choose Create Directory, and then choose OK.

4. If you have not already shared the directory, see the following procedure. Otherwise, in the Fax Modems dialog box, choose OK.

► **To create a shared directory**

1. In the Share Local Fax Modem dialog box, choose Create Share.
2. The name of the shared directory is displayed in the Share Name box. If you want to share a different directory, type the name.
3. The path of the shared directory appears in the Path box. If you want to share a different directory, type the path.
4. Under Comment, you can type an optional description of the shared directory.
5. If you want the modem to be shared automatically when you restart Windows, select the Re-Share At Startup check box.

6. Under Access Type, select Full or Depends On Password.
If you select Depends On Password, type the password in the Full Access Password box.

Note If you select Read-Only, other people will not be able to connect to your modem.

7. Choose OK.
8. In the Share Local Fax Modem dialog box, choose OK.
9. In the Fax Modems dialog box, choose OK.

For help with the dialog boxes, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog boxes.

Stop Sharing a Fax Modem

You can stop sharing your fax modem with other people on the network.

- ▶ **To stop sharing a fax modem**
 1. In the Control Panel window, choose the Fax icon.
 2. In the Fax Modems dialog box, select the shared modem, and then choose Stop Sharing.
 3. Choose OK.

Sending a Fax

You can send a fax from Mail or from an application. When you send a fax from Mail, your fax can include other documents that you *attach*. When you send a fax from an application, the current document becomes the fax message.

You can send the same message to both Mail and PC Fax recipients at the same time by using a combination of mail and fax addresses.

If you send many faxes to the same recipients, you can avoid having to type the fax number each time by adding fax numbers to your Personal Address Book in Mail.

The following two procedures describe the basic steps for sending a fax. If you are not familiar with using Mail, see Chapter 4, "Mail."

- ▶ **To send a fax from Mail**
 1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
 2. On the toolbar, click the Compose button.

3. In the To box of the Send Note window, type **[fax:name@number]** or **[fax:number]**. For example: [fax:Chris Doe@555-1234] or [fax:555-1234].
4. In the Subject box, type the subject of the fax.
5. In the message area, type the message.
6. If you want to attach a document, click the Attach button on the toolbar.
In the Attach dialog box, locate and select the document, and then choose Attach.
Choose Close.
7. On the toolbar, click the Send button.

You can also send a fax that includes a document from within the application used to create the document.

You still must have Mail running when you send a fax from an application.

Caution When you send a fax or mail message from some applications, the text in the attached document may lose its formatting. Before using this method, you might want to test the application by sending a mail message to yourself.

► **To send a fax from within an application**

1. Make sure that Mail is running.
2. Open the document you want to send.
3. If there is a Send command on the File menu, choose it.
If there is no Send command on the File menu, specify your fax modem as your printer. Then choose Print from the File menu, and choose OK in the Print dialog box.
4. In the To box of the Send Note window, type **[fax:name@number]** or **[fax:number]**. For example: [fax:Chris Doe@555-1234] or [fax:555-1234].
5. You can change the Subject line or add text to the message.
6. On the toolbar, click the Send button.

For more information about specifying a printer, see the documentation for your application.

Tip If you use TrueType fonts, your printed fax will resemble the screen image, including page breaks.

Adding Fax Numbers to the Personal Address Book

You can use the Personal Address Book in Mail to store commonly used fax numbers in addition to commonly used mail addresses. For information about the Personal Address Book, see Help for PC Fax and for Mail.

For information about using the Personal Address Book to send faxes when you are traveling, see "Tips for Travelers" later in this chapter.

Note You do not need to include the recipient's name when you type a fax address. However, if you have selected the option in Mail to add recipients automatically to the Personal Address Book, and you use a name in the fax address, the address is added by name rather than by fax number.

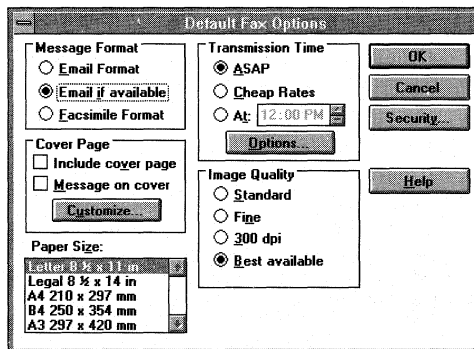
Setting Fax Options

You can customize your faxes by setting options that apply to all of your faxes (*global*). You can also set options for each fax message you send, temporarily overriding the global settings.

► **To set global fax options**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. From the Fax menu, choose Options.
3. In the Default Fax Options dialog box, set the options you want for sending faxes, and then choose OK.

For help, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.



Setting Options for an Individual Fax

You can set options for the current fax message, temporarily overriding the global settings. If you want, you can save them as the global settings.

► **To set options for an individual fax**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. On the toolbar, click the Compose button.
3. On the toolbar, click the Options button.
4. In the Options dialog box, choose Fax.
5. In the Fax Message Options dialog box, set the options you want for the current fax.

If you want to save the new settings for all future faxes, select the Save As Defaults check box.

6. Choose OK.
7. In the Options dialog box, choose OK.
8. Send the fax as usual.

For help with the dialog boxes, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog boxes.

Managing Outgoing Faxes

Whether you're using a fax modem installed on your computer or a fax modem on the network, you can view the *queue*, or list of faxes waiting to be sent. If the fax modem is installed on your computer, you can reschedule fax send times or delete any faxes in the queue. If you're using a fax modem on the network, you can only reschedule or delete faxes that you have sent.

► **To delete or reschedule an outgoing fax**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. From the Fax menu, choose Queue.
3. Select the fax you want to delete or reschedule.
4. To delete the fax, choose Cancel Send.

To reschedule the fax, choose Reschedule. In the New Time dialog box, select the new send time, and then choose OK.

Receiving a Fax

You can receive a fax directly via a fax modem on your computer, or another person who has a fax modem on their computer can use Mail to forward a fax to you. In either case, incoming faxes appear exactly like incoming mail messages in your Mail Inbox. You can view a fax on your screen, print it, save it on your hard disk, reply to it, or forward it. For more information about using Mail, see Chapter 4, "Mail."

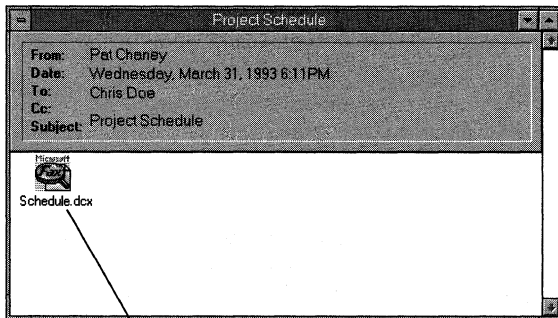
Note If you have a fax modem on your computer, in order to receive a fax, you must either have Mail running on your computer or have quit Mail without signing out. See "Quitting Mail" in Chapter 4, "Mail," for information about quitting mail without signing out.

If you are using a phone line for both voice and fax, you can use the Answer Now! command on the Fax menu in Mail to switch the phone line to receive a fax.

The fax you receive may be a secured fax that requires a password or key. For more information about receiving a secured fax, see "Using Security" later in this chapter.

► **To read a fax**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. Double-click the fax message you want to read.
3. If the message has an attached document, double-click the icon to read the document.



Icon for an attached document

When you open an attached document, the application that was used to create the document starts up automatically, if the application is on your hard disk. For example, if the fax contains an attached spreadsheet created with Microsoft Excel, when you double-click the attachment, Microsoft Excel starts and opens the spreadsheet. The attached document has a filename extension that indicates its original application. In this example, the spreadsheet has an .XLS extension.

An attachment that has a .DCX extension is in *facsimile format*. This is a standard format used for sending faxes when the recipient may not have the application the sender used; each page of the fax is stored as an image. When you double-click an attachment that has a .DCX extension, the FaxViewer window opens, displaying the contents of the fax.

The FaxViewer window can be used to:

- Scale or rotate a fax for viewing.
- Enhance or reverse the fax image for viewing and printing, if the resolution of your printer is lower than the resolution of the received image.
- Print a fax.
- Save a fax.
- Export a single page as a .PCX file.

For more information about FaxViewer, see Help for PC Fax. For more information about reading documents in other formats, see “Associating Files with Applications” in Help for File Manager.

Forwarding a Fax

If you have a shared fax modem on your computer, you need to forward any faxes you receive that are intended for other people. To forward a fax, you first need to open it so you can identify the recipient.

► To forward a fax

1. In the Mail window, double-click the fax message.

If the fax was sent from Mail or from an application, the To box displays the name of the intended recipient. If the fax was sent from a standard fax machine, you must double-click the attached fax icon in order to view the cover page and find the intended recipient's name.

2. On the toolbar, choose the Forward button.
3. In the To box, type the name of the intended recipient.
4. On the toolbar, choose the Send button.

Using Security

With PC Fax, you can ensure the security of the faxes you send by *encrypting* them. An encrypted fax cannot be read by anyone except the intended recipient. Encrypting “locks” a fax. The recipient must *decrypt* the fax to “unlock” it. There are two ways to encrypt a fax: *password encryption* and *key encryption*. You can also send a fax with a *digital signature*, which assures all recipients that only you could have sent it.

To send or view a fax using key encryption or a digital signature, you must use *advanced security*. Advanced security uses two keys: a *public key* you give to fax recipients, and a *private key*, which only you use.

Password encryption is less secure than key encryption, but it is sufficient for many situations. Password encryption is the easiest to set up, since it does not require establishing advanced security. Also, you choose the password (and it is short), so it is easy to give to another person over the phone.

With advanced security, a key contains 154 computer-generated characters and is usually exchanged between sender and recipient on a floppy disk. For more information, see “Sending and Receiving Key-Secured Faxes” later in this chapter.

Both sender and recipient must be using PC Fax to use any of these security options.

Sending or Receiving a Password-Secured Fax

You must select the Password option for each password-encrypted fax you send.

► **To send a password-encrypted fax**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. On the toolbar, click the Compose button.
3. On the toolbar, click the Options button.
4. In the Options dialog box, choose Fax.
5. In the Fax Message Options dialog box, choose Security.
6. Select Password.
7. In the Type Password box, type the password, and then type it again in the Verify box.
8. Choose OK.
9. In the Fax Message Options dialog box, choose OK.
10. In the Options dialog box, choose OK.
11. Send the fax as usual.
12. Tell the recipient the password.

For help with the dialog boxes, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog boxes.

► **To read a password-encrypted fax**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. Double-click the fax message you want to read.
3. In the Password box, type the password.
4. Choose OK.
5. A readable copy of the fax appears as a new message in your Inbox.

Establishing and Maintaining Advanced Security

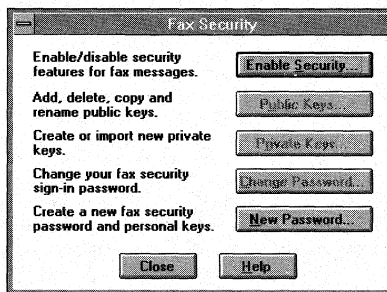
To send or view a fax by using key encryption or a digital signature, you must establish advanced security to set up your public and private keys. After you have your keys set up, you must either start advanced security each time you send or view a fax, or set up your options so that advanced security is always on.

Note A digital signature may be legally binding. If your computer is not in a secure environment, you may want to turn off security or quit Mail if you leave your computer unattended.

► **To establish and start security**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. From the Fax menu, choose Advanced Security.
3. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Enable Security.

The Enable Security button changes to Disable Security.



4. The first time you use advanced security, a message appears, prompting you to establish an account. Choose Yes. In the Password box, type and verify the password, and then choose OK.

If you've already established advanced security, the Password dialog box appears. Type and verify your password, and then choose OK.

5. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Close.

Tip If you leave security on when quitting Mail, the next time you start Mail you will be prompted for your fax security password to start advanced security.

► **To quit security**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. From the Fax menu, choose Advanced Security.
3. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Disable Security.
4. Choose Close.

Managing Security Keys

To send and receive key-secured or digitally signed faxes, you must exchange public keys with your correspondents. You and your correspondents must all be using PC Fax and must have established advanced security.

The easiest way to exchange public keys is to *export* them to a floppy disk and then exchange disks with your correspondents. You can then *import* other people's public keys from the disks.

You should accept public keys only directly from the sender or from a third party you know and trust. Otherwise, you could receive a fax with a digital signature from an unauthorized person, or you might send a secured fax that can be read by someone other than the intended recipient.

Public keys can be either signed or unsigned. To help ensure integrity of public keys, you can put a digital signature on your public key before you export it, and request that anyone giving you his or her public key put a digital signature on the key.

Note You should always back up your public and private security keys so that you can restore them in the event of a computer failure. Exporting the keys to a floppy disk and then locking the disk in a safe place is recommended.

► **To export your public key**

1. Insert a disk in a disk drive.
2. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
3. From the Fax menu, choose Advanced Security.
4. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Enable Security.
5. Type your password, and then choose OK.
6. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Public Keys.
7. In the Public Keys dialog box, select your fax account, and then choose Export.
8. In the File Name box, type a name for the public-key file. The filename extension is .AWP for an unsigned key and .AWS for a signed key.
9. In the Drives list, select the floppy disk drive.
10. Choose OK.
11. In the Public Keys dialog box, choose Close.
12. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Close.

For help with the dialog boxes, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog boxes.

► **To import a public key**

1. Insert the disk containing the public key into a disk drive.
2. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Enable Security, if security is not already on.
3. Choose Public Keys.
4. In the Public Keys dialog box, choose Import.
5. In the Drives list, select the floppy disk drive.
6. In the list, select the .AWP or .AWS file containing your public key. Or type the filename in the File Name box.
7. Choose OK.
8. In the Public Keys dialog box, choose Close.
9. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Close.

For help with the dialog boxes, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog boxes.

► **To back up or restore your private key**

- Follow the procedures for exporting and importing public keys, but instead of the Public Keys button, choose the Private Keys button in the Fax Security dialog box. The filename extension for a private key is .AWR.

Store your private-key backup in a secure location.

Important When you import a private key, you are prompted for the password that was in effect at the time you exported the key for backup. If you plan to change your password, make a note of the old password and store it with the key backup.

Sending and Receiving Key-Secured Faxes

When advanced security is on, you can send a key-encrypted or digitally signed fax. You can also read a secured fax that you have received. You can set the key-encrypt and sign options as global fax options, but they are effective only when advanced security is on.

With key encryption, the sender of a fax uses the recipient's public key to encrypt the fax. When the recipient receives the fax, he or she uses the private key to decrypt the message.

Digital signature works in reverse. The sender uses his or her private key to "sign" the fax. Anyone can read it. But only recipients having the sender's public key can verify the sender's identity.

You can also send a fax that is both digitally signed and encrypted.

► **To send a key-encrypted or digitally signed fax**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. From the Fax menu, choose Advanced Security.
3. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Enable Security.
4. Type your password, and then choose OK.
5. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Close.
6. From the Fax menu, choose Options.
7. In the Default Fax Options dialog box, choose Security.
8. In the Fax Message Security Options dialog box, select the option(s) you want.

9. Choose OK.
10. In the Default Fax Options dialog box, choose OK.
11. Send the fax.

For help with the dialog boxes, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog boxes.

► **To read a key-encrypted fax**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. From the Fax menu, choose Advanced Security.
3. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Enable Security.
4. Type your password, and then choose OK.
5. In the Fax Security dialog box, choose Close.
6. Double-click the secured fax you want to read. If it is an encrypted fax, a readable copy will appear as a new message in your Inbox.

If it is a digitally signed fax, the signature will be verified. Choose Launch to read the fax.

Tips for Travelers

If you plan to take your fax modem and computer to other locations, and you use the Personal Address Book in Mail, you need to use the international format when addressing the fax.

The international format is:

+countrycode-areacode-phonenum

Be sure to include the plus sign and the hyphens.

- To have PC Fax dial your long-distance credit-card number for you, specify the number in the Long Distance Calls and International Calls boxes in the Modem Dialing Options dialog box when you set up your fax modem.
- When you go to another country, you can use Control Panel to change your fax number, and numbers from your Personal Address Book will be used.

For example, if you send a fax to a local recipient by using a Personal Address Book entry that has an international-format number, PC Fax determines that the country code and area code aren't required, so it doesn't dial them. If you go to another country and send a fax to the same recipient, PC Fax determines that it now needs to dial the access code for an international line, the country code, the area code, and then the number.

ClipBook Viewer

ClipBook Viewer provides temporary or long-term storage for information you want to move, save, or share. It includes:

- **Clipboard**—A temporary storage location for information you cut or copy. Information on the Clipboard remains there until you cut or copy another piece of information onto it or until you quit Microsoft® Windows™ for Workgroups.
- **Local ClipBook**—A long-term storage location for information you want to save, share, or move. Each piece of information you paste onto your Local ClipBook is called a *page*. The Local ClipBook is like a personal notebook: It stores multiple pages of information. You copy a page of information back onto your Clipboard when you want to use it in another application. Unlike the Clipboard, the Local ClipBook stores the information even when you quit Windows for Workgroups.
- **ClipBook Viewer**—An application that enables you to view information on the Clipboard, the Local ClipBook, and ClipBooks on other computers.

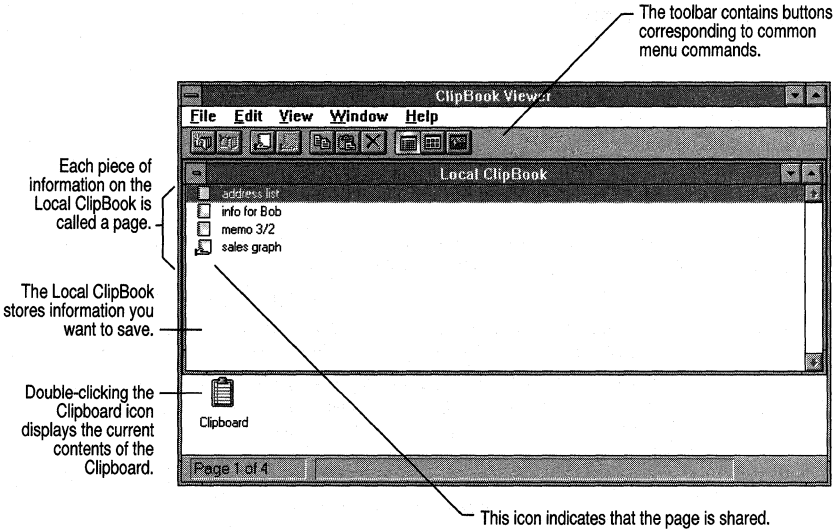
When you use the Microsoft Windows Network, you can use your Local ClipBook to share information, such as a drawing, a chart, or a section of text, with other people on the network. You can also create *links* in your documents to information that is already being shared by other people on their ClipBooks, ensuring that your documents are updated whenever the information changes.

For basic information about using the Clipboard, see your Windows or Windows for Workgroups documentation.

Using the ClipBook Viewer Window

ClipBook Viewer has two windows—the Clipboard window, which displays the current contents of the Clipboard; and the Local ClipBook window, which displays the contents of your Local ClipBook.

When you choose the ClipBook Viewer icon in the Main group, the following window appears.













► **To view the contents of the Clipboard or Local ClipBook**

1. In the Main group, choose the ClipBook Viewer icon.
2. From the Window menu, choose Clipboard or Local ClipBook.

You can also select the window or choose the icon you want.

The ClipBook Viewer toolbar contains the following buttons, which are shortcuts for menu commands.

Use this button	Or this command	To
	Connect	Connect to a ClipBook on another computer.
	Disconnect	Disconnect from a ClipBook on another computer.
	Share	Share a Local ClipBook page.
	Stop Sharing	Stop sharing a Local ClipBook page.

Use this button	Or this command	To
	Copy	Copy the selected ClipBook page onto the Clipboard.
	Paste	Paste the contents of the Clipboard onto the Local ClipBook.
	Delete	Delete the contents of the Clipboard or the selected Local ClipBook page.
	Table Of Contents	Display the titles of the pages saved on a ClipBook.
	Thumbnails	Display small pictures (thumbnails) of each page on a ClipBook.
	Full Page	Display the contents of the selected page on a ClipBook.

Note Sometimes the line length of the information you copy or cut changes so that all of it is visible in the Local ClipBook window. When you paste the information from the Clipboard into an application, the formatting is intact.

The Clipboard accepts several text and graphics formats. To view the available formats, use the View menu in ClipBook Viewer.

Saving the Contents of the Clipboard

There are two ways to save the contents of the Clipboard—you can save it as a page on the Local ClipBook or save it to a file (with a .CLP extension). The advantages of saving to the Local ClipBook are that the information is easier to retrieve, and you can share the information on the Local ClipBook with others. You might want to save the contents of the Clipboard to a file if you need to share information with someone whose computer can read information only in the Clipboard file format. For more information about saving to a file, see Help for ClipBook Viewer.

► To save the contents of the Clipboard to the Local ClipBook

1. In the Main group, choose the ClipBook Viewer icon.
2. From the Window menu, choose Local ClipBook. Or click the window to select it.
3. On the toolbar, click the Paste button. Or choose Paste from the Edit menu.
4. In the Page Name box, type a name for the page you are saving the information to.
5. Choose OK. A new page appears in the Local ClipBook window.

Before you can insert a Local ClipBook page into another document, you must copy the page back onto the Clipboard (unless the information is still on the Clipboard).

- ▶ **To copy a page from the Local ClipBook back onto the Clipboard**
 1. In the Main group, choose the ClipBook Viewer icon.
 2. From the Window menu, choose Local ClipBook. Or click the window to select it.
 3. Select the page you want to copy.
 4. On the toolbar, click the Copy button. Or choose Copy from the Edit menu. The contents of the page are displayed in the Clipboard window.

Sharing Information with Other People

You can share pages from your Local ClipBook with other people, or use pages they have shared.

Sharing Local ClipBook Pages

When information is on the Clipboard, you can save it as a page on the Local ClipBook and then share it with other people. Others can then connect to your Local ClipBook and view or change the information you have shared, depending on the type of access you have specified.

When a Local ClipBook page is shared, there is an icon next to the page title indicating that the page is shared.



- ▶ **To share a page on the Local ClipBook**
 1. In the Local ClipBook window, select the page you want to share.
 2. On the toolbar, click the Share button. Or choose Share from the File menu.

Select any of the following options in the Share ClipBook Page dialog box, and then choose OK.

Select	To
Start Application On Connect	Automatically start the application that was used to create the information in the shared page. If this option is not selected, other people cannot use the information unless the application used to create the information is already running.

Select	To
Access Type	Assign the type of access others can have to this information. Note that full access is available only with some applications: With most applications, other people cannot modify shared ClipBook pages.
Passwords	Assign a password, if you specified read-only or full access.



► **To stop sharing a page on the Local ClipBook**

1. In the Local ClipBook window, select the page you want to stop sharing.
2. On the toolbar, click the Stop Sharing button. Or choose Stop Sharing from the File menu.

Connecting to a ClipBook on Another Computer

You might want to connect to a ClipBook on another computer in order to work on a document with someone else, view information, or embed or link objects from the other computer. For information about using ClipBook Viewer to embed or link objects, see the next section in this chapter.



► **To connect to a ClipBook on another computer**

1. In the Main group, choose the ClipBook Viewer icon.
2. On the toolbar, click the Connect button. Or choose Connect from the File menu.
3. In the Select Computer dialog box, type the name of the computer that has the ClipBook you want to connect to, or click the arrow to the right of the Computer Name box to select from a list of previous connections.

The Computers box lists the available computers by workgroup name. Expand (choose) a workgroup name to display a list of computers in the workgroup, and then select the name of the computer that has the ClipBook you want to connect to.

If, typically, you know the name of the computer you want to connect to, you may want to clear the Always Browse check box.

4. Choose OK. The contents of the ClipBook you connected to are displayed in a window.

You can disconnect from a ClipBook on another computer when you are done using it.



► **To disconnect from a ClipBook on another computer**

1. In the Main group, choose the ClipBook Viewer icon.
2. Select the ClipBook window or icon that you want to disconnect from.
3. On the toolbar, click the Disconnect button. Or choose Disconnect from the File menu.

Embedding or Linking an Object from Another Computer

Object linking and embedding (OLE), transferring and sharing information between Windows-based applications, has been enhanced for Windows for Workgroups version 3.11. For basic information about linking and embedding objects, see your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user's guide.

Using the Microsoft Windows Network, you can link or embed an object from a document on another computer into a document on your computer. The object must already be pasted as a page on the other computer's ClipBook, and it must be designated as shared.

Note When you link an object from another computer by using the ClipBook, you cannot change the linked object by using your computer. However, changes made to the original document do appear in your document.

► **To embed or link an object from another computer**

1. Follow the steps for connecting to a ClipBook on another computer, described in the previous section.
2. Select the shared ClipBook page that you want to embed or link into your document.
3. From the Edit menu, choose Copy. A copy of the object is placed onto your Clipboard.
4. Open the document in which you want to embed or link the object.
5. From the Edit menu of this document, choose Paste to embed the object, or choose Paste Link to link the object.

Some applications have a Paste Special command. If you choose this command, a dialog box with a list of formats appears. Select the format you want the information to be displayed in, and then choose Paste to embed the object, or choose Paste Link to link the object. The embedded or linked object appears in your document.

Note Some formats do not work with OLE. If you choose such a format and then choose Copy or Paste, information is copied from the Clipboard, but an embedded or linked object is not created.

Network Applications

This chapter introduces the applications included in the Network group of Microsoft® Windows™ for Workgroups version 3.11. The Network group includes applications that you can use to perform many common networking tasks:

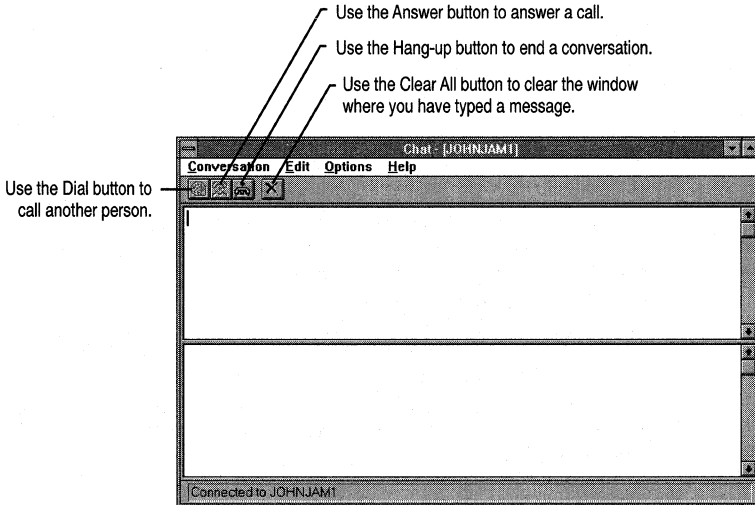
- Use Chat, Net Watcher, WinMeter, and WinPopup to perform workgroup tasks, such as exchanging messages or monitoring workgroup activities and resource usage. If you are running a network other than the Microsoft Windows Network, these applications may not be set up.
- Use Schedule+ to schedule events and communicate with co-workers who are using the Microsoft Windows Network. Schedule+ is always installed, regardless of the network you are running.
- Use Log On/Off to log on to and off of the Microsoft Windows Network. Log On/Off will not be set up if you are running a network other than the Microsoft Windows Network.

Online Help provides procedures for performing tasks. To view Help, choose the Contents command from the Help menu in each application.

Chat



Using Chat, you can have an electronic conversation with up to seven other people by exchanging typed messages. Unlike an electronic mail message that you compose and send to another person, a Chat message is interactive: it is visible to the recipient as you type it.



For information about the following tasks, see Help for Chat:

- Starting or ending a conversation
- Answering a call
- Calling more than one person
- Changing the font or background color
- Turning sound on or off

Log On/Off



You can log on to or off of the Microsoft Windows Network at any time by choosing the Log On/Off icon. If you are logged off, choosing this icon logs you on; if you are logged on, it logs you off.

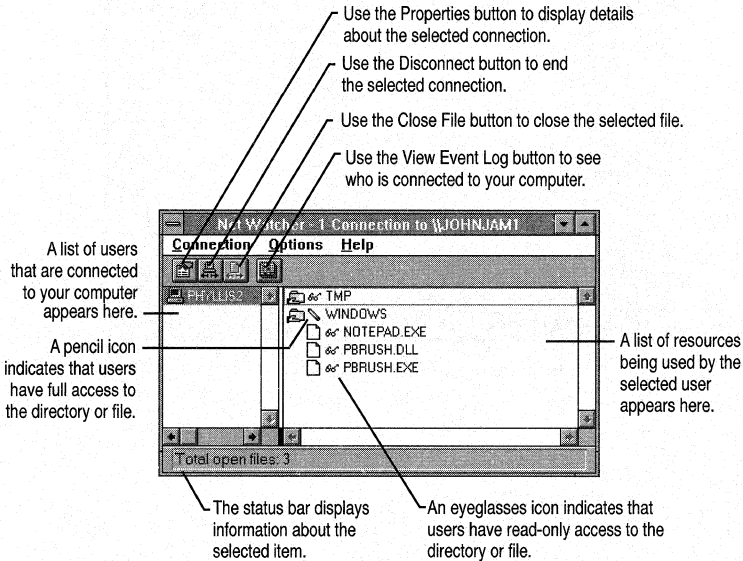
When logged off, you can share your resources but cannot gain access to resources that are being shared by other people. To browse through and connect to resources that are being shared by others, you must first log on.

You can also log on and off by using the Network option in Control Panel. For more information, see Chapter 8, “Customizing Network Settings and Improving Performance.”

Net Watcher



You can use Net Watcher to find out which of your computer resources, such as files and printers, are being used by other people on the network. You can also see which computers are connected to your computer and, if necessary, disconnect them.



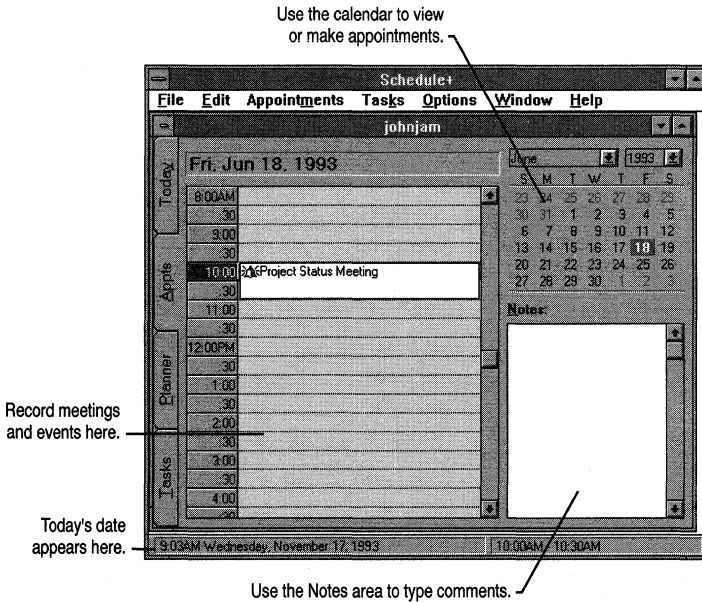
If you are using the event log, you can also use Net Watcher to view your log file. For information about the event log, see Chapter 8, “Customizing Network Settings and Improving Performance.”

For more information about using Net Watcher, see Help for Net Watcher.

Schedule+



Schedule+ is a personal scheduling tool that you can use to keep track of appointments and tasks and to record notes. You can also use Schedule+ to check the schedules of other people and share your schedule with them.



For information about the following tasks, see Help for Schedule+:

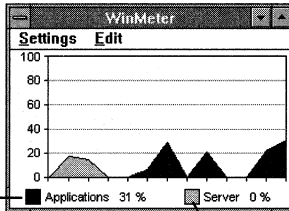
- Adding an appointment
- Adding a recurring appointment
- Changing an appointment
- Scheduling a meeting
- Adding a task

WinMeter



WinMeter graphically displays how much of your central processing unit (CPU) you and other people on the network are using. For example, if someone in your workgroup is printing a file from your hard disk, WinMeter displays the percentage of your CPU being used as the other person connects to and prints the file.

Shows the percentage of your CPU time that you are using.



Shows the percentage of your CPU time being used by others in your workgroup.

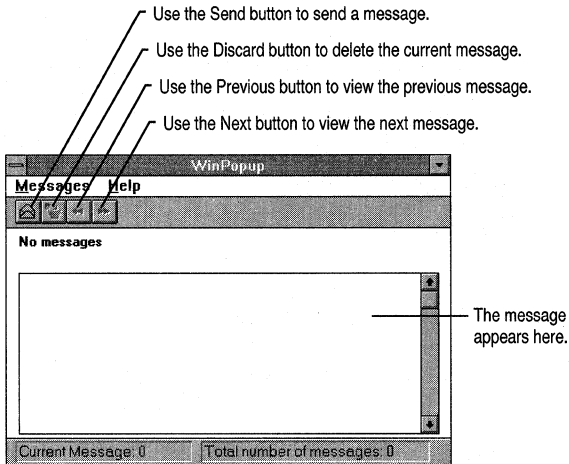
Note To adjust the speed at which your applications run and your resources are shared when others are connected to your computer, choose the Networks icon in Control Panel, and then choose the Startup button. For more information, see Help for Control Panel.

WinPopup



You can use WinPopup to send and receive messages if you have Microsoft Windows Network, LAN Manager, or Windows NT™ or Windows NT Advanced Server. However, you must specify Microsoft Windows Network during Windows Setup in order for WinPopup to be set up.

You can send a message to another person or computer, or you can send a message simultaneously to all the members of a workgroup. You also can set up WinPopup to notify you when a document has finished printing.



WinPopup does not start automatically. You can either start WinPopup by double-clicking the WinPopup icon in the Network group, or you can choose to have WinPopup start automatically each time you start Windows for Workgroups.

► **To start WinPopup each time you start Windows for Workgroups**

1. In the Main group, choose the Control Panel icon.
2. In the Control Panel window, choose the Network icon.
3. Choose the Startup button.
4. Under Startup Options, select the Enable WinPopup check box, and then choose OK.

For information about the following tasks, see Help for WinPopup:

- Sending a message
- Deleting the current message
- Viewing other messages
- Deleting all messages

CHAPTER 8

Customizing Network Settings and Improving Performance

You can customize the way your computer works with the Microsoft® Windows™ Network. Some of the features described in this chapter also apply to using Windows for Workgroups with the Microsoft Windows NT™ operating system, Windows NT Advanced Server, or LAN Manager. For information about other networks, see Chapter 9, “Using Other Networks.”

You can also select options to improve the speed of your applications.

Customizing Microsoft Windows Network Settings

This section provides procedures for the following tasks:

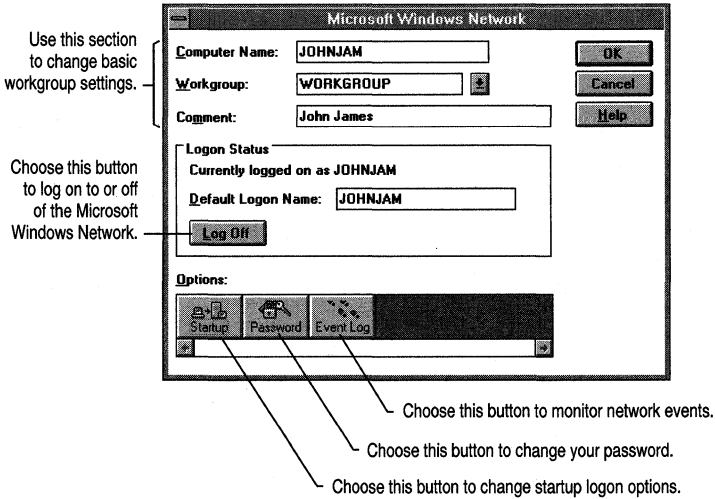
- Logging on to and off of the Microsoft Windows Network
- Changing workgroup settings
- Changing startup settings
- Changing your logon password
- Specifying which network events to log
- Enabling or disabling sharing

Additional tasks, such as using other networks and setting protocols and advanced options for network adapters, are described in Help for Windows Setup. For information about how to install and configure a device driver for a network adapter, see Appendix D, “Configuring Network-Adapter Drivers.”

Customizing Network Settings by Using Control Panel

By using the Network option in Control Panel, you can select startup options for logging on. For example, you can change the default logon name and you can choose to start Windows for Workgroups without logging on to the network.

When you choose the Network icon in the Control Panel window, the Microsoft Windows Network dialog box appears.



Note Several settings that you can change by using the Network option do not take effect until you restart your computer. Before you can restart your computer, you must quit any MS-DOS-based applications that are running. You may want to save your files and quit these applications before changing network settings.

Logging On and Off

You can log on to or off of the Microsoft Windows Network at any time. When logged off, you can share your resources, such as directories and printers, but you cannot gain access to resources being shared by other people. To browse through and connect to resources being shared by others, you must first log on.

Logging off of the network after you are finished using Windows for Workgroups is useful if more than one person uses your computer, or if you don't want unauthorized people to have access to the resources you connect to. If others use your computer, they can log on by using their logon name and gain access to resources.

Caution Logging off disconnects you from other computers or resources that you may be connected to. To prevent losing your work, make sure you save any files you are working on, and quit any application you are running from another person's computer, before you log off.

► To log on or off

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the Network icon.
2. In the Microsoft Windows Network dialog box, choose Log On or Log Off.

For help on the Microsoft Windows Network dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.

Note You can also log on to or off of the Microsoft Windows Network by choosing the Log On/Off icon in the Network group.

If you choose to log on, you need to specify your logon name and password in the logon dialog box.

Changing Workgroup Settings

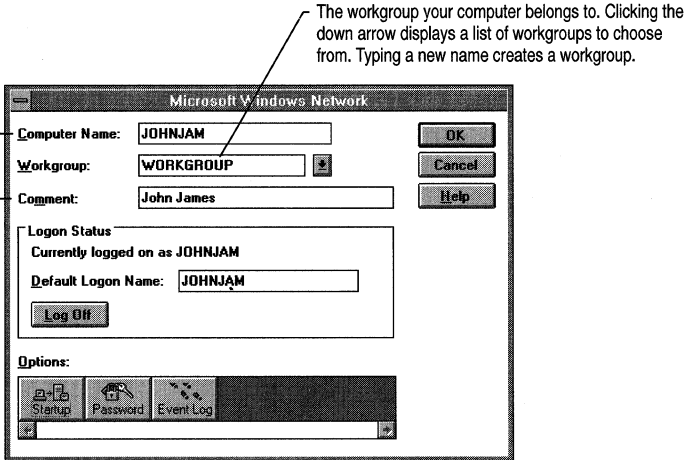
You can change your computer name, the workgroup your computer belongs to, and the comment that follows your computer name in dialog boxes that list workgroups and computers. You can also create a new workgroup.

► **To change workgroup settings**

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the Network icon.
2. In the Microsoft Windows Network dialog box, change the settings you want.
For help on the dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.

The name assigned to your computer. You can type a new name.

The comment that appears next to your computer name in dialog boxes.



3. Choose OK.

After you change the settings, a dialog box appears, prompting you to restart your computer. If you have saved your files, you can safely restart.

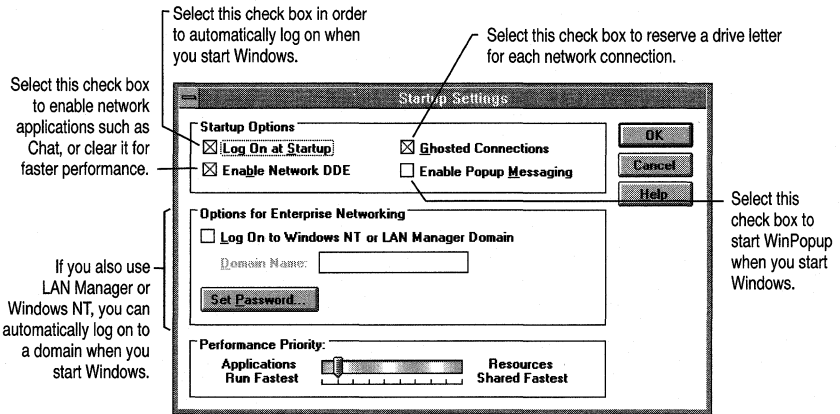
4. Choose Restart Computer to restart.

Changing Startup Settings

You can specify startup options to improve your computer's performance and to automate tasks such as logging on to a network.

► **To specify startup options**

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the Network icon.
2. In the Microsoft Windows Network dialog box, choose Startup.



3. In the Startup Settings dialog box, change the settings you want. Then choose OK.

For help on the dialog boxes, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog boxes.

Changing Your Logon Password

When you connect to a directory, printer, or ClipBook page that someone else is sharing, you may need to supply a password. Windows for Workgroups maintains a list of the passwords you have used and the resources they apply to.

When you start Windows for Workgroups, the logon password you supply “unlocks” the password list. If you connect to a particular resource, and the password for that resource is in the list, you need not supply the password.

If you log on without using a password, your connections are restored automatically and anyone can gain access to them by starting your computer. It is therefore recommended that you use a logon password, and that you change it periodically to keep unauthorized people from using the passwords you save in your password list.

You can use the Network option in Control Panel to change your logon password. If you have been logging on without a password and decide to use one, you can also use the Network option to set your first logon password. If you no longer want to use a logon password, you can delete it.

Note If you are using Microsoft Windows NT or LAN Manager, passwords for servers and domains can also be stored in the password list, if your network

administrator allows it. If you choose to have a domain validate your password when you log on, Windows for Workgroups searches for the password. If Windows cannot find it, a dialog box appears, prompting you for it. You must supply the password to gain access to Windows NT and LAN Manager servers or your Windows for Workgroups resources. For more information about setting and changing network options and passwords, see Help for Control Panel.

► **To change your logon password**

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the Network icon.
2. In the Microsoft Windows Network dialog box, choose Password.
3. Type your current password in the Old Password box and a new password in the New Password box. An asterisk (*) appears for each character you type.
4. In the Confirm New Password box, type your new password again. Then choose OK. Your new password takes effect immediately.

Recording Network Events

There may be times when you want to track things that happen on the network. For example, if you are sharing your printer, you may want a record of how many times people use it. If you have a shared directory, you may want to know who is trying to connect to it. You can record these events in an *event log*.

► **To record network events in the event log**

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the Network icon.
2. In the Microsoft Windows Network dialog box, choose Event Log.
3. Select the Enable Event Log check box.
4. Select the events you want to log from the list on the right, and choose Add to move each to the Record Events list. Or choose Add All. Then choose OK.
5. In the Microsoft Windows Network dialog box, choose OK.

To view the event log, use the Net Watcher application. For information about Net Watcher, see Help for Net Watcher.

Enabling and Disabling Sharing by Using Setup

You can use Windows Setup to control whether you can share your directories or printers with other people on the network.

Note If your network administrator has disabled file and/or print sharing for your network, you will not be able to share your files and/or printers.

► **To enable or disable sharing**

1. In the Network group, choose the Network Setup icon. The Network Setup dialog box appears.
2. If sharing is enabled, the sentence “You can share your files and printers with others” appears. If sharing is disabled, the sentence reads, “You cannot share your files or printers with others.” Choose the Sharing button.
3. In the Sharing dialog box, select one or both check boxes to enable sharing. To disable sharing, clear these check boxes. Then choose OK.
4. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose OK.

A dialog box appears, notifying you that your SYSTEM.INI file has been modified. When you choose OK again, a dialog box appears, prompting you to restart Windows. If you have saved your files, you can safely restart.

5. Choose Restart Windows to restart.

Improving Performance

You can make your applications run faster, using 32-bit disk access and 32-bit file access.

For more information about memory management and performance, see your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user’s guide.

32-Bit Disk Access

For most disk-drive controllers that Windows for Workgroups supports, you can speed transfer of information to and from your hard disks.

Note Using 32-bit disk access can be unreliable on some battery-powered portable computers when the computer’s power-saving features are enabled.

► **To set up 32-bit disk access**

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the 386 Enhanced icon.
2. In the Enhanced dialog box, choose Virtual Memory.
3. In the Virtual Memory dialog box, choose Change.
4. Select the Use 32-Bit Disk Access check box, and then choose OK.

A dialog box appears, prompting you to restart Windows. If you have saved your files, you can safely restart.

5. Choose Restart Windows.

After specifying 32-bit disk access and restarting Windows for Workgroups, you can see whether your disk-drive controllers are compatible with 32-bit disk access.

► **To check your disk-drive controller compatibility with 32-bit disk access**

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the 386 Enhanced icon.
2. In the Enhanced dialog box, choose Virtual Memory.
3. In the Virtual Memory dialog box, look at the Disk Status area. If it reads Disk Access: Using MS-DOS or Disk Access: Using BIOS, your controllers cannot take advantage of 32-bit disk access. If it reads Disk Access: Using 32-Bit Disk Access, at least one of your controllers is able to take advantage of 32-bit disk access.

32-Bit File Access

You can use 32-bit file access to write to and read files from the hard disk more quickly.

32-bit file access also provides a faster way to read from and write to the *disk cache*. Information read from your hard disk is saved in a disk cache in your computer's extended memory. The next time an application tries to read that information from the hard disk, the information is supplied directly from memory instead. Information to be written to disk may also be temporarily stored in the disk cache.

► **To set up 32-bit file access**

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the 386 Enhanced icon.
2. In the Enhanced dialog box, choose Virtual Memory.
3. In the Virtual Memory dialog box, choose Change.
4. Select the 32-Bit File Access check box.

The default cache size is 512K. If you have 4 MB of RAM or less, leave the Cache Size setting at 512K. If you have more RAM, you might want to increase this to 1 MB to speed up file access.

5. Choose OK.
6. Choose Restart Windows.

After specifying 32-bit file access and restarting Windows for Workgroups, you can see which of your disk drives are using 32-bit file access.

- ▶ **To see which disk drives are using 32-bit file access**
 1. In the Control Panel window, choose the 386 Enhanced icon.
 2. In the Enhanced dialog box, choose Virtual Memory.
 3. In the Virtual Memory dialog box, look at the Disk Status area. Under File Access, a list of your disk drives is shown, with the type of file access being used on that drive. File Access: 16-Bit means the disk drive cannot take advantage of 32-bit file access. File Access: 32-Bit means the disk drive is using 32-bit file access.

Improving Performance with 32-Bit File Access

In Windows for Workgroups version 3.11, 16-bit file access is the default and 16-bit SMARTDrive caches are used for disk caching. When you use 32-bit file access, a 32-bit cache is created for use with file management on your hard disks, and the SMARTDrive cache is used only with your floppy disk drives.

If you rarely or never use your floppy disk drives, you can set your SMARTDrive Windows cache (*WinCacheSize*) to 0 to save memory. (SMARTDrive typically uses a cache of 512K for 4 MB RAM systems and a 2 MB cache for 8 MB RAM systems.)

If you occasionally use your floppy disk drives, you can reduce the size of your SMARTDrive Windows cache to save memory.

For information about how to disable or reduce the size of your SMARTDrive cache, see “Managing Memory and Performance” in your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user’s guide.

Using Other Networks

This chapter describes how to set up the Microsoft® Windows™ for Workgroups version 3.11 operating system for use with other networks.

If you already have a network installed and working, it will be set up to work with the Microsoft Windows Network, the network included with Windows for Workgroups, if it is compatible. Compatible networks include Novell® NetWare® and Banyan® VINES®.

Also, you can use these networks in place of the Microsoft Windows Network. For information about specific versions of networks compatible with Windows for Workgroups, see the online document NETWORKS.WRI. To view this document, you can use the Write application in the Accessories group.

Note You can use the Microsoft Windows Network to gain access to shared resources that are on computers running the Microsoft Windows NT™ operating system, the Microsoft Windows NT Advanced Server, Microsoft LAN Manager, and any other networks compatible with LAN Manager, such as 3Com® 3+Open®, DEC® Pathworks®, and IBM® LANServer.

For an overview of networking terms and concepts, see Chapter 1, “A Brief Overview of Microsoft Windows Networking.”

Setting Up Windows for Workgroups to Work with Another Network

If you want to use another network either in addition to or in place of the Microsoft Windows Network, you can set it up either when you set up Windows for Workgroups or later from within Windows.

Note Before you set up Windows for Workgroups to work with another network, make sure the other network is correctly set up on your computer and that you can use it to connect to a file or print server. For more information, see your network documentation and the Windows for Workgroups online document NETWORKS.WRI.

► **To set up Windows for Workgroups to use another network**

1. In the Network group, choose the Network Setup icon.
2. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose Networks. The Networks dialog box appears.
3. If you want to use your network with the Microsoft Windows Network, make sure Install Microsoft Windows Network is selected. Then select Other, and select the network you want from the list.

If you want to use that network without the Microsoft Windows Network, select Install Windows Support For The Following Network Only. Then select the network you want from the list.

4. Choose OK.
5. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose OK. A dialog box appears, prompting you to restart your computer. If you have saved your files, it is safe to restart.
6. Choose Restart Computer in order for your changes to take effect.

Connecting to a Directory on a Network Server

Connecting to a directory on a network server is similar to connecting to a shared directory on another computer running the Microsoft Windows Network. For more information about connecting to a shared directory, see Chapter 3, "New File Manager and Print Manager Features."

► **To connect to a directory on a network server**

1. In the Main group, choose the File Manager icon.
2. On the toolbar, click the Connect Network Drive button. Or choose Connect Network Drive from the Disk menu.
3. In the Connect Network Drive dialog box, type the path for the network directory in the Path box. In the Drive list, select the letter you want to use for the connection. Then choose OK.

Or choose the button named for your network. For example, if you are using Novell NetWare, choose NetWare. The Network-Drive Connections dialog box appears.

4. In the Network–Drive Connections dialog box, select the letter you want to use for the connection, and then either type the network path in the Path box or use the Browse button to find and select a directory on one of the network servers you are connected to. By using the Browse Connections dialog box, you can also connect to additional servers.

If you are running Novell NetWare, you can also perform NetWare-specific tasks when using the Network–Drive Connections dialog box.

5. Choose Connect (Map) to connect to the specified directory.
6. Choose Close.

For help, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog boxes.

You disconnect from a directory on a network server the same way you disconnect from a shared directory on another computer in a workgroup. For more information, see Chapter 3, “New File Manager and Print Manager Features.”

Connecting to a Network Printer

Using Windows for Workgroups, you can easily connect to network printers.

► To connect to a network printer

1. In the Main group, choose the Print Manager icon.
2. On the toolbar, click the Connect Network Printer button. Or choose Connect Network Printer from the Printer menu.
3. In the Connect Network Printer dialog box, type the path for the printer in the Path box. Select the port you want to use, and then choose OK.
Or choose the button named for your network. For example, if you are using Novell NetWare, choose NetWare.
4. In the Network–Printer Connections dialog box, select the port and the path of the printer you want to connect to. Then choose Connect.
You can also disconnect from printers, connect to additional servers, and set printer options.
5. Choose Close.

For help, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog boxes.

For more information, see Chapter 3, “New File Manager and Print Manager Features.”

Using Microsoft Windows NT and Microsoft LAN Manager

Using Windows for Workgroups, you can connect to and use files, directories, and printers that are shared on a Microsoft Windows NT or Microsoft LAN Manager server. In addition, people using LAN Manager can connect to the resources you have shared with the Microsoft Windows Network. For you to be able to view the name of a LAN Manager server, at least one computer on the network must have a workgroup name that matches the name of the primary domain of the LAN Manager server.

You can use Control Panel to set options for Windows NT or LAN Manager. You can choose to log on to a LAN Manager domain when you log on to the Microsoft Windows Network. You can also change your passwords on various LAN Manager domains.

► **To set Windows NT or LAN Manager options**

1. In the Main group, choose the Control Panel icon.
2. In the Control Panel window, choose the Network icon.
3. If you want to log on to a Windows NT or LAN Manager domain when you log on to Windows for Workgroups at startup, choose the Startup button under Options. The Startup Settings dialog box appears.
4. Under Options For Enterprising Networking, select the Log On To Windows NT Or LAN Manager Domain check box.
5. In the Domain Name box, type the name of the domain you want to log on to.
6. If you want to change your password for a Windows NT or LAN Manager domain, choose Set Password, complete the Change Password dialog box, and then choose OK. Your new password takes effect immediately.
7. In the Startup Settings dialog box, choose OK.
8. In the Microsoft Windows Network dialog box, choose OK.

For help, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog boxes.

Maintaining Mail

Before people in your workgroup can use Mail, they need to connect to a *workgroup post office* (WGPO). If your workgroup does not have a WGPO, someone needs to create and manage one. You should read this appendix if you are the person who has that responsibility.

Mail consists of the Mail application and the WGPO. The Mail application runs on each workgroup member's computer. The WGPO is stored in a directory on one computer running Microsoft® Windows™ for Workgroups and is shared by workgroup members. The Postoffice Manager command, which you use to manage the WGPO, is available only in the copy of Mail running on the computer where the WGPO is located.

Important The WGPO can be on any computer in the workgroup, but Postoffice Manager is installed only on the computer of the person who sets up the WGPO. Only the person maintaining the Mail system can use Postoffice Manager.

The WGPO contains information about mail accounts. To communicate by mail, people must be connected to the same WGPO and each person must have a mail account. Two people connected to different WGPOs cannot exchange messages. If you want people who are connected to different WGPOs to send mail to each other, you must purchase the Microsoft Mail: PostOffice Upgrade for Microsoft Windows for Workgroups.

You can use Postoffice Manager to perform the following tasks:

- Add or remove names from the WGPO.
- Modify accounts.
- Manage the disk space where the WGPO is stored.
- Manage the Mail system files.

For more information about Mail, including information for advanced users, see the MAIL.WRI online document. To view this document, you can use the Write application in the Accessories group.

If your company already has a message system that you will use instead of Mail, see "Using Mail with Other Message Systems" later in this chapter.

Creating a Workgroup Post Office

There are three steps to creating a workgroup post office:

- Verify that there is enough disk space on the computer where the WGPO will be stored.
- Create the WGPO and an administrator account.
- Share the WGPO, so that all people in your workgroup can use it.

Instead of creating a WGPO on a computer that is part of your workgroup, you can create it on an existing network, such as one used with Novell® NetWare® or Microsoft LAN Manager. For information, see "Using Mail with Other Message Systems" later in this chapter.

Verifying Disk Space

There should be 360K of available disk space for an empty WGPO, in addition to disk space for accounts. For a small WGPO with only a few accounts, only a few megabytes of disk space are required. For a larger WGPO, you may need 10 to 15 MB, or more.

If there are many people using the WGPO or there is a high volume of messages, either use a computer just for the post office, or use a 486 computer with a fast disk drive and at least 8 MB of memory.

On each workgroup member's computer, there should be enough available disk space for his or her Mail messages. The amount of disk space needed depends on the number and type of messages stored in Mail. A small number of messages requires about 100K of disk space; a large number may require several megabytes.

Creating the Post Office and the Administrator Account

After you have verified disk space, you can create the WGPO and the administrator account. There can be only one WGPO, but it can contain many workgroups. Only members of the same WGPO can communicate with each other.

The administrator account is the first account you create in the WGPO. You can modify this account but not remove it.

Important The computer where your WGPO is located must be turned on at all times so that people can exchange mail.

► **To create a WGPO and the administrator account**

1. In the Network group, choose the Mail icon.
2. In the Welcome To Mail dialog box, select Create A New Workgroup Postoffice, and then choose OK.
3. A dialog box appears, asking whether you want to create a post office. Choose Yes.
4. In the Create Workgroup Postoffice dialog box, select a location for your WGPO. You can create the WGPO either on your hard disk or on a shared directory on a network.

To create the WGPO on your hard disk, select a drive from the Drives box and a directory from the Create WGPO In list.

To create the WGPO on a network, choose Network, and then select a computer name and shared directory in the dialog box that appears.

5. Choose OK. The following dialog box appears.

Use this dialog box to create the administrator account.

Enter Your Administrator Account Details	
Name:	John James
Mailbox:	JOHNJAM
Password:	secret
Phone #1:	(206) 555-5555
Phone #2:	
Office:	5
Department:	Sales
Notes:	
OK Cancel	

6. Supply the needed information, and then choose OK.

The tables following this procedure explain the options.

7. In the confirmation dialog box that appears, choose OK.

Note No distinction is made between uppercase and lowercase letters; for example, *MARIAS*, *MariaS*, and *mariaS* are considered to be the same. Use a

name that is easy to remember. You should not use characters from the ASCII extended character set. You can use only letters and numbers in the Mailbox and Password boxes.

You must provide the following information when creating an administrator account.

Box	Description
Name	Type your full name. The maximum length is 30 characters, and the default is the name you used when setting up Windows for Workgroups.
Mailbox	Type a unique name that is easy to remember, such as an abbreviation of your name. You will use this name to sign in. The maximum length is 10 characters, and the default is your Windows logon name.
Password	Type a password that is easy to remember. You will use this password and your mailbox name to sign in to Mail. The maximum length is 8 characters, and the default is PASSWORD.

The following is optional information you can specify.

Box	Description
Phone #1	Type your phone number. The maximum length is 32 characters.
Phone #2	Type your second phone or fax number. The maximum length is 32 characters.
Office	Type your office location. The maximum length is 32 characters.
Department	Type the name of your department. The maximum length is 32 characters.
Notes	Type any comments about your account. The maximum length is 128 characters.

Sharing the Workgroup Post Office

After you create the WGPO, you must share the WGPO directory with all people connected to the post office.

Caution If you have put the WGPO on a Novell NetWare server, do not share the directory.

► **To share the workgroup post office**

1. In the Main group, choose the File Manager icon.
2. Select the WGPO directory.
3. On the toolbar, click the Share As button. Or choose Share As from the Disk menu.
4. In the Share Name box, type a name for your post office. The default is WGPO, and this name is recommended. If you use a different name, do not use spaces; use letters or numbers.
5. Select the Re-share At Startup check box.
6. Under Access Type, select Full Access.
7. Under Passwords, you can type a full-access password for your WGPO. This is recommended only if you do not want some workgroup members to have access to your mail.
8. Choose OK.

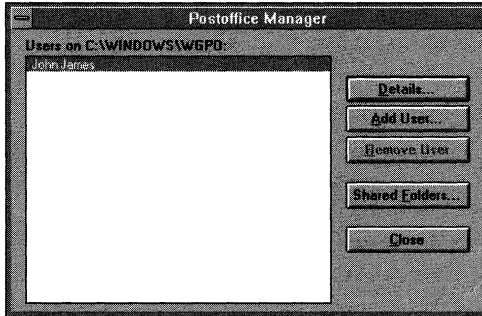
Note After you create a WGPO, the Postoffice Manager command appears on the Mail menu when you start Mail. This command appears only on the computer where you created your WGPO. If you want to run Postoffice Manager from another computer in the workgroup, you must modify your MSMAIL.INI file. For information about modifying MSMAIL.INI, see the online document MAIL.WRI. To view this document, you can use the Write application in the Accessories group.

Starting Postoffice Manager

Before you can start Postoffice Manager, Mail must be running. (For information about starting Mail, see Chapter 4, "Mail.")

► **To start Postoffice Manager**

- From the Mail menu, choose Postoffice Manager. The following dialog box appears.



Using this dialog box, you can add names to the post office, modify accounts, and remove names.

Adding a Person to the WGPO

You can add people to the WGPO, or people can add themselves.

Note We recommend that people add themselves to the WGPO. This can minimize confusion about user information.

If people start Mail on their computer and no account is set up yet, they can add their account information at that time. Make sure that there is only one account for each person. For information about adding an account when starting Mail, see Chapter 4, "Mail."

If you decide to add people to the WGPO, you must provide the name, mailbox name, and password for each person. You can also provide phone number(s), office location, and department, in addition to comments about the account.

► **To add a person's name to the WGPO**

1. From the Mail menu, choose Postoffice Manager.
2. In the Postoffice Manager dialog box, choose Add User.
3. Supply the appropriate information, and then choose OK.

For more information, see “Creating a Workgroup Post Office” earlier in this chapter.

Modifying an Account

You can modify information about a person's account. This information appears only in the Address Book, which you can view by clicking the Address button while composing a message. Information on the person's computer is not updated when you modify the account.

If a person has forgotten his or her password, you can change the password for them; otherwise, people should update their own password when it expires.

► **To modify an account**

1. From the Mail menu, choose Postoffice Manager.
2. In the Postoffice Manager dialog box, select the name of the person whose account you want to modify.
3. Choose Details. The following dialog box appears.

The name of the person whose account you are changing appears here.

Name:	Peter Black
Mailbox:	peterb
Password:	*****
Phone #1:	(206) 555-5554
Phone #2:	
Office:	3
Department:	Sales
Notes:	

OK Cancel

4. Change information as needed, and then choose OK.

Removing an Account

Using Postoffice Manager, you can remove an account from your WGPO.

Note You cannot remove the administrator's account.

► **To remove a name**

1. From the Mail menu, choose Postoffice Manager.
2. In the Postoffice Manager dialog box, select the name you want to remove.
3. Choose Remove User. A confirmation message appears.
4. Choose Yes.

Managing Disk Space

Managing the disk space where the WGPO is stored is one of the most important administrative tasks in maintaining Mail. You must check the status of shared folders and compress these folders to recover unused disk space.

A *shared folder* is public and is stored in the WGPO, unlike a person's private folders, which are stored on his or her computer. All workgroup members can open shared folders to view messages. Anyone in the WGPO can create a shared folder and specify the type of access allowed (Read, Write, or Delete).

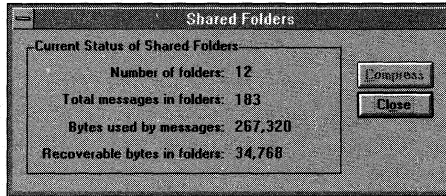
Checking the Status of Shared Folders

By checking the status of shared folders, you determine:

- The number of shared folders.
- The number of messages stored in shared folders.
- The amount of disk space the messages use.
- The amount of disk space you can recover by compressing shared folders.

► **To check the status of shared folders**

1. From the Mail menu, choose Postoffice Manager.
2. In the Postoffice Manager dialog box, choose the Shared Folders button.
The Shared Folders dialog box appears.



Compressing Shared Folders

If you run out of disk space, you need to compress shared folders (you can still gain access to a compressed folder). If you require even more disk space, you can delete old messages and unused folders or move the WGPO to a different directory.

If your shared folders contain a large number of messages, it may take a long time to compress them.

► **To compress shared folders**

1. Ask all workgroup members to close shared folders. You cannot compress shared folders while other people are using them.
2. From the Mail menu, choose Postoffice Manager.
3. In the Postoffice Manager dialog box, choose Shared Folders.
4. In the Shared Folders dialog box, choose Compress.
5. Choose Close.

Managing the Mail System Files

Each person who is using the WGPO has two Mail system files:

- The message file (MSMAIL.MMF)
- The Mail file (MSMAIL.INI)

When you create a WGPO or when workgroup members connect to a post office, these files are automatically modified.

The message file, `MSMAIL.MMF`, stores messages, message folders, and the Personal Address Book. This file is updated as messages are received. The message file for each workgroup member is stored on his or her computer. Your message file is located in the directory where you set up Windows for Workgroups (the default is `C:\WINDOWS`).

The Mail file, `MSMAIL.INI`, controls the way Mail works. This file is usually located in the `C:\WINDOWS` directory.

You need to edit the Mail system files only when you want to change functionality or restore these files to a particular state. For example, if you set up a WGPO and then delete it, you need to modify your `MSMAIL.INI` file to connect to a different post office. For information about modifying the `MSMAIL.INI` file, see the online document `MAIL.WRI`. To view this document, you can use the Write application in the Accessories group.

Backing Up and Restoring the `MSMAIL.MMF` File

In general, you don't need to modify your Mail system files; however, you might want to restore them to a particular state.

It is a good practice to regularly back up your `MSMAIL.MMF` file. When you back up and restore this file, all your folders are backed up and restored. If you want to back up or restore only some of your folders, use the Export Folder and Import Folder commands. For more information about these commands, see Help for Mail.

► To back up your `MSMAIL.MMF` file

1. From the Mail menu, choose Backup.
2. In the File Name box, specify the name and location of your backup file—for example, `C:\WINDOWS\MARIA.MMF`.
3. Choose OK.

► To restore your `MSMAIL.MMF` file

1. In the Main group, choose the File Manager icon.
2. Select the backup copy of your message file.
3. From the File menu, choose Rename.
4. In the To box, type `c:\windows\msmail.mmf`
5. Choose OK.

The backup file becomes your message file, and the messages and folders you had when you backed up the file are displayed. New messages that you received after you backed up your message file are not displayed.

Using Mail with Other Message Systems

To connect a workgroup post office to another workgroup post office, you must purchase Microsoft Mail Postoffice Upgrade for Windows for Workgroups for each post office. To connect to another message system, such as X.400 or SMTP, the Microsoft Mail Postoffice upgrade is required, as well as the gateway software which enables the two message systems to exchange information.

Each message system can connect to the workgroup post office by using one or more specific gateways. For a list of message systems and gateways, see the online document MAIL.WRI. To view this document, you can use the Write application in the Accessories group.

APPENDIX B

Accessibility for People with Disabilities

Microsoft is committed to making its products and services easier for everyone to use. This appendix provides information about the following products and services that make the Microsoft® Windows™ operating system more accessible for people with disabilities:

- Access Pack for Microsoft Windows, a software utility that makes using Windows easier for people with motion or hearing disabilities
- Keyboard layouts designed for people who type with one hand or a wand
- Microsoft software documentation on audio cassettes and floppy disks
- Products for people who are blind or have low vision
- Tips for customizing Windows for Workgroups
- Other products and services for people with disabilities

Access Pack for Microsoft Windows

Microsoft distributes Access Pack for Microsoft Windows, which provides people with motion or hearing disabilities better access to computers running Windows. Access Pack contains several features that do the following:

- Enable single-finger typing of SHIFT, CTRL, and ALT key combinations.
- Ignore accidental keystrokes.
- Adjust the rate at which a character is repeated when you hold down a key, or turn off character repeating entirely.
- Prevent extra characters if you unintentionally press a key more than once.
- Enable you to control the mouse cursor by using the keyboard.
- Enable you to control the computer keyboard and mouse by using an alternate input device.
- Provide a visual cue when the computer beeps or makes other sounds.

Access Pack for Microsoft Windows is included in the Windows Driver Library, in the file ACCP.EXE. If you have a modem, you can download Windows Driver Library components from network services, including CompuServe®, GENie™, Microsoft OnLine, or various user-group bulletin boards (such as the bulletin-board services on the Association of PC User Groups network). Access Pack is also available from Microsoft Download Service (MSDL), which you can reach by calling (206) 936-MSDL (936-6735) any time except between 1:00 A.M. and 2:30 A.M. Pacific time. To use MSDL, use the following communications settings:

Baud rate	1200, 2400, or 9600	Data bits	8
Parity	None	Stop bits	1

Keyboard Layouts for Single-Handed Users

Microsoft distributes Dvorak keyboard layouts that make the most frequently typed characters on a keyboard more accessible to people who have difficulty using the standard "QWERTY" layout. There are three Dvorak layouts: one for

two-handed users, one for people who type with their left hand only, and one for people who type with their right hand only. The left- or right-handed keyboard layouts can also be useful for people who type with one finger or a wand. You do not need to purchase any special equipment in order to use these features.

Windows for Workgroups already supports the two-handed Dvorak layout, which can be useful for coping with or avoiding repetitive-motion injuries associated with typing. To use this layout, choose the International icon in Control Panel. The two layouts for people who type with one hand are distributed as Microsoft Application Note GA0650. This note is also contained in file GA0650.ZIP on most network services or GA0650.EXE on the Microsoft Download Service (MSDL). For instructions on using network services and MSDL, see the preceding section, "Access Pack for Microsoft Windows."

Documentation on Audio Cassettes and Floppy Disks

People who have difficulty reading or handling printed documentation can obtain most Microsoft publications from Recording for the Blind, Inc. Recording for the Blind distributes these documents to registered members of their distribution service either on audio cassettes or on floppy disks. More than 80,000 titles are available, including Microsoft product documentation and books from Microsoft Press. You can contact Recording for the Blind at the following address or phone numbers:

Recording for the Blind, Inc.	Phone :	(800) 221-4792
20 Roszel Road	Phone outside the U.S.:	(609) 452-0606
Princeton, NJ 08540	Fax:	(609) 987-8116

Products for People Who Are Blind or Have Low Vision

There are numerous products available to help people who are blind or have low vision use Microsoft Windows. For people with low vision there are screen-enlargement utilities, and for people who cannot use visual information there are screen readers that provide synthesized voice or refreshable Braille displays. For more information about the various products available, see "Getting More Information" later in this appendix.

In addition, people with low vision can customize the appearance of Microsoft Windows to suit their needs. For more information, see the following section.

Customizing Windows for Workgroups

There are many ways you can adjust the appearance and performance of Windows for Workgroups, the mouse, and the keyboard to suit varying vision and motor abilities without requiring any additional software or hardware.

For more information about the WIN.INI and SYSTEM.INI files in the following list, use Write to view the WININI.WRI and SYSINI.WRI online documents. For more information about using Control Panel, see your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user's guide.

You can use the following methods to adjust the appearance of Windows for Workgroups:

- If you have trouble differentiating the colors in Windows, or if they cause eyestrain, you can adjust them by using the Colors option in Control Panel or by modifying entries in the **[colors]** section of the WIN.INI file.
- If you have trouble reading the Windows system fonts, you can increase their size by using the **FixedFon.Fon**, **Fonts.Fon**, and **OEMFonts.Fon** entries in the **[boot]** section of the SYSTEM.INI file.

Note You should only replace the default fonts with system font files supplied with Windows, such as 8514FIX.FON, 8514SYS.FON, and 8514OEM.FON. Using other fonts may cause some applications to display text incorrectly. You need to copy these files from your Setup disks by using the **expand** command. You cannot use TrueType fonts for these entries.

- If you have trouble reading icon titles, you can adjust their appearance by using the **IconTitleFaceName** and **IconTitleSize** entries in the **[desktop]** section of WIN.INI.
- If you have trouble reading full-screen messages, you can adjust the colors by using the **MessageBackColor** and **MessageTextColor** entries in the **[386Enh]** section of SYSTEM.INI.
- If the desktop pattern or wallpaper causes eyestrain, you can change them by using the Desktop option in Control Panel.
- If you have trouble differentiating the colors in Windows Help, you can adjust them by using the **JumpColor**, **PopupColor**, **MacroColor**, **IFJumpColor**, and **IFPopupColor** entries in the **[Windows Help]** section of WIN.INI.
- If you have trouble reading the text in Mail in Windows, you can adjust the fonts by using the **FixedFont**, **NormalFont**, and **PrintFont** entries in the MSMAIL.INI file. For more information, see the README.WRI online document.

- If you have trouble reading the text in Schedule+, you can adjust the font size and window colors by choosing Display from the Options menu or by using the **ApptBookColor**, **ApptBookLinesColor**, **LargeFont**, **OtherColor**, **PageBackgroundColor**, **PlannerColor**, **PlannerLinesColor**, and **UserColor** entries in the SCHDPLUS.INI file. For more information, see the README.WRI online document.
- If you have trouble locating the text selection cursor (also known as the caret or insertion point), you can adjust the rate at which it blinks by using the Desktop option in Control Panel.

You can do the following to adjust the performance of the mouse or keyboard:

- If you have difficulty controlling the mouse pointer, you can adjust its speed by using the Mouse option in Control Panel or the **MouseSpeed**, **MouseThreshold1**, and **MouseThreshold2** entries in the [Windows] section of WIN.INI.
- If you have trouble seeing the pointer when it is moving, you can select the Mouse Trails check box (by using the Mouse option in Control Panel), or change the value of the **MouseTrails** entry in the [Windows] section of WIN.INI.
- If you have trouble double-clicking the mouse button, you can adjust the sensitivity by using the Mouse option in Control Panel or by using the **DoubleClickHeight**, **DoubleClickWidth**, and **DoubleClickSpeed** entries in the [Windows] section of WIN.INI.
- If you have trouble positioning the pointer on window borders in order to adjust window size, you can increase the border width by using the Desktop option in Control Panel.
- If you have difficulty using the keyboard because of the speed at which keystrokes repeat or the delay time before they begin repeating, you can make adjustments by using the Keyboard option in Control Panel.

For more information relating to customizing Windows for Workgroups for people with disabilities, see Application Note WW0787. This note is also contained in file WW0787.ZIP on most network services or WW0787.EXE on the Microsoft Download Service (MSDL). For information about obtaining application notes from network services, and information about more features to help you use Windows, see "Access Pack for Microsoft Windows" earlier in this appendix.

Getting More Information

The Trace R&D Center at the University of Wisconsin–Madison produces a book and a compact disc that describe products that help people with disabilities use computers. The book, titled *Trace ResourceBook*, provides descriptions and photographs of about 2000 products. The compact disc, titled *CO-NET CD*, provides a database of more than 17,000 products and other information for people with disabilities. It is issued twice a year.

You can contact the Trace R&D Center at the following address or telephone numbers:

Trace R&D Center	Voice telephone:	(608) 263-2309
S-151 Waisman Center	Text telephone:	(608) 263-5408
1500 Highland Avenue	Fax:	(608) 262-8848
Madison, WI 53705-2280		

For general information and recommendations on how computers can help specific people, you should consult a trained evaluator who can match your needs with the available solutions. An assistive technology program in your area will provide referrals to programs and services that are available to you. To locate the assistive technology program nearest you, you can contact:

National Information System	Voice/text telephone outside South Carolina:
Center for Developmental	(800) 922-9234, ext. 301
Disabilities	Voice/text telephone inside South Carolina:
Benson Building	(800) 922-1107
University of South Carolina	Voice/text telephone outside the U.S.:
Columbia, SC 29208	(803) 777-6222
	Fax: (803) 777-6058

Installing Network Hardware

This appendix describes how to install and configure (set up) a *network adapter*, or *card*. A network card enables your computer to connect to other computers on your network. You can install the card before or after setting up Microsoft® Windows™ for Workgroups.

Installation Overview

This appendix gives complete instructions for each of the following steps.

To install and set up a network card in your computer, you need to:

1. Verify that you have the required hardware, such as the network card, cables, connectors, and other items needed during installation.
2. Configure your network card so it will work with your computer.
3. Place the network card in your computer.

Note In some cases, you place the card in your computer before completing step 2, configuring the card.

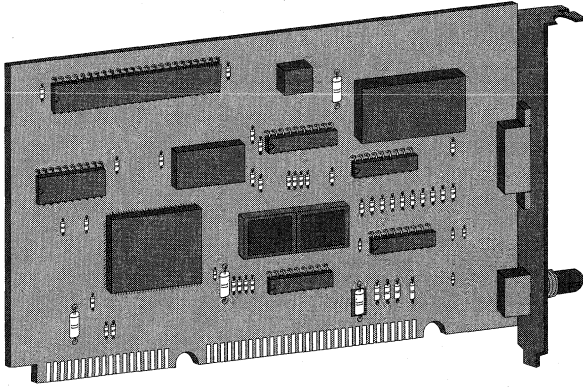
4. Connect cables to the network card, and then connect them to the other computer(s) on your network.

If you have trouble installing the card, see “Setting Up a Network Card” in Appendix E, “Troubleshooting.”

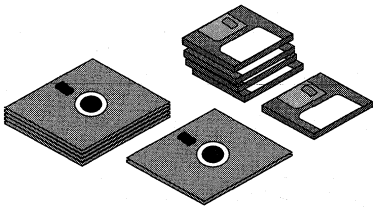
Note In rare cases, you may need a second network card in your computer. Use Windows Setup to install the device driver for the additional card. For more information, see Appendix D, “Configuring Network-Adapter Drivers.”

1. What You Need

Before you start, be sure you have the following items.

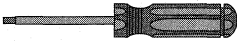


Network card

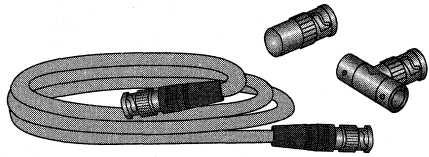


Hardware manuals

Windows for Workgroups disk set, software disks, and configuration disks



Screwdriver



Cables, connectors, terminators, and other cabling hardware

- **The Microsoft Windows for Workgroups disk set.**
- **A network card** compatible with Windows for Workgroups.

Also, be sure your network card is compatible with the type of *bus expansion slots* used in your computer. These are the sockets inside your computer, into which you plug the card. The following table shows the types of slots used in some common computer types.

Type of bus expansion slot	Type of computer
ISA	IBM® PC/AT® and most compatibles
EISA	Certain more powerful PC/AT compatibles
MCA	IBM PS/2® (most models)

Note Most computers not manufactured by IBM are either ISA or EISA. ISA stands for Industry Standard Architecture, EISA for Extended Industry Standard Architecture, and MCA for Microchannel Architecture.

If you don't know which type of slot is used in your computer, see your computer manual or documentation.

- **Software disks**, if any, that were included with your network card.
- **Manuals** or documentation included with your system hardware (computer, network card, cables, and any other devices you have installed).
- **Computer configuration disks**, if any, that were included with your computer. Examples are shown in the following table.

Type of computer	Disk you need
EISA	Configuration disk
IBM PS/2 (most models)	Reference disk

- **Cables, connectors, terminators, and other cabling hardware** compatible with your network card. See your network-card packaging or documentation for cable requirements for your specific card. For information about cables, see "Connecting Cables" later in this appendix.
- **A screwdriver** (for removing your computer cover and slot covers inside your computer).

2. Configuring Your Network Card

Part of the installation procedure involves setting up, or *configuring*, your network card so it works correctly in your computer. To configure, you assign values to various settings on the card, which enable the card to communicate with your computer.

For example, most cards require that you specify at least two of the following:

- Interrupt request level (IRQ)
- Base input/output (I/O) port
- Base memory address (optional on some cards)

These settings are described in detail in “How to Determine Which Configuration Settings to Use” later in this appendix.

Use Default Settings When Possible

In most cases, a network card comes preconfigured with common, or default, settings. The documentation that came with your card usually describes these settings. If you don't know which settings to use when configuring your card, begin by trying the default settings.

If your network card does not have a default value for a setting, or these settings do not work, see “How to Determine Which Configuration Settings to Use” later in this appendix. The section contains alternative values to use.

Commonly Used Settings

If the default settings do not work, you may want to try the following settings for your card, which will work in many situations: IRQ5, base I/O port 300, and base memory address D0000. (For some network cards, the final “0” is dropped from the base memory address—for example, D000.)

When to Configure the Card

Depending on the type of network card you have, you can configure it before or after placing it in your computer. Some cards combine the two methods.

Configuring Before Placing the Card in Your Computer

Some cards require you to manually move jumpers or set switches on the card before placing the card in your computer. (For information, see the following section, “Using Jumpers and Switches to Configure a Network Card.”)

Before placing a network card in your computer, see your network-card documentation to find out whether you need to set jumpers or switches.

Configuring After Placing the Card in Your Computer

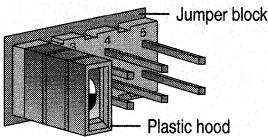
With MCA cards, most EISA cards, and some ISA cards, you configure the card by running a configuration program after you have placed the card in your computer. For instructions on configuring these cards, see “Software-Configured Cards” later in this appendix.

Using Jumpers and Switches to Configure a Network Card

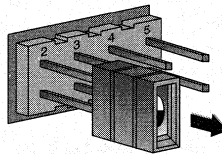
If your network card is configured manually (instead of by a configuration program), you need to set some options by using *jumper* and *DIP-switch* settings.

Changing Jumper Settings

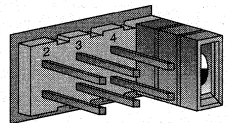
To change a jumper setting, remove the plastic hood that fits over the pins on the *jumper block*. Then place the hood on the pins as indicated in your network-card documentation. The following illustration shows the jumper setting being changed from position 2 to position 5 on a sample jumper block.



Jumper set to position 2



Hood being removed



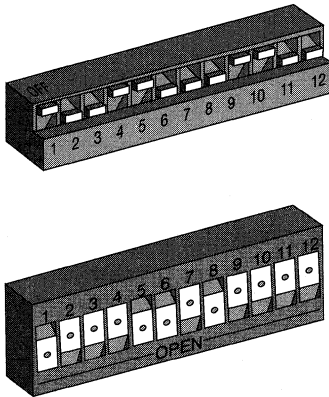
Jumper reset to position 5

Changing DIP-Switch Settings

DIP switches resemble miniature light switches, and work in much the same way. To reset DIP-switch settings on your network card, you move the switches to the alternate position (On/Off or Open/Closed), according to the settings indicated in your network-card documentation.

Tip You can use the tip of a pen to change your DIP-switch settings more easily.

The following illustration shows two common types of DIP switches.



How to Determine Which Configuration Settings to Use

Different network cards require different types of settings. For most cards, you need to assign values for at least two of the three settings described in this section: *interrupt request level (IRQ)*, *base I/O (input/output) port*, and *base memory address*. See your network-card documentation for a complete list of required settings.

Recording Your Network-Card Settings

The following table shows some common settings for certain hardware. Use it to record the settings you use for configuring your network card. If you know the settings for your other hardware, it may be useful to list that information before configuring your network card. This will help you avoid using the same values for more than one device. The documentation that came with your computer and other devices may list these settings.

Note Keep this table available for use when you set up the Windows for Workgroups software, after you install the network card.

Hardware	IRQ	Base I/O port	Base memory address
Serial port (COM1, COM3)	4	3F8	
Second serial port (COM2, COM4)	3	2F8	
Floppy disk controller	6	3F0	
Hard disk controller	14	1F0	
LPT1	7	378	
LPT2	5	278	
Bus mouse	3, 4, or 12	230	
Modem			
Sound card			
Network card			

Note Some hardware does not have entries for the base memory address.

Interrupt Request Level (IRQ)

When your network card sends a request to your computer's central processing unit (CPU), it uses an electronic signal called an *interrupt*. Each device in your system must use a different *interrupt request level (IRQ)*, which is specified when the device is configured. (*Interrupt* is often used interchangeably with *IRQ*.)

In most cases, you can use IRQ5, IRQ10, IRQ11, or IRQ15 for your network card. Check the documentation that came with your computer and other devices to determine if these interrupt levels are already being used.

If neither IRQ5, 10, 11, nor 15 is available, refer to the following table for alternative values you may be able to use. The interrupt levels listed as "available" usually can be used for your network card. If your computer does not have the hardware listed for a specific IRQ, that IRQ should also be available.

IRQ	Personal computer with 386SX processor (or higher)
2 (9)	Do not use (reserved for EGA/VGA adapter).
3	Usually not available (reserved for COM2 or COM4, unless only one serial port is installed; sometimes used for bus mouse).
4	Do not use (reserved for COM1 or COM3).
5	Available (unless used for second parallel port [LPT2] or bus mouse).
6	Do not use (reserved for floppy disk controller).
7	Do not use (reserved for parallel port [LPT1]).
8	Do not use (reserved for real-time clock).
10	Available.
11	Usually available (unless used for SCSI adapter).
12	Usually available (unless used for PS/2-style mouse).
13	Do not use (reserved for math coprocessor).
14	Do not use (reserved for hard disk controller).
15	Available.

Base I/O Port

The *base I/O (input/output) port* specifies a channel through which information is transferred between your hardware, such as your network card, and your computer's CPU. The port appears to the CPU as an address.

Each hardware device included in your system must have a different base I/O port number. The port numbers (in hexadecimal format) in the following table are usually available for you to assign to your network card. Addresses with a device listed next to them are commonly used for the devices. Check the documentation that came with your computer and other devices to determine which addresses are already in use.

Port	Device	Port	Device
200 to 20F	Game port	300 to 30F	Some disk controllers
210 to 21F		310 to 31F	
220 to 22F		320 to 32F	Hard disk controller (PS/2 Model 30 only)
230 to 23F	Bus mouse	330 to 33F	SCSI controllers
240 to 24F		340 to 34F	
250 to 25F		350 to 35F	
260 to 26F		360 to 36F	
270 to 27F	LPT2 (LPT3 in MCA-type computers)	370 to 37F	LPT1 (LPT2 in MCA-type computers)
280 to 28F		380 to 38F	

Port	Device	Port	Device
290 to 29F		390 to 39F	
2A0 to 2AF		3A0 to 3AF	
2B0 to 2BF		3B0 to 3BF	LPT1 (MCA-type computers only)
2C0 to 2CF		3C0 to 3CF	EGA/VGA
2D0 to 2DF		3D0 to 3DF	CGA (also EGA/VGA, in color video modes)
2E0 to 2EF	COM4	3E0 to 3EF	COM3
2F0 to 2FF	COM2	3F0 to 3FF	Floppy disk controller; COM1

Base Memory Address

The *base memory address* defines the address of the location in your computer's memory (RAM) that the network card will use to exchange information between your computer and the other computers you are connected to. This setting is sometimes called the *RAM start address*. Often, the base memory address for your network card is D0000. (For some network cards, the final "0" is dropped from the address—for example, D000.)

Note Some network cards do not have a setting for the base memory address, because they do not use any RAM.

With some network cards, you may also need a setting that specifies the amount of memory to be "mapped" or set aside for this purpose. For example, for some cards you can specify either 16K, which leaves more memory available for other uses, or 32K, which gives better performance but leaves less memory available.

Note If you are using EMM386, you need to exclude the base memory address area by using the `x=` parameter on the `device=emm386` line in your CONFIG.SYS file. For example, if your network card uses the address C800, the `device=emm386` line in your CONFIG.SYS file would look like this:

device=emm386.exe x=c800-ceff

For more information, see your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user's guide. If you use 386Max™, QEMM™, or another expanded-memory provider, see the documentation that comes with it to see whether you need to exclude this area.

If you are not using an expanded-memory provider and have a network card that requires a base memory address, you can exclude the base memory address by using the `EMMExclude=` line in the [386Enh] section of your SYSTEM.INI file. For example, if your network card uses the address C800, add the following line to the [386Enh] section of your SYSTEM.INI file:

EMMExclude=c800-ceff

Additional Settings

Your network card may have other settings you need to define during configuration. For example, some cards have more than one *connector* (where you connect the cable), providing you with flexibility in choosing a cable. If your card has multiple connectors, you typically need to specify which connector to use. This can be done by using a jumper or a software setting. See your network-card documentation for details about this and other settings.

3. Installing the Network Card

This section describes how to place the network card in your computer.

Before You Insert the Card

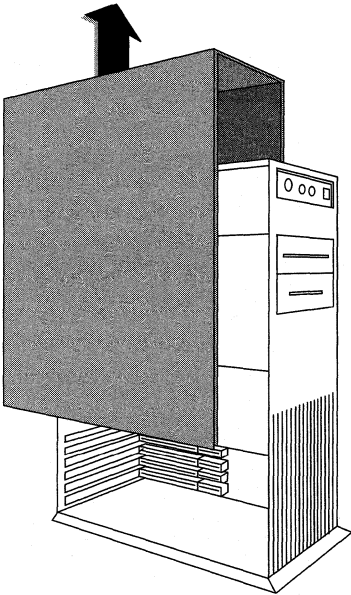
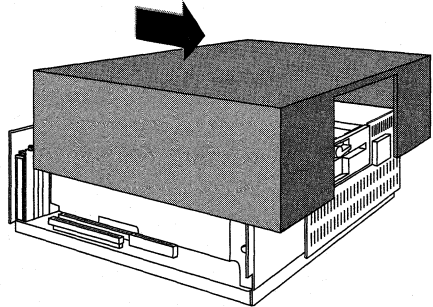
Before placing the network card in your computer, carry out the following steps.

Warning Always turn off and unplug your computer before you remove the cover.

► **To get ready to place the card in your computer**

1. Quit Windows and all running applications.
2. Turn off the power and unplug all power cords.
3. Remove the cover from your computer's system unit.

The screws holding the cover in place are typically located at the back and/or sides of the computer. Generally, there are only three or four screws to remove. The cover may slide forward or back, or it may lift up.

**Tower-style computer****Desktop-style computer**

4. If your network card requires you to change jumper or DIP-switch settings, change these settings before placing the card in your computer. (If you don't know whether this is required, just continue installing.)

For information about jumper or DIP-switch settings, see "How to Determine Which Configuration Settings to Use" earlier in this appendix.

Note Before touching the card, be sure to discharge static electricity from your hands by touching a grounded metal surface, such as the screw on an electrical outlet's plate cover.

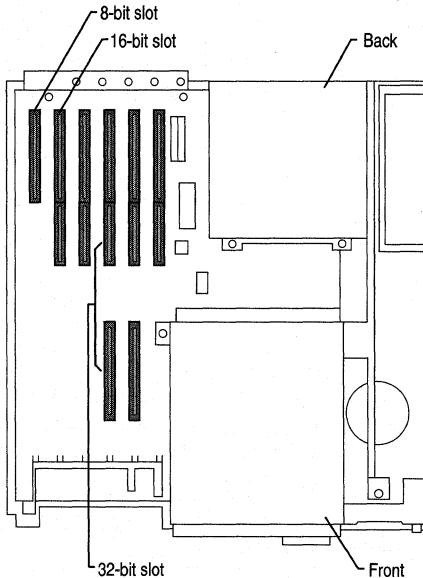
Placing the Card in Your Computer

After you have turned off your computer and removed the cover, you can insert the network card.

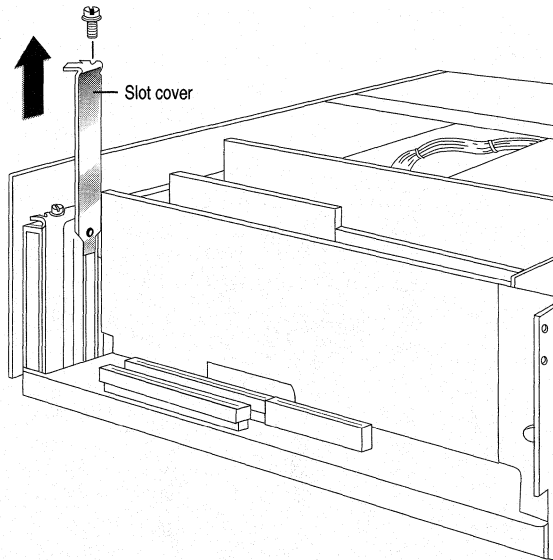
► **To place the network card in your computer**

1. Locate an unused bus expansion slot in your computer. Be sure the slot is appropriate for the card (for information, see your network-card documentation). ISA cards can use either an 8-bit or 16-bit slot. A 16-bit slot, if available, gives better performance. EISA and MCA cards often use a 32-bit slot.

The following illustration, looking down at a computer, shows how slots may look in your computer. Your computer may look different, especially if it is an EISA or MCA type.

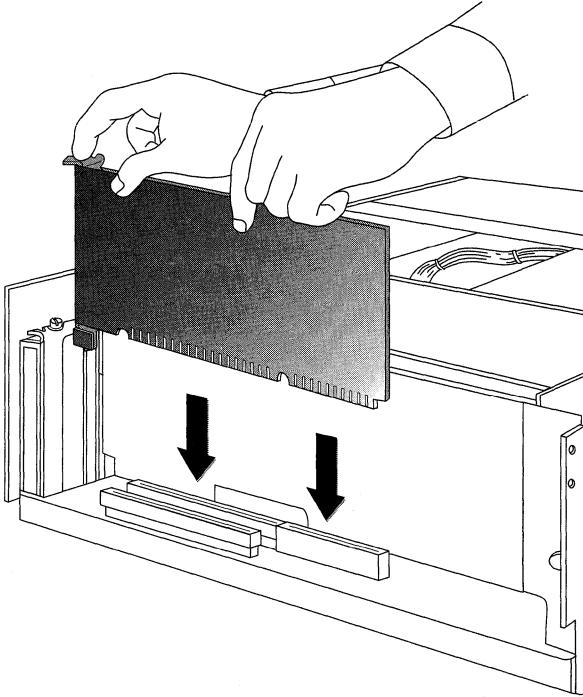


2. Remove the cover from the slot, and save the screw for use in step 7.



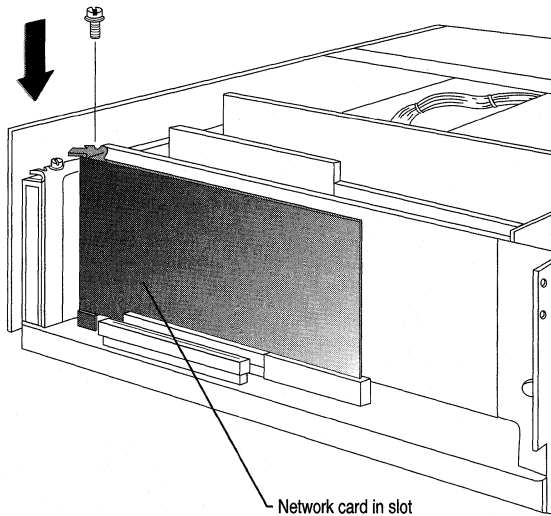
3. Discharge any static electricity from your hands by touching a grounded metal surface, such as the screw on the plate cover of an electrical outlet.
4. Remove the network card from its protective wrapper. Be careful not to touch the gold contacts at the bottom of the card.

5. Align the bottom of the card (gold contacts) with the slot, and press the card firmly into the socket. When correctly installed, the card locks into place.



6. Make sure that the top of the card is level (not slanted) and that the hole on top of the card's metal bracket lines up with the screw hole at the back of the slot.

7. Anchor the card in place using the screw you removed in step 2.



8. Replace the computer cover and screws.
9. Reconnect any cables and power cords you disconnected or unplugged.

Software-Configured Cards

If your network card is configured by using a configuration program (as are MCA, most EISA, and some ISA cards), follow these steps after placing the network card in your computer. (See your network-card packaging or documentation if you are unsure which type of card you have.)

► If you have a software-configured EISA card or an MCA card

1. Insert your computer's configuration disk into the startup (boot) floppy disk drive, and then restart (reboot) your computer.
2. When a message appears, saying your computer doesn't recognize your network card, replace the computer's configuration disk with the configuration disk for your network card, and then start the configuration program. (See your network-card documentation for startup information.)
3. Configure your network card. For information about settings, see "How to Determine Which Configuration Settings to Use" earlier in this appendix, or see your network-card documentation.

4. Remove your network card's configuration disk, and insert your computer's configuration disk. With some EISA cards, the card's configuration information is automatically copied to the computer's configuration disk. For other EISA cards, and MCA cards, you are given the option to copy the information.

► **If you have a software-configured ISA card**

1. Restart (reboot) your computer.
2. Insert the configuration disk for the network card into a floppy disk drive, change to that drive, and then start the configuration program. (See your network-card documentation for startup information.)
3. Configure the card. For information about settings, see "How to Determine Which Configuration Settings to Use" earlier in this appendix, or see your network-card documentation.

4. Connecting Cables

When you finish installing and configuring your network card, the next step is to connect the cables that link your computer to the other computers on your network. There are several types of cable/computer configurations available. The sections that follow describe the four most common types: thin Ethernet, thick Ethernet, twisted-pair, and token ring.

To connect your computer to the network, carry out the following steps:

1. Determine which of the four types of systems you are connecting to, and turn to the appropriate following section that describes that system.
2. Using the illustrations and descriptions to identify your cable hardware, connect your network card to the other computers on your network. For more information about your system, see your network-card documentation.

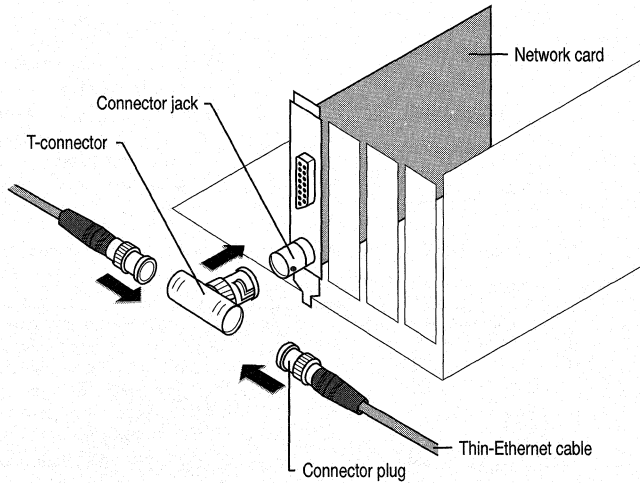
Note If you have a type of cable/computer configuration other than the four listed here, see your network-card documentation for more information.

When you finish connecting, see Chapter 2, "Setting Up and Starting Windows for Workgroups," to finish setting up your system. If you have already set up Windows for Workgroups, see Appendix D, "Configuring Network-Adapter Drivers."

Thin Ethernet

A thin-Ethernet system, also known as “Thinnet,” has the advantages of using less expensive cable than a thick-Ethernet system (described in the next section) and using hardware that is somewhat easier to set up.

Use the following illustrations as a guide to connecting the network card in your computer to a thin-Ethernet system.



The following table describes the hardware components.

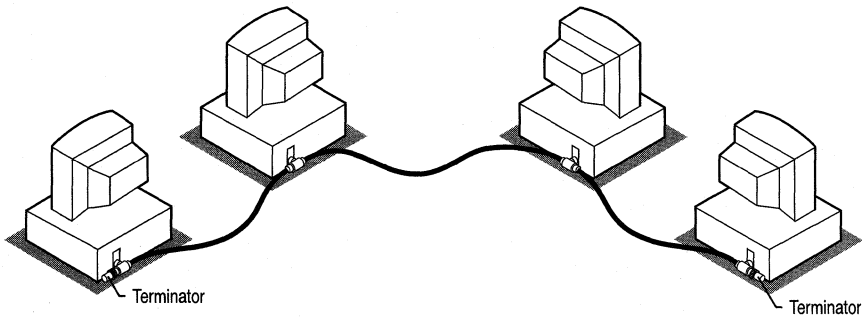
Item	Description
Network card with connector jack	The BNC connector jack on the back of your network card connects the card to a T-connector.
BNC T-connector	The T-connector connects to the network-card connector jack. Thin-Ethernet cables are connected to the jacks on either end of the “T.” (For computers at the ends of the network, a terminator replaces one of the cable connections.)

Item	Description
Thin-Ethernet cable with BNC connector plugs	Thin coaxial cable (RG-58), for networks that use the 10Base2 or 802.3 standard (as defined by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, or IEEE). Connector plugs are located at both ends of a thin-Ethernet cable. Thin-Ethernet cable can be used in segments of between 0.5 and 185 meters long, and can have a maximum of 30 computers connected to it. A cable segment generally is made up of several smaller lengths of cable joined by connectors.
Terminator	When a computer is the last in a group of computers, a terminator must be connected to the open end of the computer's T-connector. Terminators used with RG-58 cable must be 50 ohm (50 Ω).

In some cases, you may need the following for your system.

Item	Description
Grounded terminator	If there is excessive electromagnetic interference, or "noise," on your system, you may need to replace the terminator at one end of the network with a grounded terminator. The grounded terminator has a grounding wire connected to one end. You connect the wire to a ground (such as the screw on the plate cover of an electrical outlet).
Barrel connector	When necessary, a barrel connector can be used to join two pieces of thin-Ethernet cable. Keeping the number of barrel connections on a network to a minimum increases network reliability. Do not use T-connectors in place of barrel connectors.

When you finish installing the network card and connecting the cable, your thin-Ethernet system should be set up as illustrated.



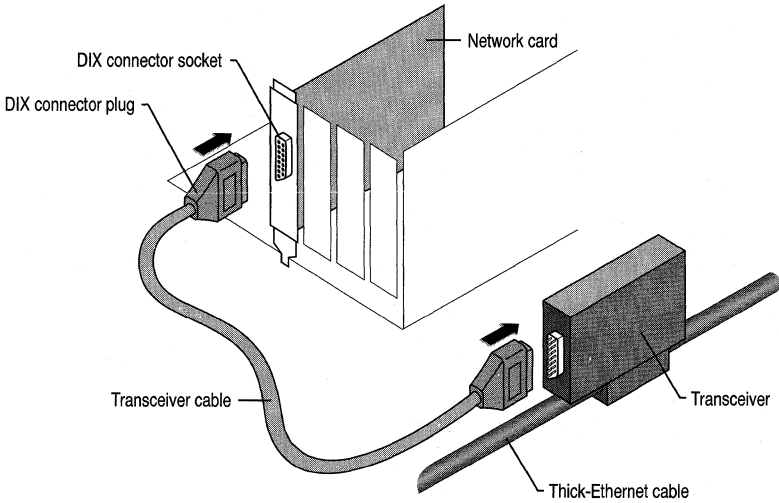
Sample thin-Ethernet system

Note Terminators must be connected to both endpoints.

Thick Ethernet

A thick-Ethernet (also known as “Thicknet”) system is named for the standard, or thick, Ethernet cable used. With thick cable, you can have more computers on a system and the distance between computers can be greater; however, the cable is more expensive and more difficult to install than thin-Ethernet cable.

Use the following illustrations as a guide to connecting the network card in your computer to a thick-Ethernet system.



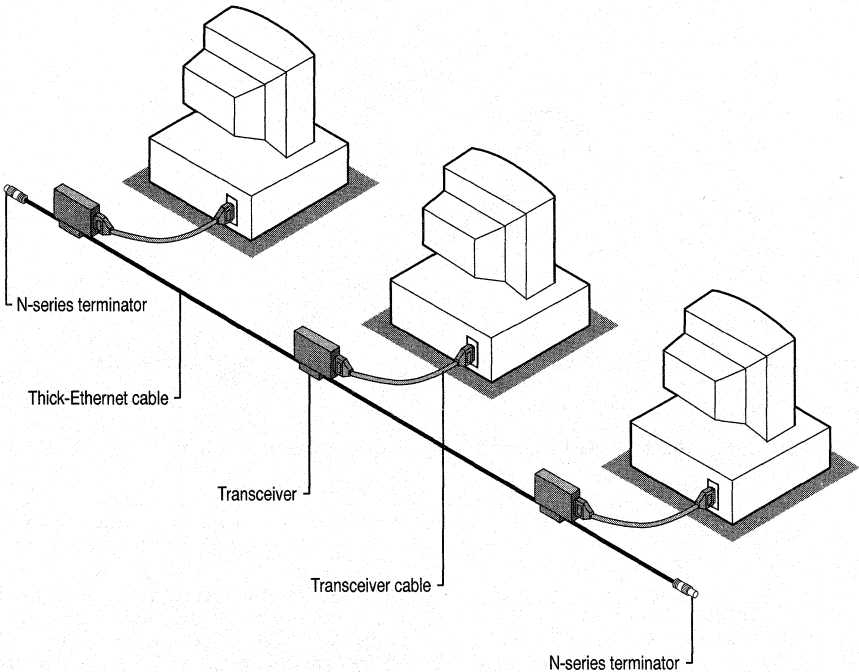
The following table describes the hardware components.

Item	Description
Network card with DIX connector socket	The connector socket on the back of your network card connects the card to the transceiver cable.
Transceiver cable with DIX connector plug and connector socket	A transceiver cable connects your computer to a transceiver on a thick-Ethernet system. A connector plug is located on one end of a transceiver cable. It connects to the network card. A connector socket is located at the other end of a transceiver cable. It connects the cable to a transceiver.
Transceiver	Maximum length for a transceiver cable is 50 meters. A transceiver connects your computer to a thick-Ethernet network. (For systems having many computers, the transceivers are usually located inside office walls.)
Thick-Ethernet cable	Also known as "standard" or simply "thick" cable. This is coaxial cable. The maximum segment length is 500 meters and the maximum number of transceivers is 100.
Terminator	A terminator (N-series) must be connected to the thick-Ethernet cable at each endpoint of the network.

In some cases, you may need the following for your system.

Item	Description
Grounded terminator	If there is excessive electromagnetic interference, or "noise," on your system, you may need to replace the terminator at one end of the network with a grounded terminator (N-series). The grounded terminator has a grounding wire connected to one end. You connect the wire to a ground (such as the screw on the plate cover of an electrical outlet).

When you finish installing the network card and connecting the cable, your system should be set up as illustrated.



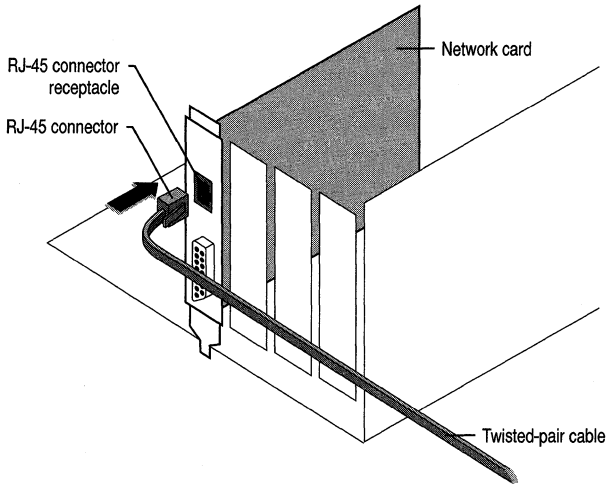
Sample thick-Ethernet system

Note Terminators must be connected to both endpoints.

Twisted-Pair Ethernet

The advantages of a twisted-pair Ethernet system are that the cable is generally less expensive than systems such as thick-Ethernet, and that the cable is relatively easy to install.

Use the following illustrations as a guide to connecting the network card in your computer to a twisted-pair Ethernet system.

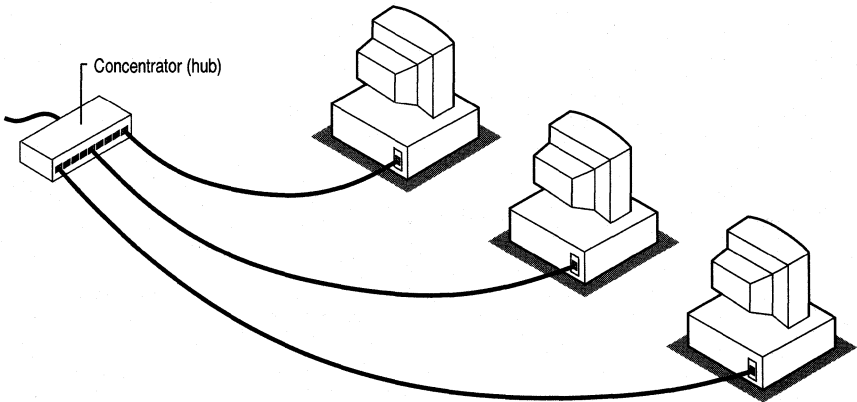


The following table describes the hardware components.

Item	Description
Network card with RJ-45 connector receptacle	The connector receptacle on the back of your network card connects the card to the network cable.
RJ-45 connector	An RJ-45 connector is located at each end of the twisted-pair cable. To connect the cable to the card, align the connector so the small plastic tab is in line with the slot in the receptacle, and push in the connector until you hear a click. (The connector is similar to the plastic plug used to connect a telephone cord to a wall outlet.)

Item	Description
Twisted-pair Ethernet cable	<p>Cable for a twisted-pair Ethernet system can be either unshielded twisted-pair (UTP) or shielded twisted-pair (STP). (UTP is shown in the preceding illustration.) Both types of cable consist of two or more pairs of twisted copper wires; however, STP has a shielding layer of foil and copper braid around the inner cable that protects the wiring from electromagnetic interference, or "noise."</p> <p>Maximum cable length is 100 meters.</p>
Concentrator (hub)	<p>The computers on a twisted-pair system are connected to each other by using a concentrator, or hub. Cable from each computer is plugged into a socket (connector receptacle) in the hub.</p> <p>Each hub is a full 802.3 multiport repeater, compatible with the IEEE 802.3 10BaseT standard for connecting to UTP wiring.</p>

When you finish installing the network card and connecting the cable, your system should be set up as illustrated.



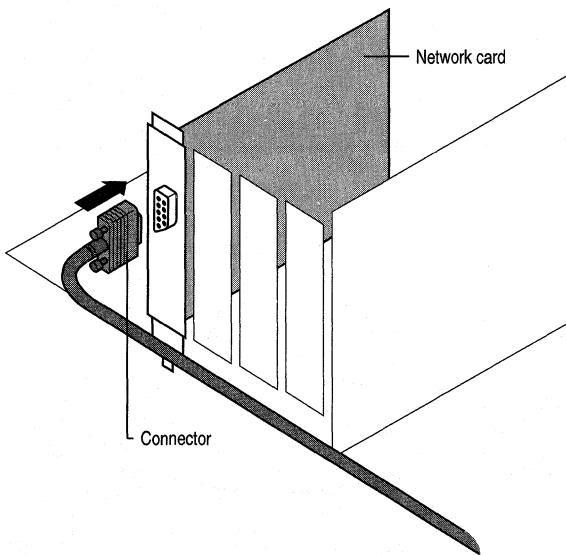
Sample twisted-pair Ethernet system

Token Ring

One advantage of a token-ring system is *redundancy*: One piece of the system can fail or the cable can be cut, and the signal will backtrack but still function. Also, token ring is supported by IBM mainframe software, which can be an advantage in some situations.

Disadvantages are that token-ring cable is generally more expensive and more complex than with other systems. (If you use twisted-pair cabling, it requires four wires.) In addition, troubleshooting is sometimes more difficult.

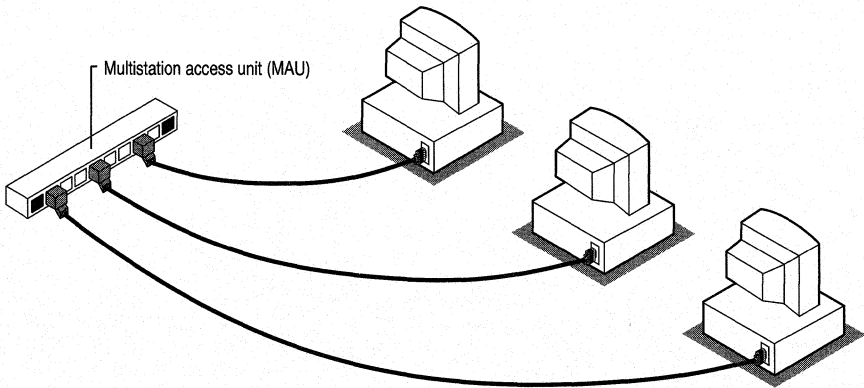
Use the following illustrations as a guide to connecting the network card in your computer to a token-ring system.



The following table describes the hardware components.

Item	Description
Network card	You need a network card compatible with a token-ring system.
Cable	A token-ring system generally uses either type 1, which is heavy copper cable, or type 3, which is unshielded twisted-pair (UTP) cable.
Multistation access unit (MAU)	A device that is the meeting point of the wires in a token-ring system. Cables run from the MAU to link computers to the network.

When you finish installing the network card and connecting the cable, your system should be set up as illustrated.



Sample token-ring system

The Next Step

Now that you have finished installing your network card and connecting the cables that link you to the other computers on your system, go to Chapter 2, “Setting Up and Starting Windows for Workgroups,” to finish setting up your system. If you have already set up Windows for Workgroups, see Appendix D, “Configuring Network-Adapter Drivers.”

Configuring Network-Adapter Drivers

After you install a network adapter, or card, you also need to install and configure its driver. This appendix describes how to install, configure, and remove network-adapter drivers and change settings for them.

When you set up the Microsoft® Windows™ for Workgroups version 3.11 operating system, your network-adapter driver is installed and configured. You need to use the instructions in this appendix only if you have added or changed your network adapter after setting up Windows for Workgroups.

For information about installing a network adapter, see Appendix C, “Installing Network Hardware.”

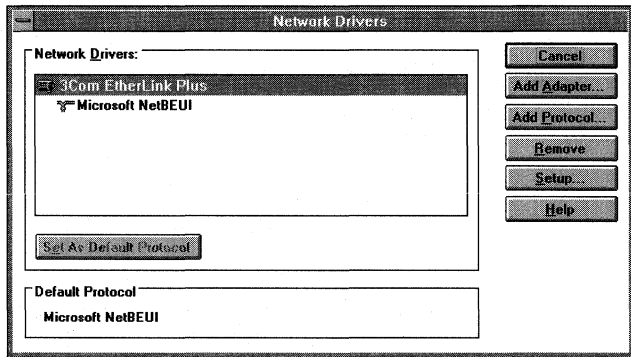
Installing a Network-Adapter Driver

You can install and configure a network-adapter driver by using Windows Setup.

► **To install and configure a network-adapter driver**

1. In the Network group, choose the Network Setup icon.
2. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose Drivers.

The Network Drivers dialog box appears, as illustrated on the following page.



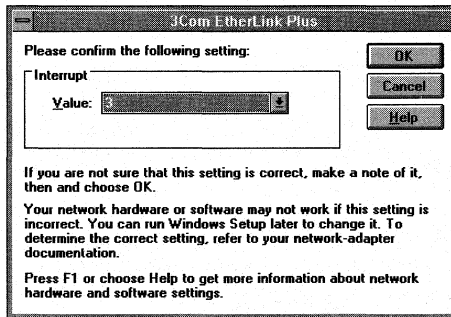
3. In the Network Drivers dialog box, choose Add Adapter.
4. In the list of network adapters, select the one you want to add, and then choose OK. (If your adapter is not listed, select Unlisted Or Updated Network Adapter.) Or choose Detect to have your network adapter detected automatically.
5. Insert the requested disk in drive A. Then choose OK. If you selected Unlisted Or Updated Network Adapter, the disk must contain an OEMSETUP.INF file for the network adapter.

Or type the drive letter and directory name (for example, **d:\drivers**) where the driver is located, and then choose OK.

(You can also use the Browse button to locate and select the drive and directory where the driver is located. When you finish using the Browse dialog box, choose OK.)

If you selected Unlisted Or Updated Network Adapter, another dialog box appears, listing the drivers on the disk. Select the driver you want to install, and then choose OK.

6. If the network-adapter driver requires additional settings, a dialog box appears, displaying the default (preset) settings for your network adapter.



If the settings your network adapter uses differ from the default settings, specify the correct interrupt (IRQ), base I/O port, and base memory address in the dialog box, and then choose OK. For a description of these settings, see Appendix C, “Installing Network Hardware.” In most cases, the default values will work correctly.

A few network adapters may require that you set advanced options. For example, if you are using a 3Com® adapter, you may need to specify the DMA channel the adapter uses. In other cases, you may also need to know the transceiver type the adapter uses. In such cases, the dialog box will contain an Advanced button. Choose it, and then, in the Advanced dialog box, specify the values for each setting. When you finish, choose OK.

For more information about the settings your adapter uses, see your network-adapter documentation. For help on the Advanced dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.

Note Make sure that the settings for your network adapter do not conflict with other devices installed in your system, such as a mouse or a sound card. See the documentation for your devices, including your network adapter, for information about their settings.

7. In the network-adapter settings dialog box, choose OK.
8. In the Network Drivers dialog box, choose Close.
9. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose OK. A dialog box appears, prompting you to restart your computer. If you have saved your files, you can safely restart.
10. Choose the Restart Computer button to restart.

Removing a Network-Adapter Driver

If you are no longer using a network adapter, you can remove its driver.

Note To share your resources (such as printers and directories) and connect to resources shared by others, you must have at least one network-adapter driver installed. If you try to remove all network-adapter drivers, a message appears.

► **To remove a network-adapter driver**

1. In the Network group, choose the Network Setup icon.
2. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose Drivers.
3. In the Network Drivers dialog box, select the network adapter you want to remove, and then choose Remove.
4. Choose Close.
5. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose OK. A dialog box appears, prompting you to restart your computer. If you have saved your files, you can safely restart.
6. Choose the Restart Computer button to restart.

When you remove the driver, the driver file is not deleted from your hard disk. You can add the driver again if you decide to use your network adapter later.

Changing Protocols and Network-Adapter Settings

You can change settings for your network adapter.

► **To change settings for your network adapter**

1. In the Network group, choose the Network Setup icon.
2. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose Drivers.
3. In the Network Drivers dialog box, choose Setup.

Note A few network adapters require that you specify the size of certain buffers and the kind of cable the adapter uses, such as thin- or thick-Ethernet cable. To specify such advanced options, choose the Advanced button in the network-adapter settings dialog box.

You may also need to change the *protocols* for your network adapter. A protocol is a set of rules and conventions for exchanging data. Because there are many types of protocols, computers on a network must all use the same protocol to be able to share information. A network adapter can use up to four protocols.

When you set up Windows for Workgroups, the NetBEUI protocol is installed and configured. This protocol and its default settings work in most cases, so you rarely need to change the settings or use an additional protocol. (If your computer has more than 6 megabytes of RAM, the IPX protocol is also installed.) If you do need to add other protocols, choose Add Protocol in the Network Drivers dialog box. You can use up to eight protocols. However, each network adapter can support only four. If you use more than four protocols, you must install another network adapter.

For more information about adding protocols, changing protocol settings, or specifying advanced options for your network adapter, see Help for Windows Setup.

Troubleshooting

This appendix is designed to help if you encounter problems when using the Microsoft® Windows™ for Workgroups version 3.11 operating system. The following sections outline steps you can take to solve the most common problems:

- Setting Up Windows for Workgroups
- Using the Network Features of Windows for Workgroups
- Using the Microsoft Windows Network
- Using Novell® NetWare®
- Setting Up a Network Card
- Using Microsoft Network Diagnostics
- Using Mail
- Using Microsoft At Work™ PC Fax
- Streamlining Your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files

Setting Up Windows for Workgroups

The following sections describe possible solutions to problems you might have when setting up Windows for Workgroups.

Your system locks up during the MS-DOS part of Setup.

The first part of the Setup program runs in MS-DOS®. (Later, Setup switches to Windows mode.) If Setup stops while in MS-DOS mode, it may be because your hardware could not be correctly detected. To solve this problem, type **setup /i**, which skips hardware detection and runs Custom Setup. In the System Information screen, be sure to select descriptions that match the hardware on your system. Then restart your computer, and type **win** at the command prompt to start Windows.

Windows won't start after a successful Setup.

If you completed Setup but cannot start Windows for Workgroups, one of the following might be the cause:

- The wrong hardware may be specified for your system. This might occur because you ran Express Setup and your hardware was not correctly detected, or because you specified the wrong hardware settings during Custom Setup. In your Windows directory, type **setup** at the command prompt. Make sure the hardware information is correct in the System Information screen.
- Make sure that your computer has at least a 386SX processor. You should have at least 410K of free conventional memory and 3072K (3 MB) of free extended (XMS) memory. You should also have at least 3.5 MB of free disk space if you are upgrading from a previous version of Windows, and 9.5 MB if you are setting up Windows for Workgroups for the first time. Although you can force Windows to run if it has less than 3072K of free XMS memory, it is not recommended, because Windows may run very slowly.
- Your system may be running memory-resident (TSR) programs that are incompatible with Windows and that could not be detected during setup. To check for this possibility, create a "clean boot" floppy disk that contains only the files necessary to start your computer and Windows. Insert this disk in drive A, and then restart your computer. For more information about troubleshooting problems with memory-resident programs, see "Streamlining the CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files" later in this appendix.
- If you are using a thin-Ethernet network, make sure you have attached a BNC-style T-connector to the back of your network card. Also, make sure you have attached a terminator to each end of the network. For more information, see Appendix C, "Installing Network Hardware."

If Windows still won't start, try the following guidelines:

- To see whether the problem has to do with networking, type **win /n** to start Windows without starting the network. If this command successfully starts Windows, then contact your network administrator.
- Type **win /b** to start Windows. This creates a file, **BOOTLOG.TXT**, that records system messages generated during system startup. By using the MS-DOS **type** command, you can view this file to see where in the startup process Windows failed. If you have MS-DOS version 5.0 or later, you can also use the **edit** command.
- Use the **EMMExclude** option when you start Windows, by typing **win /d:x** at the command prompt. This excludes the network-adapter area from areas that Windows searches for unused address space. Typically, this is the area **A000-FFFF**. The search can cause conflicts with adapters that use this area.

If using this command successfully starts Windows, you might want to add the **EMMExclude** command to your SYSTEM.INI file, as described in the procedure following this list.

If you are loading an expanded-memory provider such as EMM386, QEMM™, or 386Max™ in the CONFIG.SYS file, any **EMMExclude** commands in the SYSTEM.INI file are ignored. Your computer uses the settings given in the CONFIG.SYS file instead.

For more information, see the documentation supplied with your memory provider.

- Use the **VirtualHDirq** option when you start Windows, by typing **win /d:v** at the command prompt. This gives your hard disk—rather than Windows—control over how hard-disk interrupts are processed.

If using this command successfully starts Windows, you might want to add the **VirtualHDirq=False** command to your SYSTEM.INI file, as described in the following procedure.

► **To add an EMMExclude or VirtualHDirq command to SYSTEM.INI**

1. Using a text editor, open the SYSTEM.INI file, located in your Windows directory.
2. In the [386Enh] section of the file, type one of the following lines:
EMMExclude=A000-FFFF
VirtualHDirq=False
3. Save your changes to the SYSTEM.INI file.
4. At the command prompt, type **win** to start Windows.

Note When you add the **EMMExclude** command to your SYSTEM.INI file, you are probably excluding more address space than is necessary. To find out a more precise amount of address space to exclude, you can use the Microsoft Diagnostics (MSD) program. To start MSD, quit Windows, and then type **msd** at the command prompt. Then, in the main screen, choose Memory. You should exclude any address space identified as “RAM” or “ROM.” You might also need to exclude address space identified as “Possibly Available.”

If Windows still won't start, run Setup again from the disks by using the following guidelines:

- Type **setup /i**. In the System Information screen, be sure to select descriptions that match the hardware on your system. After setup, restart your computer, and type **win** at the command prompt to start Windows.

Using the Network Features of Windows for Workgroups

The following sections describe possible solutions to problems you might have when using the network features of Windows for Workgroups.

No network features of Windows for Workgroups are available.

If during startup you receive a message that you will not have any of the network features, try the following:

- Make sure your computer meets the processor, memory, and hard-disk requirements of Windows for Workgroups. For more information, see the “What Is Microsoft Workgroup Add-on?” chapter of this book.
- Make sure you have properly installed the network card in your computer and that you have specified the correct settings. For more information about installing a network card, see Appendix C, “Installing Network Hardware.” For information about specifying settings for a network card, see Appendix D, “Configuring Network-Adapter Drivers.”
- Make sure the cables that connect your computer to the network are connected properly.
- Quit Windows, and change to the Windows directory. Type **chkdsk** at the command prompt. If **chkdsk** shows errors, type **chkdsk /f** to repair the errors. Or run a disk utility to repair the files on the hard disk. If there is data corruption in the Windows directory, you may need to reinstall Windows for Workgroups.
- Restart your computer, and watch the screen as the CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files are processed. Make sure no error messages occur during the processing.
- Install the network card in another slot in your computer. For more information about installing a network card, see Appendix C, “Installing Network Hardware.” If it works, then the slot it was originally in does not work properly. Otherwise, the network card may be defective.

Using the Microsoft Windows Network

The following sections describe possible solutions for problems you might have when using Windows for Workgroups with the Microsoft Windows Network.

You forget your logon password for the Microsoft Windows Network.

If you forget your logon password, you can delete the file that records the password. You can create a new password list the next time you start Windows for Workgroups.

► **To create a new password list**

1. Using a text editor, open the SYSTEM.INI file, located in your Windows directory.
2. In the [Password Lists] section, find the line that starts with your user name. It specifies a file with a .PWL extension.
3. In your Windows directory, delete the file that is specified in SYSTEM.INI.
4. Restart Windows. A dialog box appears, asking whether you want to create a new password list. If you choose Yes, it creates a new list. This list contains no passwords, so you will have to supply a password the next time you connect to a shared resource that requires one.

Other computers on the network are not listed.

If you open a Connect dialog box and computers on the network are not listed, make sure your network cables are properly connected. For more information about cable connections, see Appendix C, "Installing Network Hardware."

If the names of computers on the network still don't appear, make sure your computer is using the same protocol as the computers you are trying to connect to.

► **To determine which protocol you are using**

1. In the Main group, choose the Windows Setup icon.
2. From the Options menu, choose Change Network Settings.
3. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose Drivers. The Network Drivers dialog box appears, displaying your current settings.

If you are using the correct protocol but are still having problems, try the following:

- Make sure that the settings in your PROTOCOL.INI file are correct for your network configuration. You can use a text editor, such as Notepad, to view the file in Windows.
- Sometimes when a computer in your workgroup is turned off or restarted, the computer names don't appear. Wait a few minutes, and then try again.
- Even though a computer name may not be visible in the Connect dialog box, you may still be able to connect to it by doing the following: In the Path box, type the name of the computer you are looking for, preceded by two backslashes (for example: \\computer). Then choose Connect.
- If a computer is part of a workgroup that is not your own, the computer name may not be listed in the Connect dialog box. Be sure to select the workgroup name when you open the Connect dialog box.
- Make sure the computer you are trying to connect to is on, running Windows for Workgroups, connected to the network, and set up to share files.
- In the Main group, choose the Windows Setup icon, and then choose Change Network Settings from the Options menu. In the Network Setup dialog box, double-click the name of your network adapter. If there is an Advanced button in this dialog box, choose it to view the advanced settings. Make sure the advanced settings match your network hardware. For example, if you are using a 3Com® EtherLink II® or IITP (8- or 16-bit) network, make sure Transceiver Location is set to Onboard rather than External.

You cannot share directories on your CD-ROM drive.

If you are using a CD-ROM drive with Microsoft CD-ROM Extensions and you want to share directories on the drive, you need to use MSCDEX.EXE version 2.22, and specify /s on the MSCDEX line in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file.

If you are running Novell NetWare, the MSCDEX line must appear before the MSIPX and NETX lines in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file.

A LAN Manager server is not listed.

You can run the Microsoft Windows Network in addition to Microsoft LAN Manager. If your network has a server running LAN Manager, but that server is not listed in the Connect dialog box, check the following: At least one of the computers running Windows for Workgroups in your network must have as its workgroup name the same name as the primary domain of the server.

A Windows NT or LAN Manager server is listed, but you cannot connect to it.

If a Microsoft Windows NT or LAN Manager server is listed in the Connect dialog box, but you cannot connect to it, you might not have a valid account on the server. For more information about getting a valid account on the server, see your network administrator.

You need to connect to or share resources before starting Windows.

If you cannot use the network features of connecting to and sharing resources while running Windows for Workgroups, or you need to use the network features before starting Windows, you can start the network from MS-DOS.

► To start the network before starting Windows

1. At the command prompt, type **net start full**. Or, if you only need limited network functionality, type **net start basic**.
A message appears, asking whether you want to start the workstation.
2. Press the letter Y, and then press ENTER.

You can now run Microsoft Windows Network commands from MS-DOS.

Note If you use the **net start basic** command to start the network before starting Windows, you will have about 100K less memory to work with when you use MS-DOS Prompt within Windows. A message is displayed if you start Windows after starting the network.

For more information about using Microsoft Windows Network commands from MS-DOS, type **net help** at the command prompt.

Using Novell NetWare

The following sections describe possible solutions for problems you might have when using Novell NetWare with Windows for Workgroups.

You cannot connect to a Novell NetWare server.

If you cannot connect to a Novell NetWare server from within Windows for Workgroups, make sure you are logged on to a NetWare server before starting Windows. Also make sure that you have set up Windows for Workgroups to use Novell NetWare.

► **To see whether Windows for Workgroups is set up to use Novell NetWare**

1. In the Network group, choose the Network Setup icon.
2. If Windows for Workgroups is set up to use Novell NetWare, it should appear in the list of networks installed on your computer. If it does not, choose the Networks button next to the list. The Networks dialog box appears.

If you want to use the Microsoft Windows Network and Novell NetWare, select Install Microsoft Windows Network, select Other, and select Novell NetWare from the list.

If you want to use Novell only, select Install Windows Support For The Following Network Only, and then select the appropriate version of Novell NetWare from the list.

3. Choose OK.

Computers or NetWare servers are not listed.

If you are using Novell NetWare in addition to the Microsoft Windows Network, and NetWare servers are not listed in the Connect dialog box, make sure the Adapter Media Type setting matches your Novell NetWare software configuration. For information about this configuration, see your network administrator.

► **To check the Adapter Media Type setting**

1. In the Network group, choose the Network Setup icon.
2. In the Network Adapters And Protocols list, double-click the name of your network adapter. A dialog box appears.
3. Choose Advanced.
4. In the advanced settings dialog box, select Adapter Media Type.
5. When you are using Novell NetWare, the value of Adapter Media Type can be either Ethernet II or Ethernet_II (DIX). For troubleshooting purposes, select the value that is not currently selected, and then choose OK.

If you are using a token-ring network, you should also try removing ROUTE.COM from your AUTOEXEC.BAT file.

Setting Up a Network Card

The following section suggests possible solutions for problems you might have while installing and configuring your network card.

You're trying to install a network card.

If you encounter problems while installing and configuring a network card, or while connecting to cables, you can try the following:

- Make sure that all connections (cables and connectors) are securely attached and that the network card is securely in the slot, as shown in Appendix C, "Installing Network Hardware."
- If a diagnostics program is included with your network card, try running the program. See your network-card documentation for details.
- Check the lights (if any) on the back of the network card. See your network-card documentation for details on what the lights indicate.
- Make sure that your network card has been detected correctly. Use Windows Setup to detect your network card, as follows.

► To detect a network card

1. In the Network group, choose the Network Setup icon.
 2. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose Drivers.
 3. In the Network Drivers dialog box, choose Add Adapter.
 4. In the Add Network Adapter dialog box, choose Detect.
- If the network card is not listed in the Add Network Adapter dialog box, you may need to contact the network-adapter vendor for a network-adapter driver that works with Windows for Workgroups.
 - If two devices are using the same interrupt request level (IRQ) or base I/O port, they will not work properly.

See your network-card documentation for information about the settings your card uses. To find out which interrupt levels and base I/O ports on your computer are being used by other devices, you can run the Microsoft Diagnostics (MSD) program included with Windows for Workgroups.

When you set up Windows for Workgroups, MSD is copied to your Windows directory. If you have not yet set up Windows for Workgroups, you can run MSD from the Setup disks.

Note Also, if you already have Windows version 3.1 or Windows for Workgroups version 3.1 on your computer, you can run MSD before setting up Windows for Workgroups version 3.11.

► **To run MSD**

1. Quit Windows (if you are running it).
2. At the command prompt, type **msd** and then press ENTER.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Note MSD does not detect the IRQ and base I/O port used by your network card. For more information about IRQs and base I/O ports, see Appendix C, "Installing Network Hardware."

- You may need to change the configuration settings assigned to your card.

If you have a network card that is configured by using jumpers and switches, you may need to change some of these settings. If you have a software-configured card, use the configuration program that came with your card to change settings. See your network-card documentation for details.

After reconfiguring your network card, you need to specify the new settings by using Windows Setup.

Note If the jumper or DIP-switch settings do not match the network settings that Windows for Workgroups uses, you will not be able to use the network features.

► **To change network-card settings by using Windows Setup**

1. In the Main group, choose the Windows Setup icon.
2. From the Options menu, choose Change Network Settings. The Network Setup dialog box appears.
3. In the Network Adapters And Protocols list, double-click the name of your network card. The dialog box for your network card appears. (If your network card does not appear in the list, see the instructions for detecting a network card, earlier in this section.)
4. Change the settings as needed, and then choose OK.
5. In the Network Setup dialog box, choose OK.

For help with the dialog boxes, choose the Help button or press F1 while using them.

Note If there is an Advanced button in the dialog box for your network card, choose it to see more settings your network card might need.

- If you are using a thin-Ethernet network, make sure you have attached a BNC-style T-connector to the back of your network card. Also, make sure you have attached a terminator to each end of the network. For more information, see Appendix C, “Installing Network Hardware.”
- If your computer cannot detect other computers in a workgroup, make sure that when you configured your network card you specified the correct connector (on the back of the card) to connect to the cable.

Using Microsoft Network Diagnostics to Troubleshoot Networking Problems

Microsoft Network Diagnostics helps a network administrator troubleshoot networking problems. It checks the connection between two computers on the network. It is useful when a computer can connect to the Microsoft Windows Network but cannot connect to a specific shared directory on another computer, or if the computer cannot find any other computers on the network.

Network Diagnostics can perform diagnostics by using either an IPX protocol, such as IPXODI.COM, or a NetBIOS protocol, such as Microsoft NetBEUI.

To run Network Diagnostics, you first need to set up a computer as a *diagnostic server*. If possible, choose a computer that can successfully connect to other computers on the Microsoft Windows Network. If the problem is that you cannot connect to a specific shared directory, the diagnostic server should be the computer that the shared directory is on.

► To set up a diagnostic server for Network Diagnostics

1. Quit Windows. Or choose the MS-DOS Prompt icon in the Main group. Quitting Windows is recommended.
2. Type **net diag** at the command prompt.
3. Network Diagnostics identifies the protocols that are installed on the computer. If more than one protocol is found, you are prompted to select the one you want to use. Select a protocol that is used by all the computers you are going to use in the test.
4. Network Diagnostics then checks the network for other diagnostic servers. If none are found, it prompts you to confirm whether there are any. If there are none, press N. The computer then becomes the diagnostic server.

Now you are ready to run Network Diagnostics on the computer that cannot connect to the network.

► **To run Network Diagnostics**

1. Quit Windows. Or choose the MS-DOS Prompt icon in the Main group. Quitting Windows is recommended.
2. Type **net diag** at the command prompt.
3. Network Diagnostics identifies the protocols that are installed on the computer. If more than one protocol is found, you are prompted to select the one you want to use. Select the protocol you selected when you set up the diagnostic server. Network Diagnostics then tries to detect a diagnostic server on the network. If it does not detect the diagnostic server you have set up, then the network cable may be faulty. Press Y to quit Network Diagnostics.

The following are options available for Network Diagnostics.

Use	To
net diag /?	Display a list of command-line parameters.
net diag /status	Show information about your network adapter's network connection. (Use only for NetBIOS protocols, such as Microsoft NetBEUI.) If you enter the name of another computer on the network, Network Diagnostics shows information about that computer's network connection.
net diag /names	Specify a connection name to use during the diagnostics. If you are using more than one computer as a diagnostic server, the /names option helps you identify the diagnostic server you are connecting to.

Note In the event that the cable is not faulty, there might be a problem with your network card or configuration.

Using Mail

This section contains information to help Mail administrators solve problems they might have when creating or managing the workgroup post office (WGPO).

You cannot create a workgroup post office.

There are several reasons why you may not be able to create a WGPO. Most often, it is because you don't have enough disk space or, if you are creating the WGPO on a server, because you don't have write access to that server. In these cases, find a new location with enough disk space to create your WGPO.

The post office administrator forgets his or her password.

The administrator's password cannot be recovered; the administrator must create a new WGPO.

A user forgets his or her password.

If a user forgets his or her Mail password, you can assign a new password.

► **To assign a user a password**

1. Sign in to Mail.
2. From the Mail menu, choose Postoffice Manager.
3. In the Postoffice Manager dialog box, select the name of the user, and then choose Details.
4. In the Password box, type a new password, and then choose OK.
5. In the Postoffice Manager dialog box, choose Close.

Now the user can sign in to Mail with the new password.

A message file is corrupted.

If a message file is corrupted, a dialog box appears, giving you the option to repair the message file. You or the user can either repair the file immediately or quit Mail and repair it later. However, the user whose file is corrupted cannot use Mail until the file is repaired.

Using Microsoft At Work PC Fax

The following sections describe possible solutions for problems you might encounter when using Microsoft At Work PC Fax.

If you receive an error message while using PC Fax, use Write to view the README.WRI online document for more information.

You cannot configure or share a modem.

If you try to configure a shared modem in another computer, the Setup button appears dimmed. You can configure a modem in your own computer only.

You tried to send a fax from an application, but your system locked up.

If your system locks up when you try to send a fax from an application, make sure that Mail is running, and then try again.

Mail locks up.

If Mail locks up, it may be because you sent a fax from an application, but canceled the job before it “printed.” From the Fax menu in Mail, choose Queue, and then cancel the fax in the Queue dialog box.

You add a network modem, but you still can't send faxes.

If you cannot send a fax from a shared network modem, check with the person who shared the modem to make sure the Access Type for the modem has been changed to Full or Depends On Password. The default setting for Access Type is Read-Only, which does not enable you to share the modem.

You set up PC Fax, but could not add a fax address to the Personal Address Book.

If you cannot add a fax address to the Personal Address Book, try quitting Mail and restarting it. PC Fax should now be one of the choices in the New Address dialog box.

You attached a document to a fax, and the icon for the document flashes.

If the icon for an attached document flashes, double-click it. A dialog box appears, describing the problem.

You sent a fax by using a shared modem in someone else's computer, but the fax is waiting in the queue.

If a fax you sent by using a shared modem in another computer is suspended in the queue, delete the fax from the queue and try a modem in another computer. A shared modem should be in a computer not regularly used by anyone. Using the computer holds up the processing of faxes.

You want to use a modem speed higher than 9600 bps.

Because many computers have trouble sending and receiving fax data at such high speeds, and because of conflicts with other installed software, PC Fax does not automatically use modem speeds higher than 9600 bps (bits per second).

If your modem supports higher speeds, you can add the following lines to the [COMx] section of your EFAXPUMP.INI file. Be aware that using higher speeds may result in unreliable fax operation or failures, especially on slower machines.

EnableV17Send=1

EnableV17Recv=1

Streamlining the CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files

If you want to troubleshoot a problem yourself, it's best to start with a "minimum" Windows configuration. This means that as a test, you should try removing unused applications, memory-resident programs (TSRs), and unnecessary device drivers from your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. You can use a text editor, such as Notepad (in the Accessories group), to open and edit these files in Windows. When just a few applications are running with Windows, it's easier to isolate your problem.

Before you make any changes, create a system disk that includes a backup copy of your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. You can restore these files when you are finished with the troubleshooting tests. You also can use this disk to start your system, if necessary.

You can make a system disk by starting File Manager and then choosing Make System Disk from the Disk menu. Then copy your current CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files to the disk. These files are usually located in the root directory of your first hard disk drive, which is typically drive C. If you usually start your system by using a floppy disk, these files are located in the root directory of that disk.

When removing command lines from your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, make one change at a time. After making one change, test it. If you don't know what a particular command line does in the CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT file, do not remove it.

Note If you are using disk-compression software (such as DBLSPACE.SYS) or disk-partitioning software (such as DMDRVR.BIN), do not remove the command lines that specify it.

You need to restart your computer in order for the change to take effect.

The following is an example of a CONFIG.SYS file that contains the minimum configuration for Windows for Workgroups.

This command line	Does this
files=30	Sets the number of files that MS-DOS can access at one time.
buffers=20	Allocates memory for buffers when your system starts. These buffers help Windows read information faster from your hard disk.
device=c:\windows\himem.sys	Sets up the HIMEM.SYS device driver.
device=c:\windows\ifshlp.sys	Installs the Windows for Workgroups drivers.

The following is an example of an AUTOEXEC.BAT file at a minimum configuration.

This command line	Does this
c:\windows\net start	Enables and starts Microsoft Windows Network drivers.
prompt \$p\$g	Determines the appearance of the command prompt.
path c:;\c:\windows;c:\msdos	Specifies the search path for MS-DOS and Windows. (Some versions of MS-DOS might name this directory something other than \MSDOS.)
set temp=c:\windows\temp	Specifies the directory where temporary files are stored. You may need to create the specified directory if it does not exist. The directory for temporary swap files should be a location that has at least 2 MB of free disk space. For more information about temporary swap files, see your Windows or Windows for Workgroups user's guide.

User's Guide

Microsoft® Windows™

**Operating System
Version 3.1**

Microsoft Corporation

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. Companies, names, and data used in examples herein are fictitious unless otherwise noted. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Microsoft Corporation.

©1985-1993 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

Arial and Times New Roman fonts. Copyright ©1991 Monotype Corporation PLC. All rights reserved.

Microsoft, MS, and MS-DOS are registered trademarks, and Windows is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

U.S. Patent No. 4974159

Acer is a registered trademark of Acer Technologies Corporation. Adobe and PostScript are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems, Inc. The Symbol bitmap fonts provided with Windows version 3.1 are based on the CG Times font, a product of AGFA Compugraphic Division of Agfa Corporation. Aldus and PageMaker are registered trademarks of Aldus Corporation. AT&T is a registered trademark of American Telephone and Telegraph Company. TrueType is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. Borland and SideKick are registered trademarks of Borland International, Inc. COMPAQ is a registered trademark of Compaq Computer Company. CompuServe is a registered trademark of CompuServe, Inc. Sound Blaster is a trademark of Creative Technology Ltd. CSS Laboratories is a registered trademark of CSS Laboratories, Inc. Dow Jones News/Retrieval is a registered trademark of Dow Jones & Company, Inc. Epson is a registered trademark of Epson America, Inc. Terminal was developed for Microsoft by Future Soft Engineering, Inc. GENIE is a trademark of General Electric Corporation. Hayes is a registered trademark of Hayes Microcomputer Products, Inc. Hewlett-Packard, DeskJet, HP, LaserJet, PCL, and Vectra are registered trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company. IBM, AT, and PS/2 are registered trademarks of International Business Machines, Inc. Toshiba is a registered trademark of Kabushiki Kaisha Toshiba. Arial, Monotype, and Times New Roman are registered trademarks of The Monotype Corporation PLC. Mouse Systems is a registered trademark of Mouse Systems Corporation. Multi-Tech is a registered trademark of Multi-Tech Systems, Inc. Philips is a registered trademark of Philips International, B.V. QMS is a registered trademark of QMS, Inc. 386Max is a trademark of Qualitas, Inc. QEMM is a trademark of Quarterdeck Office Systems. Ami Professional is a trademark of Samna Corporation. Recorder was developed for Microsoft by Softbridge Ltd. Proteus is a registered trademark of Software Application System, Inc. Tulip is a registered trademark of Tulip Computers International, B.V. Weitek is a registered trademark of Weitek Corporation. WordPerfect is a registered trademark of WordPerfect Corporation. Wyse is a registered trademark of Wyse Technology. Zenith is a registered trademark of Zenith Radio Corporation. Paintbrush is a trademark of ZSoft Corporation.

Contents

Welcome	xiii
About Your Windows User's Guide	xiii
What You Need to Run Windows	xvi
About Your Windows Documentation	xvii
Conventions	xviii

PART 1 Getting Started

Chapter 1 Setting Up Windows	3
Setup Designed with Users in Mind	3
Express Setup	3
Custom Setup	4
Running Setup	5
Windows Tutorial	5
Upgrading from Windows Version 3.0	6
More Information About Upgrading	7
Network Setup	8
Setting Up Windows from a Network	8
Placing Windows Files on a Network Server	9
Setup Summary	10
Changes to the AUTOEXEC.BAT and CONFIG.SYS Files	11
Starting Windows	12
Windows Modes	12
Starting Windows in a Specific Mode	12
Specifying an Application or an MS-DOS Command	13
Some Samples for Starting Windows	13
Chapter 2 New in This Version	15
TrueType Fonts	15
Object Linking and Embedding	15
A New File Manager	16
Drag and Drop	17
A New Print Manager	17
Online Tutorial	18
New Multimedia Features	18

Additional Features and Enhancements	19
Performance Improvements	21
Chapter 3 A Guided Tour of Microsoft Windows	23
Introduction	23
Starting Windows	23
Windows Basics	23
Program Manager	24
Starting an Application	26
Using a Menu	28
Reducing an Application Window to an Icon	29
Quitting an Application	30
More Ways to Use Program Manager	30
File Manager	31
Files and Directories	31
Viewing Directory Contents	33
Scrolling to View Information	34
Moving and Copying Files	34
Changing Disk Drives	35
More Ways to Use File Manager	36
Control Panel	36
Using Dialog Boxes	38
More Ways to Use Control Panel	38
Print Manager	39
Checking Printer Status	40
More Ways to Use Print Manager	40
Switching Between Applications	40
Task List	41
Online Help	42
Quitting Windows	44
The Next Step	44
Running the Microsoft Windows Tutorial	44

PART 2 Windows Fundamentals

Chapter 4 Windows Basics	49
Basic Elements of Windows	49
Parts of a Window	51
Types of Windows	53
Types of Icons	54

Basic Mouse Techniques	56
Basic Keyboard Techniques	56
Choosing and Selecting	57
Selecting Items	57
Using a Menu	58
Choosing Commands from Menus	58
Using the Control Menu	59
Working with a Window	62
Moving a Window	62
Changing the Size of a Window	63
Using Scroll Bars	66
Closing a Window	67
Using a Dialog Box	67
Moving Within a Dialog Box	68
Types of Options	68
Closing a Dialog Box	72
Chapter 5 Application Basics	73
Types of Applications	73
Organizing Your Applications into Groups	74
Creating and Deleting a Group	74
Creating a Program Item	75
Starting an Application	80
Starting an Application from Program Manager	81
Starting an Application by Using File Manager	82
Starting an Application by Using the Run Command	82
Starting an Application by Using the MS-DOS Command Prompt	83
Running Two or More Applications	84
Switching Between Applications and Documents	85
Using Task List to Switch Between Applications	85
Switching Between Documents	86
Arranging Application Windows and Icons	87
Dragging Files to Perform Tasks	87
Receiving a Message from an Inactive Application	88
Quitting an Application	88
Opening and Saving Documents	89
Opening Files	89
Saving Files	90
Working with Text	91

Transferring Information Between Applications by Using the Clipboard	93
Cutting or Copying Information onto the Clipboard	94
Viewing the Contents of the Clipboard	96
Pasting Information from the Clipboard	96
Saving the Contents of the Clipboard	97
Chapter 6 Online Help	99
Starting Help	99
Using the Help Menu	100
Finding Information in Help	101
Finding Information by Using Help Contents	101
Finding Information by Using Search	102
Getting Help for a Dialog Box	102
Additional Methods	103
Displaying Glossary Definitions	103
Quitting Help	104
Chapter 7 File Manager	105
The File Manager Window	105
Viewing Information in a Directory Window	107
Opening a New Directory Window	107
Changing the Information Displayed for Each File	107
Updating a Directory Window	108
More Ways to View Information in a Directory Window	109
Looking at Drives, Directories, and Files	109
Selecting Files and Directories	109
Changing Drives and Directories	110
Viewing Different Directory Levels	111
Using Network Directories	112
Connecting to and Disconnecting from Network Directories	112
Working with Files and Directories	114
Moving and Copying Files and Directories	114
Creating Directories	114
Deleting Files and Directories	115
Renaming Files and Directories	115
Searching for Files and Directories	115
Printing Files	116
Working with Floppy Disks	116
More Ways to Use File Manager	117

Chapter 8 Print Manager	119
Before You Print	119
Managing Documents	120
Looking at the Print Queue	120
Pausing and Resuming Printing	121
Canceling the Printing of a Document	122
Choosing the Default Printer	123
Printing to a File	123
Printing Through MS-DOS	123
Connecting to a Network Printer	124
Setting Up a Printer	126
Removing an Installed Printer	128
More Ways to Use Print Manager	128
Chapter 9 Accessories	129
Calculator	129
Calendar	131
Cardfile	131
Character Map	133
Clock	133
Media Player	134
Notepad	135
Paintbrush	135
Recorder	137
Sound Recorder	137
Terminal	138
Write	138

PART 3 Getting the Most Out of Windows

Chapter 10 Object Linking and Embedding	141
What Is Object Linking and Embedding?	142
Embedding an Object	143
Editing an Embedded Object	145
Linking an Object	146
Editing a Linked Object	148
Maintaining Links	149
Controlling How Linked Objects Are Updated	149
Creating Multiple Links	149
Canceling or Deleting a Link	150

Restoring a Broken Link	150
Changing the Format of an Object	150
Using Object Packager	151
Chapter 11 MS-DOS Applications	153
Setting Up an MS-DOS Application	153
Using Program Information Files	155
Using a Manufacturer-Supplied PIF	155
Using the Default PIF	156
Using Multiple PIFs for an Application	156
Starting an MS-DOS Application	157
Working with MS-DOS Applications in 386 Enhanced Mode	157
Running an MS-DOS Application in a Window	157
Changing Settings for a Running Application	158
Changing the Size of the Font	160
Copying and Pasting Information by Using the Clipboard	160
Giving an Application Exclusive Use of Resources	161
Running an Application in the Background	162
Using Memory-Resident Programs	162
Running Pop-up Programs	163
Chapter 12 Customizing Windows	165
Customizing Desktop Colors	165
Choosing a Color Scheme	165
Changing the Color of Screen Elements	167
Creating Your Own Colors	168
Changing Desktop Settings	168
Displaying Desktop Patterns	169
Displaying Custom Wallpaper	170
Using a Screen Saver	171
Using Fonts	172
Using Windows Fonts and Printer Fonts	172
Using Cartridge Fonts and Soft Fonts	173
Viewing Printer, Soft, and Cartridge Fonts on the Screen	173
Using TrueType Fonts	174
Adding and Removing Fonts	174
Using Sound	177
Assigning Sounds to Events	177
Changing MIDI Settings	178
Setting Network Options	180

Changing the Code Page	181
More Ways to Customize Windows	182
Chapter 13 Configuring Hardware	183
The Windows Driver Library	183
Methods for Installing Device Drivers	184
Installing a Third-Party Device Driver	184
Installing and Configuring Multimedia Drivers	185
Changing Your Mouse, Keyboard, or Display Driver	186
Updating a Driver Currently in Use	188
Configuring Communications Ports	188
Setting Advanced Options	189
Chapter 14 Managing Memory and Performance	191
Identifying Your System Memory Configuration	191
Managing Memory	193
Streamlining Your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files	193
Conserving Memory When Starting Memory-Resident Programs	195
Changing Virtual Memory Settings	196
Working with Application Swap Files (Standard Mode)	197
Other Methods for Improving Performance	199
Improving the Efficiency of Your Hard Disk	199
Using SMARTDrive	201
Setting Multitasking Options	202
Command Reference	203
Using Memory Managers	203
Excluding Shared Memory Used by a Network Adapter	212
Using the SMARTDrive Command Line	212

Appendixes

Appendix A Keyboard Shortcuts	219
Basic Windows Tasks	219
Using Help	219
Switching Between Applications	220
Using Menus	220
Using Dialog Boxes	221
Moving Around	221
Selecting Items	221

Editing Text	222
Copying onto the Clipboard	223
Quitting an Application and Closing a Window	223
Program Manager	223
File Manager	224
Print Manager	224
Control Panel	225
Clipboard Viewer	225
PIF Editor	225
Accessories	225
Calculator	225
Calendar	225
Cardfile	226
Notepad	226
Object Packager	227
Paintbrush	227
Sound Recorder and Media Player	228
Write	228
Appendix B Windows and Networks	231
Using Windows with Networks	231
Windows Network Features	231
Guidelines for Using Networks	232
Appendix C Troubleshooting	233
Setting Up Windows	233
Your system locks up during the MS-DOS part of Setup.	233
Setup stops when switching from MS-DOS to Windows.	234
The Setup program keeps prompting you for the same disk.	235
You have special hardware to set up with Windows.	235
You receive a message about memory-resident programs.	236
Windows won't start after a successful Setup.	236
Windows runs in standard mode but not in 386 enhanced mode.	237
You need to copy Windows files directly to your computer.	238
Using a Mouse	239
The mouse won't work with Windows.	239
The mouse pointer won't move.	239
The mouse pointer jumps around on the Windows screen.	240
The mouse won't work with an MS-DOS application running in a window.	240

Running Applications	241
You press a key, and the unexpected happens.....	241
Your application stops responding to the system.....	242
Your application runs too slowly.....	243
Your Super VGA screen contents are not restored correctly.....	243
You cannot take a snapshot of the screen.....	243
You cannot paste information into an MS-DOS-based application.....	244
You cannot change the font size for an MS-DOS-based application.....	244
Your system stops responding or quits unexpectedly.....	245
You receive a message that the registration database is corrupted.....	245
Linking and Embedding Objects	246
You receive a message that the server is unavailable.....	246
You choose an object type from the Insert Object dialog box, but the application doesn't open.....	247
You get different results each time you use the Paste command.....	247
A linked sound object updates automatically even though it is set to update manually.....	248
The Picture option in the Content window of Object Packager is unavailable.....	248
A linked object is not updating.....	248
The Paste command in Cardfile is not available, yet there is information on the Clipboard.....	249
The Paste Link command appears dimmed, yet there is information on the Clipboard.....	249
Printing	249
Your printer does not print.....	250
You can print from MS-DOS but not from Windows.....	251
The page prints but is formatted incorrectly.....	252
Your printer output is garbled.....	253
The last page of a document is left in the printer.....	254
The fonts on your screen and the fonts that print are different.....	254
You cannot print TrueType fonts on your laser printer.....	254
Your laser printer does not print your cartridge or soft fonts.....	255
The printer loses text.....	256
Only part of a page prints.....	256
Paintbrush graphics are too small when printed.....	257
Your PostScript printer runs out of memory.....	257
You receive a message that the printer is not responding.....	258
Managing Memory	258
You receive an out-of-memory message.....	259

- Using Serial Communications 262
 - You cannot access a serial port. 262
 - The computer locks up when you try to access a serial port..... 263
 - Errors occur during high-speed communications..... 263
 - Errors occur when you use MS-DOS communications applications. 264
- Using Terminal..... 264
 - The modem does not dial the number..... 264
 - You cannot establish a connection..... 265
 - You cannot send or receive a text file..... 265
- Using Windows with a Network..... 265
 - You cannot connect to a network drive..... 266
 - You have trouble when running a shared copy of Windows..... 266
 - You have trouble with network software when running Windows..... 266
- Using Two Versions of Windows..... 267
- Additional Troubleshooting Techniques 267
 - Read the Windows text files..... 267
 - Know your system..... 268
 - Streamline the CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files..... 269

Welcome

Welcome to the Microsoft® Windows™ operating system, software that makes your computer easier and more fun to use. Windows is easy to learn because its graphical interface is consistent from one application to the next. When you've learned to use one application, such as Write, you've learned the essentials for using any other application with Windows. You can run your existing MS-DOS-based applications beside Windows applications and share information between them. And now, Windows is easier and faster to set up on your system.

If you are new to Windows, you may want to go to Chapter 3 after setting up Windows. Chapter 3, "A Guided Tour of Microsoft Windows," offers a visual introduction to Windows so that you can become familiar with the graphical interface before you start to use it.

If you prefer to preview Windows on the screen, you can use the Microsoft Windows Tutorial during the Setup program. To use the Windows Tutorial, you must have a mouse and a VGA (or better) monitor. If Windows is already set up on your computer, you can start the Tutorial from within Windows. Choose the Windows Tutorial command from the Help menu in Program Manager. For more information, see "Running the Microsoft Windows Tutorial" at the end of Chapter 3, "A Guided Tour of Microsoft Windows."

About Your Windows User's Guide

This book is only one part of the Windows version 3.1 documentation set. Also included are an online Tutorial and an extensive online Help system. In addition, several online documents (formatted for use with Write, an application included with Windows) are copied to your hard disk when you set up Windows.

The first part of the *Windows User's Guide* is a setup guide and introduction to Microsoft Windows version 3.1. The rest of the book, in conjunction with online Help, provides a comprehensive guide to using Windows. Procedures for the tasks you perform most often are provided in this book. Procedures for other tasks are provided in Help. For more information about using Help, see Chapter 6, "Online Help."

This book is arranged as follows:

Part 1, “Getting Started”—Chapters in this part introduce you to Windows and guide you through setting up Windows.

- “Welcome”

An overview of this book and other documentation, and a list of system requirements.

- Chapter 1, “Setting Up Windows”

Instructions for setting up Windows, tips for previous Windows users on upgrading to Windows version 3.1, instructions for setting up Windows from a network, and options for starting Windows (for advanced users).

- Chapter 2, “New in This Version”

A summary of the new and enhanced features in Windows version 3.1.

- Chapter 3, “A Guided Tour of Microsoft Windows”

A look at Windows, introducing the basic concepts, some essential Windows techniques, and the main applications included with Windows.

Part 2, “Windows Fundamentals”—Chapters in this part describe the basic structure of Windows and the skills you need to work with Windows.

- Chapter 4, “Windows Basics”

An explanation of the basic elements of Windows and instruction in the skills you need to work with Windows.

- Chapter 5, “Application Basics”

Techniques for using your applications with Windows, including how to easily switch from one application to another.

- Chapter 6, “Online Help”

Instructions on how to use online Help to find information about tasks and features.

- Chapter 7, “File Manager”

Procedures for using File Manager to organize and manage the files and directories on your disks.

- Chapter 8, “Print Manager”

Procedures for printing files and setting up your printer for use with Windows.

- Chapter 9, “Accessories”

Descriptions of the accessory applications included with Windows. There are three full-featured accessory applications: Write, a word processor; Paintbrush, a color painting and drawing application; and Terminal, a communications application.

There are also two new multimedia applications, Media Player and Sound Recorder, in addition to several applications that add convenient capabilities to Windows, including Calculator, Calendar, Cardfile, Character Map, Clock, Notepad, and Recorder.

Part 3, “Getting the Most Out of Windows”—One chapter in this part describes how to run MS-DOS–based applications with Windows. The other chapters provide information for advanced users.

- Chapter 10, “Object Linking and Embedding”

Instructions for transferring and sharing information between applications.

- Chapter 11, “MS-DOS Applications”

Procedures for running MS-DOS–based applications (applications not designed for Windows).

- Chapter 12, “Customizing Windows”

Procedures for changing screen colors, desktop settings, and other system settings, such as those affecting fonts and sounds.

- Chapter 13, “Configuring Hardware”

Instructions for installing and changing device drivers for system hardware, such as your mouse, display adapter, and multimedia devices.

- Chapter 14, “Managing Memory and Performance”

Methods for improving system speed while keeping adequate memory for applications.

Appendixes—The appendixes provide reference material on the following topics:

- Appendix A, “Keyboard Shortcuts”

Keyboard shortcuts for performing various Windows tasks.

- Appendix B, “Windows and Networks”

Instructions for using Windows with a network.

- Appendix C, “Troubleshooting”

Questions you might have when setting up and using Windows, and possible solutions.

What You Need to Run Windows

The minimum software and hardware requirements your computer system needs to run Windows successfully are shown in the following list.

Windows requires:

- Microsoft MS-DOS® version 3.1 or later. (To check your version, type `ver` at the command prompt.)
- For *386 enhanced mode*, a personal computer with a 386 processor (or higher) and 640 kilobytes (K) of conventional memory plus 1024K of extended memory, 8 megabytes (MB) of free disk space (10 MB is recommended), and at least one floppy disk drive.

For *standard mode*, a personal computer with a 286 processor (or higher) and 640K of conventional memory plus 256K of extended memory, 6 MB of free disk space (9 MB is recommended), and at least one floppy disk drive.

Note Minimum disk-space requirements are based on your having no optional components, network, or printers. Recommended requirements are based on your having all components installed, including a network and printer.

- A display adapter that is supported by Windows.
- A printer that is supported by Windows, if you want to print with Windows.
- A Hayes, Multi-Tech, Trail Blazer, or compatible modem, if you want to use Terminal, the Windows communications application.
- A mouse that is supported by Windows. Though it is not required, a mouse is highly recommended so that you can take full advantage of the easy-to-use Windows graphical interface.

Note To get the best performance from Windows, you should configure memory above 640K as extended memory. Memory is discussed in Chapter 14, “Managing Memory and Performance.”

Windows runs in one of two operating modes, standard or 386 enhanced, depending on your hardware configuration. For information about starting Windows in a specific mode, see Chapter 1, “Setting Up Windows.”

About Your Windows Documentation

The Windows version 3.1 documentation set consists of the *Microsoft Windows User's Guide*, an online Tutorial, an extensive online Help system, and several online documents (formatted for use with Write) that are copied to your hard disk when you set up Windows.

The following list outlines the various pieces of the Windows documentation:

- The *Microsoft Windows User's Guide* (this book) includes a guide to setting up Windows on your system and a brief introduction to Windows. In conjunction with online Help, this book also provides a comprehensive guide to using Windows. It includes explanations and procedures for first-time users, in addition to topics for advanced users.
- The Microsoft Windows Tutorial provides online instructions for using a mouse and for performing some basic tasks in Windows.
- Online Help provides a quick reference to procedures and commands you need when using Windows. *Context-sensitive* Help is now available in the main Windows-based applications. To obtain specific information about how to complete a dialog box, just press F1 or choose the Help button while using the dialog box.
- Several online documents are copied to your hard disk when you set up Windows. You can read (and print) the files by using Write. These files include:
 - SETUP.TXT—Information about software and hardware configurations that require special handling in order for you to successfully set up and start Windows. (You can view this file by using any text editor.)
 - README.WRI—Information updated after the *User's Guide* was printed.
 - PRINTERS.WRI—Information about configuring particular printers and fonts.
 - NETWORKS.WRI—Information about operating Windows with specific networks.
 - SYSINI.WRI—Procedures for modifying settings in the SYSTEM.INI file (for advanced users only).
 - WININI.WRI—Procedures for modifying settings in the WIN.INI file (for advanced users only).

Conventions

To help you locate and interpret information easily, *Microsoft Windows User's Guide* uses consistent visual cues and a few standard text formats.

Visual Cues

You will find the following typographic conventions throughout this guide.

This	Represents
bold	Characters that you must type exactly as they appear. For example, if you are directed to type dir \windows , you should type all the bold characters exactly as they are printed.
<i>italic</i>	Placeholders for information you must provide. For example, if you are directed to type <i>filename</i> , you should type the actual name for a file instead of the word shown in italic type. Italic type also signals a new term. An explanation generally follows the italicized term.
ALL CAPITALS	Directory names, filenames, and acronyms.
386	A section that is specific to running Windows in 386 enhanced mode.

Keyboard Formats

Key combinations and key sequences appear in the following formats.

Format	Meaning
KEY1+KEY2	A plus sign (+) between key names means to press and hold down the first key while you press the second key. For example, "press ALT+ESC" means to press and hold down the ALT key and press the ESC key, and then release both keys.
KEY1, KEY2	A comma (,) between key names means to press and release the keys one after the other. For example, "press ALT, F" means to press and release the ALT key, and then press and release the F key.

PART 1

Getting Started

Setting Up Windows

Setup Designed with Users in Mind

Setting up the Microsoft Windows version 3.1 operating system on your computer is simple. You can choose between two methods: Express Setup and Custom Setup.

Express Setup

Express Setup is the method recommended for most users.

When you use Express Setup, the Setup program identifies your hardware and software, configures Windows to run with your system, and updates necessary files. All you do is type your name, answer a few simple questions (such as what type of printer you have), and insert disks when requested.

If you have applications already on your system, Express Setup sets them up so that you can easily use them with Windows. Setup may be unable to set up some less common applications. You can set these up later from within Windows. Also, if you want to make changes to your system after Windows has been set up, you can do so by running Windows Setup from within Windows.

Note If your system does not have enough disk space to set up all of Windows, Express Setup proposes a partial setup, which excludes some or all of the optional Windows components (for example, screen savers and additional accessory applications).

To set up Windows by using Express Setup, you need to know two things:

- What type of printer you have, if any
- Which port your printer is connected to

Note Most computers are equipped with one or more parallel ports, such as LPT1, and one or more serial ports, such as COM1. You can use these ports to connect your computer to external devices, such as a printer.

A *physical* port is a socket located on the front or back of your computer, into which you plug a mouse, printer, or other hardware. A *virtual* port is an internal connection, such as a connection to a network printer. Your computer may have one or both types of ports. See your hardware documentation for information about the ports on your computer.

Express Setup sets up Windows in the C:\WINDOWS directory. If you are updating from Windows version 3.0, Express Setup prompts you for a directory name, giving your previous Windows directory as the default choice.

Custom Setup

Custom Setup is for experienced computer users who want to alter the standard Windows configuration. For example, to control how your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files are modified, you should use Custom Setup rather than Express Setup.

If you have limited space on your hard disk, you can use Custom Setup to choose which optional Windows components or files you want to set up.

During Custom Setup, you are prompted to verify and provide information about the following:

- The directory where you want to store Windows files.
- The type (brand and processor) of computer you are using (for example, COMPAQ 386).
- Your display (monitor) type.
- Your mouse, if you are using one.
- Your keyboard and keyboard layout.
- The language you will work in.
- Any network driver you are using.
- The printer and printer port you use, if any.
- Applications on your hard disk that you want to run with Windows.

- Changes that may need to be made to your AUTOEXEC.BAT and CONFIG.SYS files.
- Which optional Windows components to install (including the Microsoft Windows Tutorial).
- Your virtual-memory settings (if Windows will be running in 386 enhanced mode).

Running Setup

Setup detects minimum system requirements (listed in “Welcome”) and warns you if your system does not meet the requirements. Also, Setup notifies you if it detects system features that are incompatible with Setup or Windows.

Caution Before running Setup, turn off any automatic message service, such as a network pop-up or a printing notification, that prints directly to your screen. These are incompatible with Setup.

► To set up Windows

1. Insert the Windows version 3.1 disk 1 in a floppy disk drive, and close the drive door.
2. At the command prompt, type the drive letter of the drive you’re using, followed by a colon (:), and then press ENTER.
3. Type **setup**, and then press ENTER.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen.

You can choose Express Setup or Custom Setup. It is recommended that you use Express Setup; however, you can use Custom Setup if you are an experienced user. Both methods are described earlier in this chapter.

Windows Tutorial

You can choose to go through the brief, online Microsoft Windows Tutorial as part of the Setup program. The first Tutorial lesson guides you through basic mouse techniques and gives you a chance to practice them before you start working with Windows. The second lesson introduces you to basic Windows techniques.

If you choose not to take the Tutorial from within the Setup program, you can run it later from within Windows by choosing the Windows Tutorial command from the Help menu in Program Manager. For complete instructions, see “Running the Microsoft Windows Tutorial” at the end of Chapter 3, “A Guided Tour of Microsoft Windows.”

Upgrading from Windows Version 3.0

Although you can keep your existing Windows version 3.0 in a separate directory, it is strongly recommended that you upgrade your copy of Windows version 3.0. You can then take full advantage of the many new features and enhancements in Windows version 3.1. Before upgrading, make backup copies of any data files and applications you have added to your system.

If you have Windows version 3.0, upgrading to Windows version 3.1 preserves existing Windows settings, such as groups you might have created or desktop settings you've chosen. Also, applications, fonts, and certain drivers are preserved. Only the Windows system files, upgraded device drivers, and accessories are replaced with the new versions.

Upgrading does the following:

- **Maintains existing Program Manager groups**

If you have created new groups in Program Manager or added program-item icons to existing groups, Setup preserves them.

- **Preserves existing system-information settings**

Settings for your computer, display adapter (monitor), mouse, keyboard and keyboard layout, language, network, and the associated drivers are preserved.

- **Updates existing device drivers that were supplied with Windows version 3.0**

If you have a Windows version 3.0 driver installed for which there is an available updated version, Setup installs the updated driver.

- **Maintains all installed drivers that were not supplied with Windows**

If you have a device driver installed that was supplied by another manufacturer, Setup leaves the driver unchanged. In some cases, Windows version 3.1 has a new driver that you can use in place of your existing driver. For example, if you have a Super VGA (video graphics adapter), you may want to update to the Windows version 3.1 Super VGA driver by using Custom Setup or by running Setup from within Windows later.

- **Preserves settings relating to the upper memory area**

The order in which drivers are loaded is critical in optimizing the use of the upper memory area. Setup preserves the **loadhigh=** line and its placement in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Setup also preserves the **devicehigh=** line in your CONFIG.SYS file.

Note Although you are strongly advised against it, you can keep your existing Windows version 3.0 and add version 3.1 in a separate directory. When Setup asks whether you want to upgrade, specify a new directory for Windows version 3.1. Version 3.1 will not incorporate the custom settings you specified for version 3.0, such as new groups, colors, and desktop settings. After setting up Windows version 3.1, remove Windows version 3.0 from your PATH setting in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Some parts of Windows version 3.0 cause serious problems if Windows version 3.1 is running.

More Information About Upgrading

If you are upgrading, please note the following information:

- If you are using an English version of Windows version 3.1 to upgrade a non-English version of Windows version 3.0, Setup will upgrade all the necessary Windows device drivers, using the English driver names.

However, some of your installed device drivers that were not originally supplied with Windows may not be upgraded. After setup, you may need to obtain new third-party drivers (such as those supplied by hardware manufacturers) and update them by running Setup from within Windows or from the MS-DOS prompt. For more information, see Chapter 13, "Configuring Hardware."

- Microsoft also provides the Windows Driver Library (WDL), which contains device drivers made available after Windows version 3.1 was released. Device drivers are added to the WDL as they become available. If you have a modem, you can download WDL device drivers from network services, including CompuServe, GENie, Microsoft OnLine, various user-group bulletin-board services (BBSs on the Association of PC User Groups, or APCUG, network), and the electronic downloading service maintained by Microsoft (phone 206-936-6735). If you do not have a modem, you may purchase disks by calling Microsoft Customer Support Services at 1-800-426-9400.

Network Setup

The Setup program has options that enable you to put Windows files on a network server or set up Windows for an individual network user to run. This section describes both procedures.

Setting Up Windows from a Network

If a network system administrator has put the Microsoft Windows files on a network server, you can set up Windows on your system from the network. Check with your system administrator for any special instructions before setting up Windows from a network.

Note For information about copying Windows files to a network server, see the next section, “Placing Windows Files on a Network Server.”

You can set up Windows from a network in three ways:

- **All Windows files are copied to your computer.**

In this situation, you create your own copy of Windows on your computer. All Windows files are copied to your hard disk.

To set up Windows, you connect to the network server and type **setup** (do not use the **/n** network option). Follow the instructions on the screen. It is recommended that you use Express Setup instead of Custom Setup. Both methods are described earlier in this chapter.

- **Personal Windows files are copied to your computer; shared Windows files are located on the server.**

You can set up your system to access a *shared* copy of Windows. In this case, most Windows files are located on a network server and are shared by you and others. During Setup, a few Windows files are copied to your personal Windows directory on your hard disk. By maintaining your own copies of these files, you can customize Windows according to your preferences.

To set up Windows this way, use the **setup /n** option, described in the procedure following this list.

- **No Windows files are copied to your computer.**

If your computer is a *diskless workstation* (that is, it does not have a hard disk), no files can be copied to your computer. When running Windows, you use shared Windows files located in a network Windows directory. During Setup, a few Windows files are copied to your personal Windows directory on the server hard disk and modified for your use.

To set up Windows this way, use **setup /n**, described in the following procedure. When Setup asks you where it should put your Windows files, specify the name of your personal Windows directory, located on the server hard disk. If you are not sure which network directory you should use as your personal Windows directory, ask your network system administrator.

► **To set up a personal copy of Windows from a shared network directory**

1. Connect to the network.
2. Change to the directory where Windows is located on the network (for example, W:\WINSHARE).
3. At the MS-DOS prompt, type **setup /n**
4. Follow the instructions on the screen.

It is recommended that you use Express Setup instead of Custom Setup. Both methods are described earlier in this chapter.

Setup will ask where it should put your Windows files. Type the path of your personal Windows directory—for example, **c:\windows** (or **u:\winuser**, for a diskless workstation).

Note If you have a set of Windows disks, do not attempt to set up a network copy of Windows from the disks (by typing **setup /n**). You can run **setup /n** only if you are setting up Windows from a network server.

If you are using an English version of Windows version 3.1 to upgrade a non-English version of Windows version 3.0, you need to use Custom Setup. In the System Information screen, choose the English names of drivers you previously installed in your non-English version of Windows.

In addition, some of your installed device drivers that were not originally supplied with Windows might not be upgraded. After setup, you may need to obtain new third-party drivers (such as those supplied by hardware manufacturers) and update them by running Setup from within Windows.

Placing Windows Files on a Network Server

Windows has an administrative setup option you can use to place Windows files on a network server. The administrative option does not set up a usable copy of Windows that you can run, but transfers the files from the Windows Setup disks to a network drive. The files are expanded, renamed, and marked as read-only when they are copied to the network drive. After the Windows files are copied to a directory on the network, users may connect to this directory and run the Setup program to set up Windows for their own workstations.

► **To place Windows files on a network server**

1. Insert the Windows version 3.1 disk 1 in a drive.
2. At the MS-DOS prompt, type the drive letter of the drive.
3. Type **setup /a**
4. Follow the instructions on your screen.

Setup prompts you to specify the network drive and directory to which you want the Windows files copied. You're also prompted to specify group registration information (group name and company name), which is stored and used when individual workstations are set up.

Windows requires the following disk space for network files:

- Shared network directory—16 MB
- Personal network directory—300K

Setup Summary

The Windows Setup program:

- Determines what hardware you are using.
- Expands files from the Windows disk set and copies them to your hard disk.
- Configures the SYSTEM.INI and WIN.INI files, which are used to customize your copy of Windows.
- Searches your hard disk for applications to set up for use with Windows and creates program-item icons for these applications. You can then start an application simply by choosing its icon.
- Creates program information files (PIFs) and program-item icons for any known MS-DOS-based applications you currently have on your system. PIFs supply Windows with essential information about how to run the applications with Windows.
- Modifies your AUTOEXEC.BAT and CONFIG.SYS files as described in the following section. (Express Setup does this automatically. During Custom Setup, you can choose whether or not to have Setup modify these files.)
- Restarts your system (if you want), so that all changes that were made to your system during Setup take effect immediately.

Note If you quit Setup before Windows has been completely set up (by pressing F3, for example), Windows will not be properly set up on your system. You will need to run Setup again before you can use Windows.

Changes to the AUTOEXEC.BAT and CONFIG.SYS Files

Setup makes the following changes to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

- Adds to your PATH setting the directory where you are setting up Windows.
- Adds the SMARTDRV.EXE command line, if appropriate for your system configuration.
- Creates a TEMP directory in the Windows directory and sets the TEMP variable to it (if you have not already set the variable).

Setup makes the following changes to your CONFIG.SYS file:

- Adds the HIMEM.SYS line. For example:
`device=c:\windows\himem.sys`
- Adds the SMARTDRV.EXE /double_buffer line, if needed. For example:
`device=c:\windows\smartdrv.exe /double_buffer`
- Updates RAMDRIVE.SYS, if it is in use.
- Updates EMM386.EXE, if appropriate.
- Updates your Microsoft or Hewlett-Packard mouse driver.
- Deletes any commands that load incompatible device drivers.
- Adds or updates your EGA.SYS device driver if you are using an enhanced graphics adapter (EGA) or a Mouse Systems mouse.
- Adds the appropriate parameter to the 386MAX line, if it is present.

Note If you have problems setting up Windows, see Appendix C, “Troubleshooting.”

Starting Windows

At the end of the Setup program, you can choose whether to restart Windows or return to the command (MS-DOS) prompt. You can start Windows from the MS-DOS prompt at any time.

► **To start Windows**

- At the command prompt, type **win** and then press ENTER.

Note To have Windows start whenever you turn on your computer, add the **win** command to the end of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. For more information about the AUTOEXEC.BAT file, see your MS-DOS documentation.

When you start Windows, you can specify which mode (386 enhanced or standard) you want Windows to run in. Windows modes are described in the next section.

You can also specify the name of an application or an MS-DOS command that you want to run when Windows is started.

Windows Modes

Windows can run in two modes: 386 enhanced mode and standard mode. When you type **win**, Windows starts in the most appropriate mode for your system. You can find out which mode Windows is running in by choosing the About command from the Help menu in Program Manager.

Windows uses the following criteria when determining which mode to use:

- Windows runs in 386 enhanced mode if you have a 386 computer (or higher) with at least 640K of conventional memory plus 1024K of extended memory.
- Windows runs in standard mode if you have a 286 computer (or higher) with at least 640K of conventional memory plus 256K of extended memory. Windows also runs in standard mode on 386 computers that have less than 2 MB of free memory.

Starting Windows in a Specific Mode

At times you might want to run Windows in a specific mode, even if it is not the most efficient one for your system. For example, if your system is a 386 computer with between 2 and 3 MB of memory and you do not want to run MS-DOS-based applications in Windows, you may decide to run Windows version 3.1 in standard mode to speed up performance. For more information about improving performance, see Chapter 14, "Managing Memory and Performance."

To ensure that Windows runs in a particular mode, specify one of the following options after the **win** command. For example, type **win /s** to start Windows in standard mode.

You can specify one of the following options.

Use	To
/s	Run Windows in standard mode. You might want to use this option if you have a 386 computer with 640K of conventional memory plus 1024K to 2096K of extended memory and do not use MS-DOS-based applications with Windows. On such systems, Windows runs faster in standard mode than in 386 enhanced mode. You might also want to use this option if you are having hardware compatibility problems when Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode.
/3	Run Windows in 386 enhanced mode. You might want to use this option if you want to run Windows in 386 enhanced mode even though your 386 (or higher) computer has less than the 2 MB of memory that 386 enhanced mode normally requires. This option works only with 386 systems with at least 1 MB of memory (640K conventional, 384K extended). If your system has less than 2 MB of memory, Windows probably runs slower in 386 enhanced mode than in standard mode. However, you may be able to run more Windows-based applications at once in 386 enhanced mode.

Specifying a mode is optional. If you do not specify a mode, Windows starts in the mode most appropriate for your system.

Specifying an Application or an MS-DOS Command

When you start Windows, you can also run an application or MS-DOS command. For example, the following commands start Windows and then Microsoft Excel:

```
win c:\excel\excel.exe
```

If you specify an application or MS-DOS command, it must come after an option that specifies a mode. For example, the following commands start Windows in standard mode and then run the application MYEDITOR.EXE:

```
win /s myeditor.exe
```

Some Samples for Starting Windows

The following samples show how to specify modes, applications, and MS-DOS commands when starting Windows.

Sample One: Starting Windows and an Application

The following commands start Windows and then run the application TEXTEDIT.COM, which is in the EDITORS directory on drive D:

```
win d:\editors\textedit.com
```

Sample Two: Starting Windows and Opening a Document

The following commands start Windows in standard mode and then open the document AGENDA.TXT in Notepad:

```
win /s agenda.txt
```

Notepad starts because Windows associates all files that have the .TXT filename extension with Notepad. You can change such file associations in File Manager by choosing the Associate command from the File menu. For information, see Chapter 7, "File Manager."

Sample Three: Starting Windows and an Application, and Opening a Document

The following commands start Windows, run Microsoft Word, and then open the Word document LETTER.DOC:

```
win c:\word\word.exe letter.doc
```

CHAPTER 2

New in This Version

This chapter highlights some of the new and enhanced features and many of the performance improvements in Windows version 3.1.

TrueType Fonts

One of the most dramatic features in Windows version 3.1 is the addition of TrueType fonts. TrueType provides you with a full set of fonts, with enough variety to meet virtually all your printing needs.

TrueType fonts are scalable, so you can choose the exact font size you need for your documents. For example, you can use a font at 12 points for the main text of a report and at 16 points for topic heads. If you use a dot-matrix or laser printer, the page you print will appear exactly as you see it on the screen, without your having to obtain special screen, cartridge, or soft fonts.

Windows version 3.1 supplies several families of TrueType fonts, including Arial, Courier New, Symbol, and Times New Roman. You can easily add other TrueType fonts from a font manufacturer to enhance your Windows-based applications.

For more information about using TrueType fonts, see Chapter 12, "Customizing Windows."

Object Linking and Embedding

Object linking and embedding is now available in Paintbrush, Write, Cardfile, and Sound Recorder (included with Windows version 3.1) and in applications such as

Microsoft Excel, Ami Professional, and WordPerfect. Object linking and embedding enables you to transfer and share information in a powerful new way.

- **Object embedding**

With object embedding, you can create a drawing, sound file, or other object by using an application such as Paintbrush or Sound Recorder and then insert (embed) it in another document. You can edit the embedded information from within your document.

For example, suppose you are working on a report in which you have embedded a drawing. To make changes to the drawing, you choose it, and Paintbrush opens. You can then make changes to the drawing, save it, and return to your report. You don't have to remember where the drawing is: Windows finds it for you.

- **Object linking**

With object linking, you can use the same information (the object) in several documents. An object can be any kind of information, including text, a drawing, or a sound file. You create the object and then connect (link) it to as many documents as you want.

When you edit the information in any of the documents, your changes are reflected in all the other documents that contain the same linked information. You save time and effort because you don't have to perform a cut-and-paste operation for each document every time you change the information. You save disk space because only one copy of the information exists—the documents contain only the links.

For more information about object linking and embedding, see Chapter 10, "Object Linking and Embedding."

A New File Manager

File Manager has a new look: a split window with a directory list on the left and the contents of the "open" directory on the right. You can browse through the file system easily without having to open separate windows.

File Manager has several other enhancements, including:

- The ability to display the contents of more than one drive or directory at once. This makes it easy to copy and move files and subdirectories from one directory or drive to another.
- More clearly labeled windows, disk drives, and network connections, making it easier to use File Manager.

- A variety of fonts that you can use to display information in the File Manager window. This enables you to control how much file information is displayed in the File Manager window at a time.
- Enhanced network support that makes it easy to connect to and disconnect from network drives. (The specific commands that appear on menus depend on the network you are using.)
- A Quick Format option so that you can format a floppy disk and then copy files to it without having to start MS-DOS Prompt or quit Windows.
- A *status bar* that displays information about disk-space usage and availability.

For more information about using File Manager, see Chapter 7, “File Manager.”

Drag and Drop

The new “drag and drop” feature makes it easy to print, copy, or move a file in File Manager. You simply drag a file icon from one location to another by using the mouse. For example, you can print a file by dragging its file icon from File Manager and dropping it onto the minimized Print Manager window.

If you want to create a new program item to use to start an application, you can drag the application’s file icon from File Manager and drop it onto a group icon or window in Program Manager.

For more information about dragging and dropping files, see Chapter 7, “File Manager.”

A New Print Manager

Installing printers and connecting to network printers are now easier and smoother—you can perform these tasks by using either Print Manager or Control Panel.

In addition, several of the Windows printer drivers have been improved, making it quicker and easier to print files. For example, support has been added for printing at a baud rate of 19200 on a Hewlett-Packard LaserJet Series II or III printer. If you are using this type of printer, you can take full advantage of this feature and increase printing speed dramatically. For more information, see your HP LaserJet documentation.

Print Manager now is faster and more efficient, returning control to your applications sooner. This enables you to quickly return to working on your documents while other documents or files are being printed. And remember—you can print most files just by dragging their file icons from File Manager onto the minimized Print Manager window.

For more information about printing, see Chapter 8, “Print Manager.”

Online Tutorial

Windows version 3.1 offers an online Tutorial in which you can practice working with a mouse and performing basic Windows tasks. To run the Microsoft Windows Tutorial, you need a mouse and a VGA (or better) monitor.

You can run the Tutorial when you run Windows Setup or at any time afterward. To run the Tutorial after you have set up Windows, choose the Windows Tutorial command from the Help menu in Program Manager.

New Multimedia Features

Windows version 3.1 has several new multimedia features, including sound, graphics, animation, and video capabilities. Many popular sound devices are supported, such as sound cards and devices with Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI) capabilities.

The following are among the new multimedia features:

- **Media Player**

You can use Media Player to control the playing of media files on hardware such as sound cards, CD-ROM drives, and videodisc players. Media Player can play animation, sound, and MIDI sequencer files. For more information about using Media Player, see Chapter 9, "Accessories," and Media Player online Help.

- **Sound Recorder**

You can use Sound Recorder to play, record, and edit sound files that have the WAVE format. You can assign the sounds that you record to system or application events, or use the sounds in applications that support object linking and embedding.

The Sound Recorder window displays the sound wave as if it were being shown on an oscilloscope. For more information about using Sound Recorder, see Chapter 9, "Accessories," and Sound Recorder online Help.

- **Enhancements to Control Panel**

Control Panel has a new Drivers option, so you can set up drivers for almost any device you want to use. Although most devices include the appropriate driver, Windows also supplies sound drivers for common sound devices.

Also, you can now assign unique sounds to different system and application events by using the enhanced Sound option. For example, you can select a sound to play every time you start or quit Windows, when an application displays a message, or in place of your computer's warning beep.

Control Panel has a new MIDI Mapper option, which you can use with sound devices that have MIDI capabilities, such as a synthesizer. MIDI Mapper is available only if you have a driver installed that supports a MIDI device.

For more information about the new sound support in Control Panel, see Chapter 12, “Customizing Windows.”

Additional Features and Enhancements

There are additional features and enhancements in Windows version 3.1:

- **Setup enhancements**

Setup has been greatly simplified. If you choose Express Setup, Windows is set up for you. You just type your name and answer a few simple questions, such as what type of printer you have.

If you are an advanced user and need more control over how Windows is set up—for example, if you want to set any special printer options or choose not to set up some Windows components—you can use Custom Setup. Chapter 1, “Setting Up Windows,” provides detailed instructions on how to set up Windows on your computer, using both methods.

- **Improved support for MS-DOS–based applications**

Windows now includes program information files (PIFs) for even more MS-DOS–based applications. PIFs are set up when you create program items for your MS-DOS–based applications in Program Manager, making it easier to run these applications from within Windows.

Note An MS-DOS–based application is designed to run with MS-DOS but not specifically with Windows.

When you run Windows in 386 enhanced mode, improved virtual-memory functions make it smoother to run several MS-DOS–based applications in the background and to switch between them.

Full mouse support has been added to MS-DOS–based applications running in a window. You can now use your mouse to move around in and select items in these applications.

Different font sizes are available for your MS-DOS–based applications, so you can pick the font size that best suits your needs.

Also included is a collection of icons (in the MORICONS.DLL file) that represent many of the most popular MS-DOS–based applications. You can now use these icons when adding MS-DOS–based applications to Program Manager.

For more information about running MS-DOS–based applications in Windows, see Chapter 11, “MS-DOS Applications.”

- **Network enhancements**

When you restart Windows, your system is reconnected to all the printers and network drives you were previously connected to.

- **Character Map**

Character Map is a new accessory application that you can use to insert special characters not found on your keyboard into your application. These characters include accented characters and characters in the Symbol fonts. For more information about using Character Map, see Chapter 9, "Accessories," and Character Map online Help.

- **Object Packager**

Windows Object Packager is a new accessory application you can use when linking and embedding information. For more information about Object Packager, see Chapter 10, "Object Linking and Embedding."

- **Online Help enhancements**

In addition to a complete, indexed Help system for all of Windows, you can now get context-sensitive Help for the task you are performing. Context-sensitive Help is available in all dialog boxes in the following Windows applications: Windows Setup, Program Manager, File Manager, Print Manager, PIF Editor, and Control Panel. Now, you can get Help on a dialog box by simply choosing the Help button or pressing F1. For more information about using Help, see Chapter 6, "Online Help."

- **Improved startup configuration**

When Windows starts, it runs (or loads) any applications whose program-item icons you placed in the new StartUp group in Program Manager.

In Program Manager and File Manager, you can preserve the contents and positions of windows and icons, and any menu settings you change, from one Windows session to the next. For more information about using the StartUp group, see Chapter 5, "Application Basics."

- **More ways to customize your desktop**

Windows version 3.1 now has more desktop color schemes to choose from, including three designed for use with liquid crystal display (LCD) monitors.

Also included are screen savers, which display moving graphics or text on your screen while you are not actively working with Windows. Screen savers reduce the wear on your screen and can be password-protected so that your work remains private. For more information about the new desktop features, see Chapter 12, "Customizing Windows."

- **Serial-port enhancements**

Windows now includes additional communications settings for your serial ports. You can use serial ports that were not previously recognized by Windows and set separate interrupts for ports 1 and 3, in addition to ports 2 and 4, so that you can use these ports simultaneously. For more information about this feature, see Chapter 13, “Configuring Hardware.”
- **Standardized dialog boxes**

Many of the common dialog boxes, such as those that appear when you choose the Open, Save As, Browse, or Print Setup command, now look the same throughout Windows.
- **New collection of application icons**

Program Manager now offers a collection of icons that you can choose from to represent your applications. Whether you are adding an application to a group or changing application information, you can choose the most suitable icon. Also included is a file (MORICONS.DLL) that contains icons used to represent MS-DOS-based applications.

Performance Improvements

Windows version 3.1 includes many significant improvements to overall performance. For example:

- Program Manager now requires less system memory, so you can create more groups without using up memory.
- File Manager is much faster: Your screen updates faster when you move and copy files and when you search through drives and directories.
- Running an MS-DOS-based application in a window is now much faster in 386 enhanced mode. Also, switching between Windows and an MS-DOS-based application is smoother and faster.
- Printing is faster and more efficient: Your documents print faster, and control is returned to your applications sooner.
- Disk-caching is improved with SMARTDrive. Opening, saving, and managing files when using MS-DOS-based applications is now smoother and faster.



CHAPTER 3

A Guided Tour of Microsoft Windows

Introduction

This chapter introduces you to the Microsoft Windows operating system version 3.1—what it is, what it looks like, and how it works. You may want to try out some of the Windows features as you read this chapter.

This tour is designed for mouse users. If you don't have a mouse, the tour can still provide a good overview of Windows. To learn about specific keyboard procedures, see Chapter 4, "Windows Basics," Chapter 5, "Application Basics," and Appendix A, "Keyboard Shortcuts."

If you are new to using a mouse, you can use the online Microsoft Windows Tutorial either during the Setup program or later from within Windows. The first Tutorial lesson introduces you to basic mouse procedures. For more information, see "Running the Microsoft Windows Tutorial" at the end of this chapter.

If Windows is not yet set up on your system, read Chapter 1, "Setting Up Windows," before continuing.

Starting Windows

After Windows is set up on your computer, it is easy to start:

- At the command prompt (for example, C>), type **win** and then press ENTER.

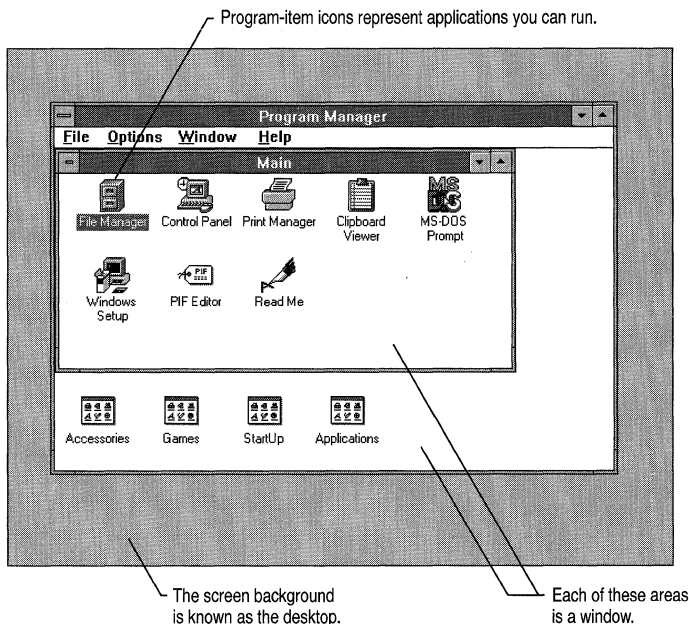
Windows Basics

As you work with Windows, there are a few basic terms you need to become familiar with.

You do your work in rectangular areas of the screen called *windows*. These windows appear on a background called the *desktop*. The *applications* you work

with (such as your word-processing or spreadsheet applications) are represented in Windows by small graphical symbols called *icons*.

You often carry out an action in Windows by *choosing* an item: For example, choosing an icon can start an application. You choose an icon by double-clicking it with the mouse.



Program Manager

When you start Windows, the first thing you see is Program Manager, which continues to run as long as you are using Windows. Initially, the Program Manager window displays the contents of the Main group. A *group* is a collection of applications you can run. The names and icons for the applications in the group are displayed in the *group window*.

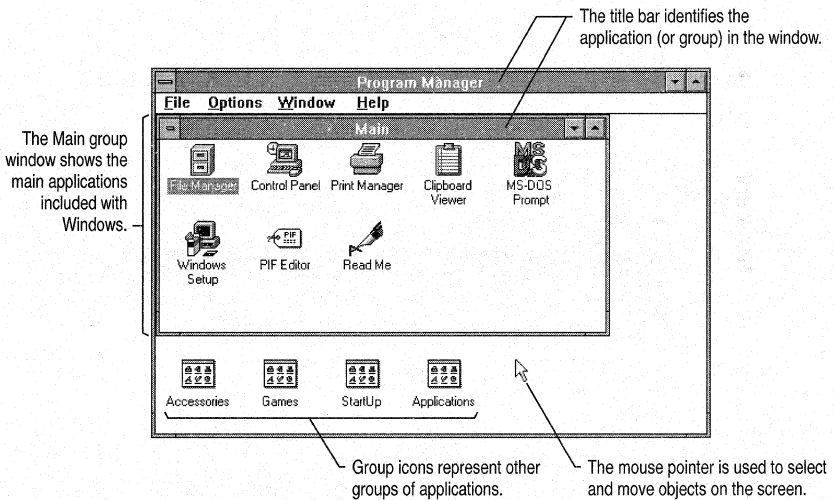
Program Manager also displays icons for other groups of applications: Accessories, Games, and StartUp.

Note Your Program Manager window may contain another group icon called Applications. During Windows Setup, applications already installed on your computer can be set up for you to use with Windows. The Applications group window contains icons for those applications.

You can perform many important tasks by using Program Manager. For example, you can:

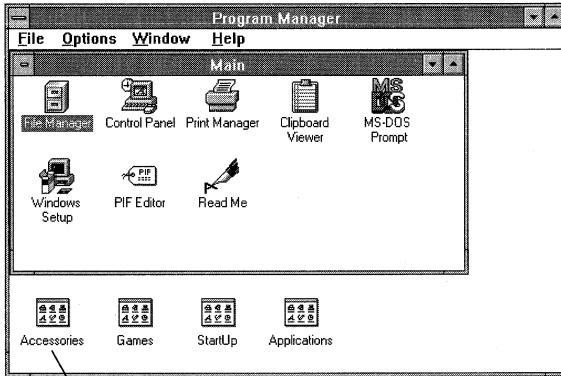
- Start applications.
- Organize your applications into groups for easy access.
- Quit Windows.

The following illustration points out some of the Windows features displayed when you first start Windows.



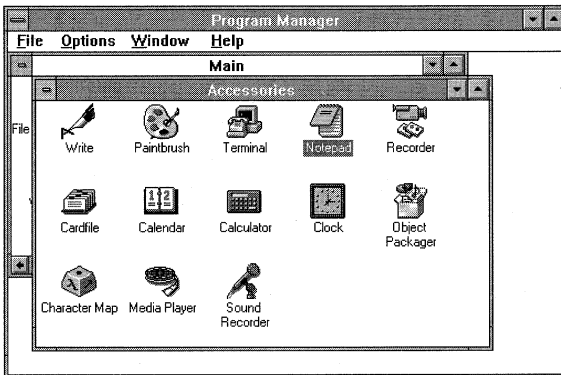
Starting an Application

From Program Manager, you can easily start an application by using the mouse to double-click (or “choose”) its icon, called a *program-item icon*. You may need to open another group window to find the icon representing the application you want to use. For example, you need to open the Accessories group to start Notepad.



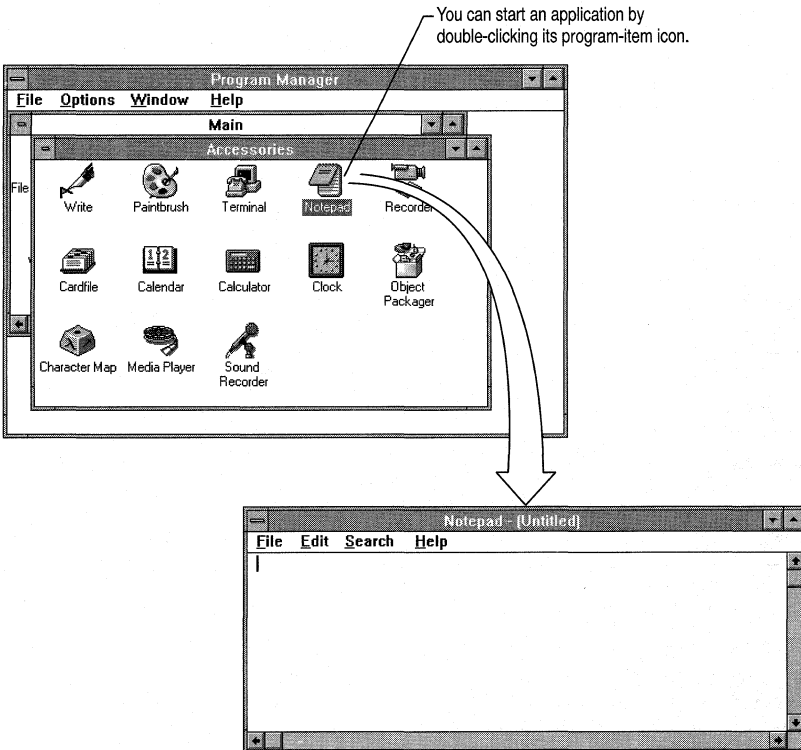
You can open a group window by double-clicking the group icon.

The Accessories group window displays icons for additional applications you can run.



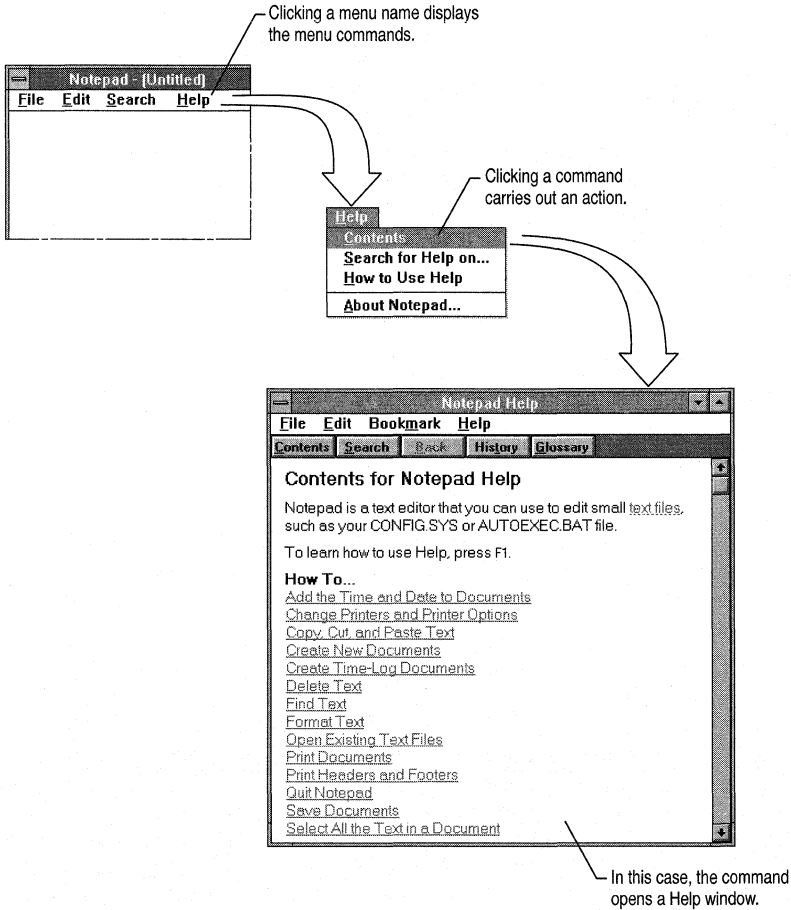
When you double-click (“choose”) the icon, in this case Notepad, the application appears in an *application window*, ready for you to use.

The Notepad window is now the *active window*. The active window is generally the window in the foreground. To make another window active, you click anywhere in the window.



Using a Menu

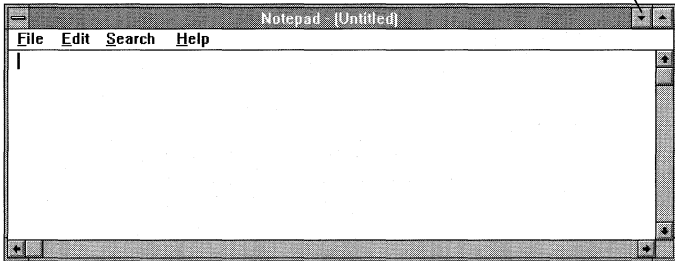
Each application window, and other windows as well, has menu names located on a *menu bar* (beneath the title bar). A *menu* contains a list of *commands*, which are actions you can carry out in Windows. To choose a menu name or command, you click it once.



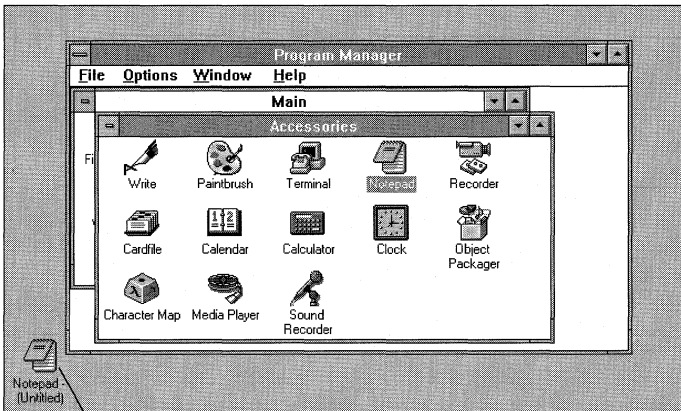
Reducing an Application Window to an Icon

As you work with Windows, you may want to temporarily put aside an application but keep it running and easily available to use later. You can avoid clutter on your screen if you reduce the application window to an icon by clicking its Minimize button; the icon stays on the Windows desktop until you need to use the application again.

You can reduce an application window to an icon by clicking the Minimize button.



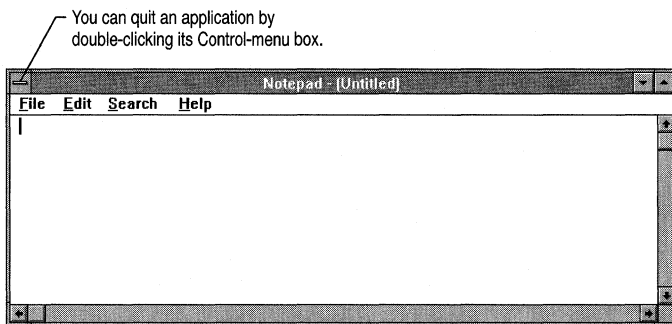
The application is running, but it takes up less space as an *application icon*.



Application icon

Quitting an Application

When you finish using an application, you may want to quit it to free memory for other tasks. Using a mouse, you can quit an application as easily as starting it. The quickest way to quit is to double-click the application's *Control-menu box*. (You can also press ALT+F4. Or you can click the Control-menu box once to display the Control menu, and then click the Close command.)



If you have any unsaved work, Windows prompts you to save it before the application window closes.

More Ways to Use Program Manager

You can also use Program Manager to:

- Create and delete groups.
- Add applications to a group and delete applications from a group.
- Add applications to the StartUp group so that they start when Windows starts.

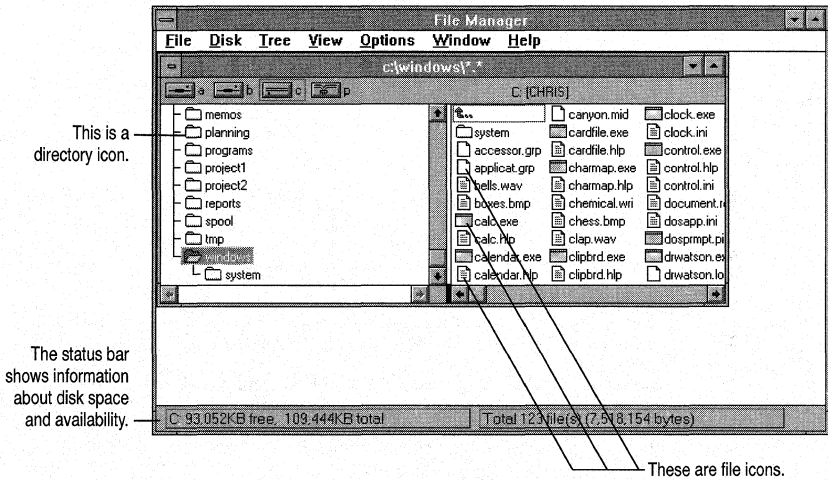
For information about these and other Program Manager tasks, see Chapter 5, "Application Basics."

File Manager

File Manager provides a graphical representation of files and directories to help you organize them and simplify file maintenance. You can start File Manager by double-clicking its icon in the Main group window.

You can perform many tasks by using File Manager. For example, you can:

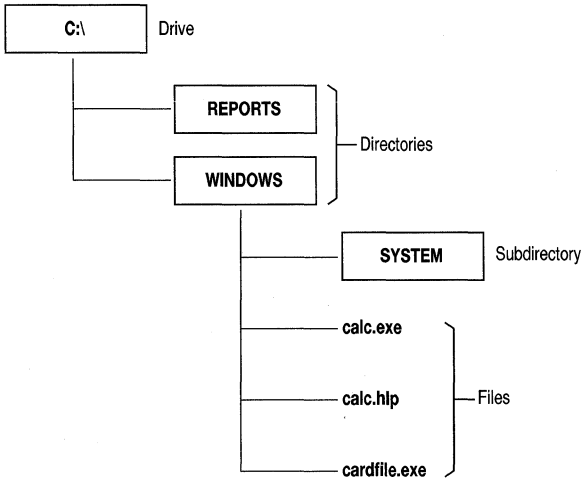
- View the contents of your directories.
- Move, copy, and delete files and directories.
- Change to other disk drives, including network drives.



Files and Directories

A *file* is an electronic document or an application or program that has been named and is stored on your computer. A file could be a memo you have written or the word-processing application you used to create the memo. Files have unique names, such as LETTER.TXT and APPLICTN.EXE, and they can be organized into *directories*.

A directory is a collection of files and/or other directories (sometimes called *subdirectories*). Two directories that are likely to be on your computer are WINDOWS and SYSTEM.

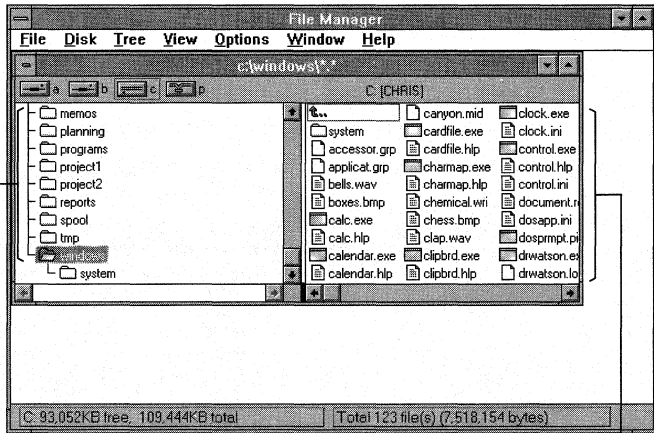


The WINDOWS directory contains the SYSTEM subdirectory, in addition to many of the Windows files. The SYSTEM directory contains additional files.

A *directory window* appears in the main File Manager window. It graphically displays the relationship of the directories and files stored on a disk drive.

The left side of the window displays the directory tree, and the right side displays the contents of the current directory.

The directory tree displays directories on the drive you are using. The selected directory (WINDOWS) is "open."

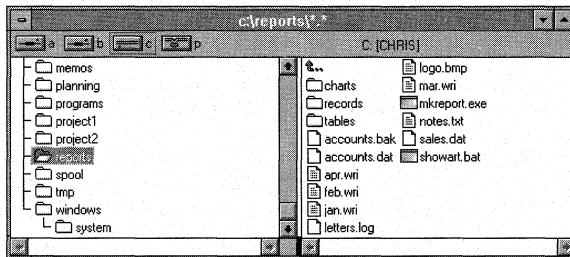


The files and subdirectories in the open directory are displayed.

Viewing Directory Contents

By using File Manager, you can easily scan the contents of a directory. Just open the directory by clicking (selecting) its name or icon on the left side of the window.

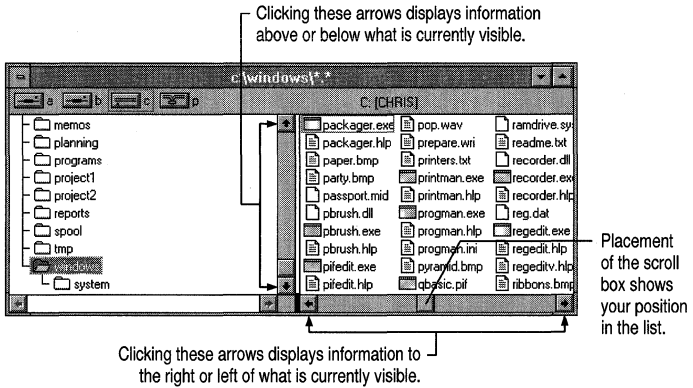
In the following illustration, the REPORTS directory is open, with its contents displayed at the right.



Scrolling to View Information

When a file has more text or graphics than can fit inside a window, you can use *scroll bars* to bring the rest of the information into view.

These scrolling techniques will be useful in much of your work with Windows.



Moving and Copying Files

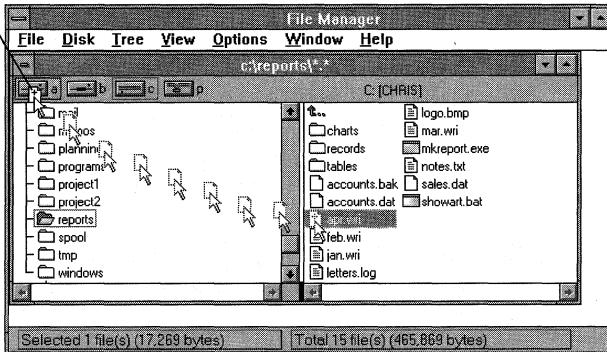
With the "drag and drop" feature available in File Manager, you can use your mouse to move or copy files quickly.

For example, to copy a file from your hard disk to a disk in drive A, first position the mouse pointer on the *file icon*. Then press and hold down the left mouse button and move (*drag*) the file icon to the *drive icon* labeled "a." Finally, release the mouse button, *dropping* the file icon onto the drive icon.

You can move a file to a different drive by pressing and holding down the SHIFT or ALT key while you drag the file icon to the drive icon.

When you move or copy files in File Manager, your mouse pointer appears as in the following illustration.

You can copy a file to another drive by dragging its icon to the drive icon.



You can also move and copy files from one directory to another by dragging file icons.

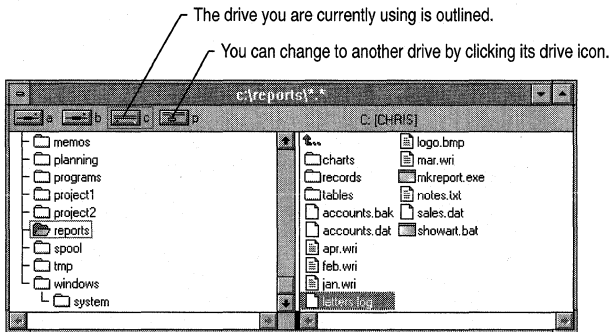
- You can move a file to another directory on the same drive by dragging the file icon to the destination directory icon or window.
- You can copy a file to another directory on the same drive by pressing and holding down the CTRL key while you drag the file icon to the destination directory icon or window.

For more information about moving and copying files, see Chapter 7, "File Manager."

Changing Disk Drives

In File Manager, all of your disk drives are readily available, even any network drives you are connected to.

Each File Manager directory window displays icons for all drives on your system—floppy disk drives, hard disk drives, and network drives—in the space beneath the window title. The icon of the current drive is outlined. The files and directories on the current drive are those displayed in the directory window.



When you click another drive icon, the directory window changes to display the contents of that drive. Double-click the drive icon to open an additional directory window rather than replace the contents of the current directory window.

More Ways to Use File Manager

You can also use File Manager to:

- Connect to network drives.
- Format and maintain disks.
- Print documents.
- Start applications.
- Rename and delete files.
- Change the kind and amount of information displayed about each file.
- Create directories and subdirectories.

For information about these and other File Manager tasks, see Chapter 7, "File Manager," and Help for File Manager.

Control Panel

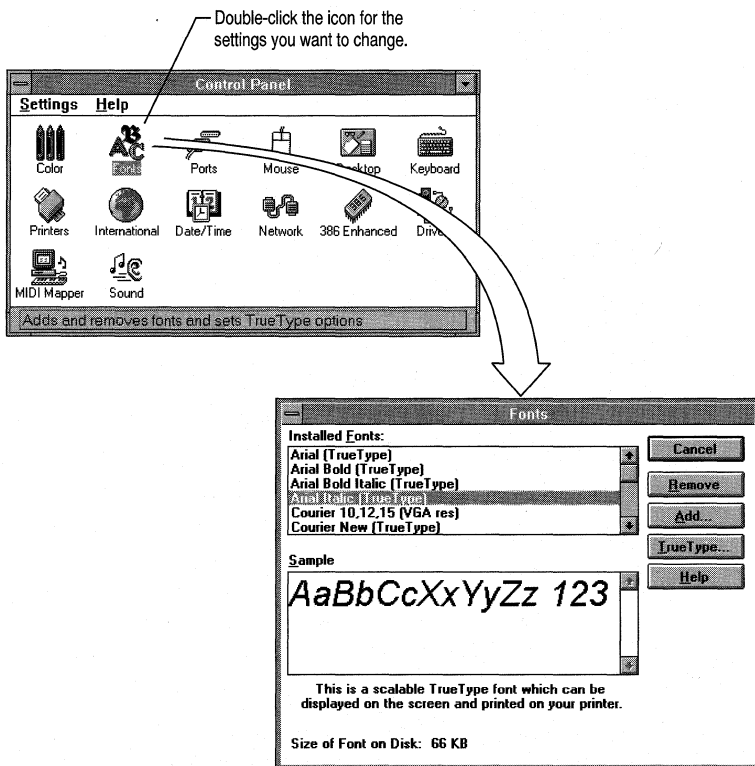
You can use Control Panel to adjust settings on your system, such as changing the look of your desktop and configuring hardware.

You can start Control Panel by double-clicking its icon in the Main group window.

You can perform many tasks by using Control Panel. For example, you can:

- Change screen colors and desktop settings.
- Set options for your printer.
- Add, configure, and remove device drivers.

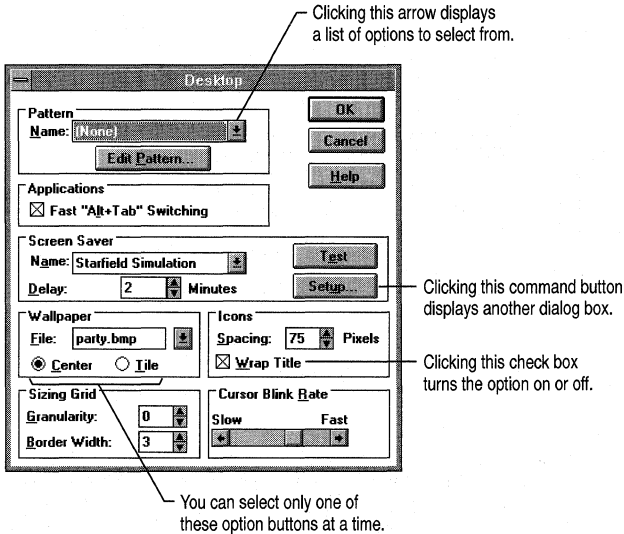
By using the dialog box that appears when you choose a Control Panel icon, you can make changes, such as adding and removing fonts.



Note Your fonts may be different from those shown here.

Using Dialog Boxes

Sometimes Windows requires additional information from you in order to complete a task. You provide this information in a *dialog box*. Depending on the task you are performing, you might need to select certain options, type some text, or specify settings.



More Ways to Use Control Panel

You can also use Control Panel to:

- Change options for your mouse or other pointing device, such as the double-click rate.
- Change settings for network connections.
- Specify international settings for applications that use them.
- Assign unique sounds to system events. For example, you can have Windows play musical notes each time it starts, if you have a sound card.
- Add, configure, or remove sound and Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI) device drivers, if you have a sound card or MIDI device.
- Set printer options.

For information about these and other Control Panel tasks, see Chapter 12, “Customizing Windows,” Chapter 13, “Configuring Hardware,” and Help for Control Panel.

Print Manager

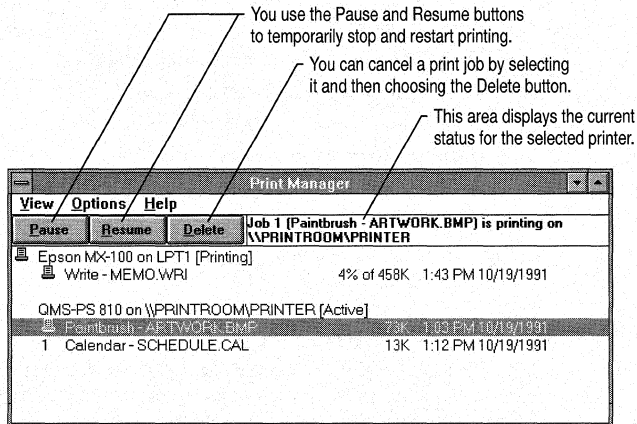
Print Manager controls printing for Windows-based applications and helps you keep track of documents sent to your printer. The Print Manager window displays the status of your printer(s) and the documents that are printing or waiting to be printed.

You can view the Print Manager window by double-clicking its icon in the Main group window.

You can use Print Manager to:

- Check the print status of a document.
- Pause and restart a printer or the printing of a document.
- Cancel the printing of a document.
- Set up a printer.

In Windows, you often need to *select* (highlight) an item before you carry out an action on it. For example, in Print Manager you click a print job to select it; then you can pause, restart, or cancel printing by clicking the appropriate button.

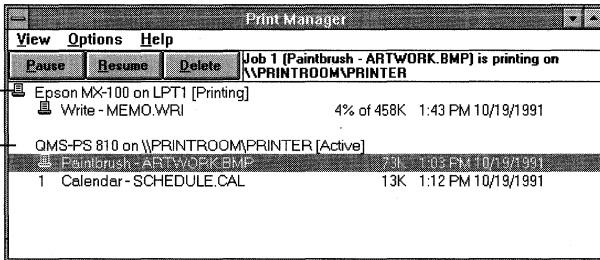


Checking Printer Status

By using Print Manager, you can monitor the status of your printer and the documents being printed. This can be particularly useful when you are printing more than one document or printing on a network printer that is located where you can't see it.

This line shows the queue status for a printer that is directly connected to your computer.

This line shows the queue status for a printer that you are connected to through a network.



These lines display the status of files that are printing or waiting to be printed.

More Ways to Use Print Manager

You can also use Print Manager to:

- Set up a printer.
- Change the order of documents waiting to be printed.
- Specify how print messages are displayed.
- Connect to and disconnect from network printers.
- Use separator pages between documents.
- Specify your default printer.

For information about these and other Print Manager tasks, see Chapter 8, "Print Manager," and Help for Print Manager.

Switching Between Applications

Using Windows to run more than one application at a time can make your job much easier. But when several windows are open, it may become difficult to find applications beneath overlapping windows.

An easy way to keep track of your applications is to use the Windows fast application-switching feature. You can switch quickly to another application by pressing and holding down the ALT key and then pressing the TAB key repeatedly. As you continue to press TAB, the title of each application currently running in Windows appears in the center of your screen.



When you see the application you want to use, release ALT+TAB. The application window appears in the foreground.

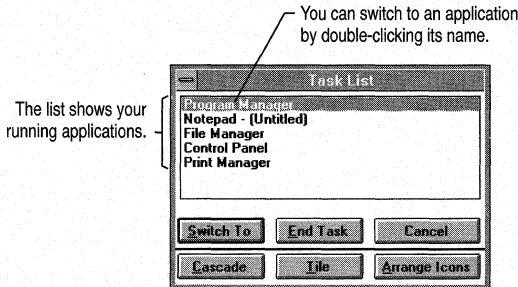
Task List

Another method of managing your applications is to use Task List.







Using Task List, you can:

- Display a list of all the applications you are currently running.
- Switch quickly to any running application.
- Rearrange windows and icons on your desktop.
- Quit an application.

You can display Task List by double-clicking anywhere on the desktop. Another method is to press CTRL+ESC. (If a menu is displayed, you need to press ESC first.) Or you can choose the Switch To command from any application's Control menu.



The Task List buttons can be used to perform several functions:

	Switches you to the selected application.
	Quits the selected application.
	Closes Task List. Or you can close it by pressing ESC.
	Layers windows on your screen so that you can see the title of each window.
	Resizes windows and arranges them side by side.
	Rearranges application icons along the bottom of your desktop.

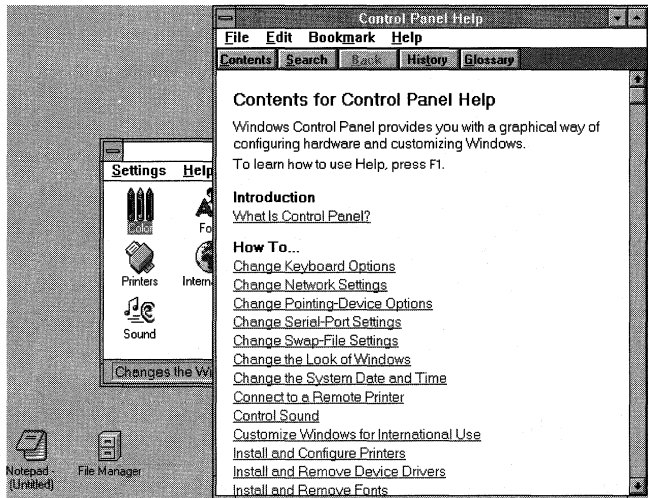
For more information about switching between applications, see Chapter 5, "Application Basics."

Online Help

Windows provides online Help to assist you in working with Windows. Following are some of the ways you can obtain Help:

- Press the F1 key to view a list of Help topics for the application you are working with.
- When you are using a dialog box that has a Help button, click the Help button (or press F1) to display information about working with the dialog box.
- Choose the Help menu in any application to display a list of Help commands.

The buttons near the top of the Help window can help you find the information you need.



Contents

Displays a list of Help topics for an application.

Search

Displays a dialog box where you specify a topic to search for.

Back

Displays the previously viewed topic.

History

Displays a chronological list of all Help topics viewed during your current Windows session.

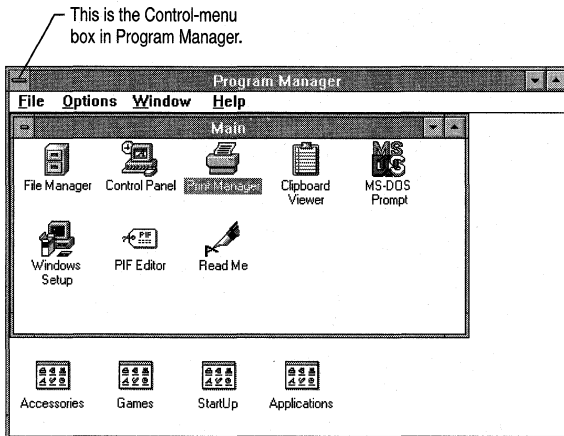
Glossary

Displays a list of Windows terms and their definitions.

If you need to learn how to use Help, press F1 while the Help window is open. Or choose How To Use Help from your application's Help menu. For more information about using Help, see Chapter 6, "Online Help."

Quitting Windows

Before turning off your computer, it is recommended that you quit Windows. You can quit Windows by double-clicking the Control-menu box in Program Manager.



The Next Step

This chapter has provided a brief introduction to Windows. The rest of this book, along with online Help, provides details on the features presented in this chapter. Also, you may want to use the Windows Tutorial that is available on your system. Instructions for running the Tutorial follow.

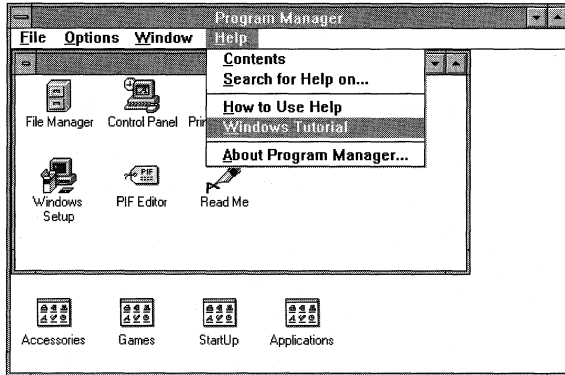
Running the Microsoft Windows Tutorial

The Windows Tutorial is an interactive, online application that teaches you the basics of using a mouse and Windows. To use the Tutorial, you need a mouse and a VGA (or better) monitor.

► **To run the Tutorial from within Windows**

Mouse

1. Switch to the Program Manager window by clicking it or by using Task List.
2. Click the Help menu, and then click the Windows Tutorial command.



Keyboard

1. Switch to the Program Manager window: Press and hold down ALT, and then press TAB repeatedly until "Program Manager" appears in the small window in the middle of your screen. Then release both keys. The Program Manager window appears.
2. Press ALT and then H to display the Help menu.
3. Press W. Or press the DOWN ARROW key to select the Windows Tutorial command, and then press ENTER.

PART 2

Windows Fundamentals

CHAPTER 4

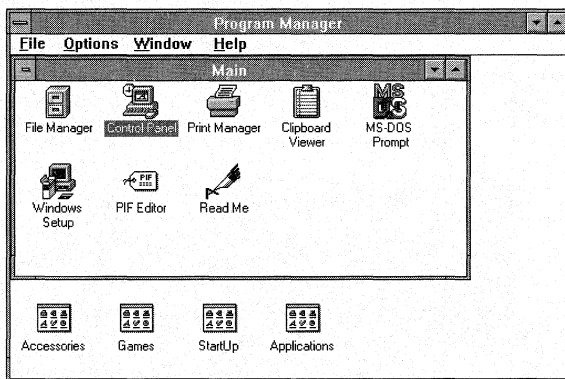
Windows Basics

If you are new to Windows, this chapter may be the most important one to read. It explains the basic skills you need to work with Windows. You may want to return to this chapter often as a reference.

Another way to become familiar with Windows is to read Chapter 3, “A Guided Tour of Microsoft Windows.” The tour introduces you to all the parts of Windows and gives you a brief overview of the main applications included with Windows.

Basic Elements of Windows

Windows provides everything you need to manage your applications and files easily and efficiently. The following illustration shows the graphical environment of Windows.

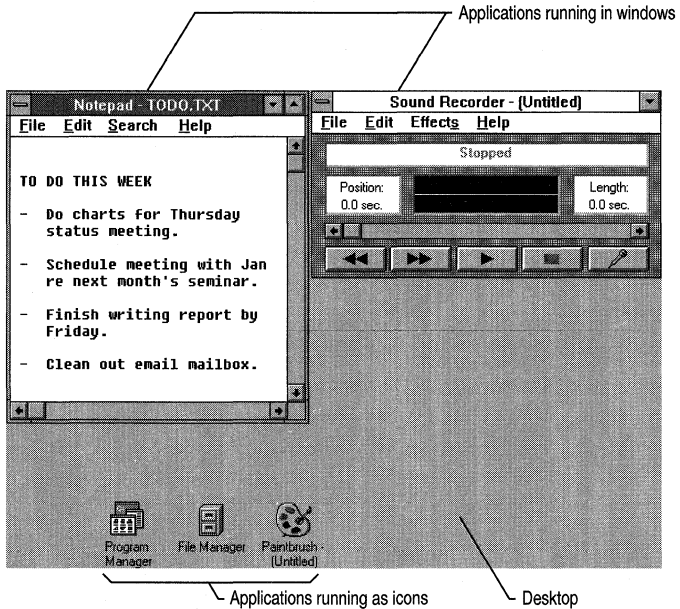


When working in Windows, your main work area is the *desktop*. You can move items around on the desktop, add new ones to it, and remove those you do not need.

The first time you start Windows, the Program Manager window appears on your screen. You can use Program Manager to organize your applications and start them.

After you start an application, it runs in an *application window* on the desktop. You can reduce any open application window to an *application icon*. An application icon is a small picture representing an application. By reducing application windows to icons, you can free space on your desktop without quitting the applications. For more information about icons, see "Types of Icons" later in this chapter.

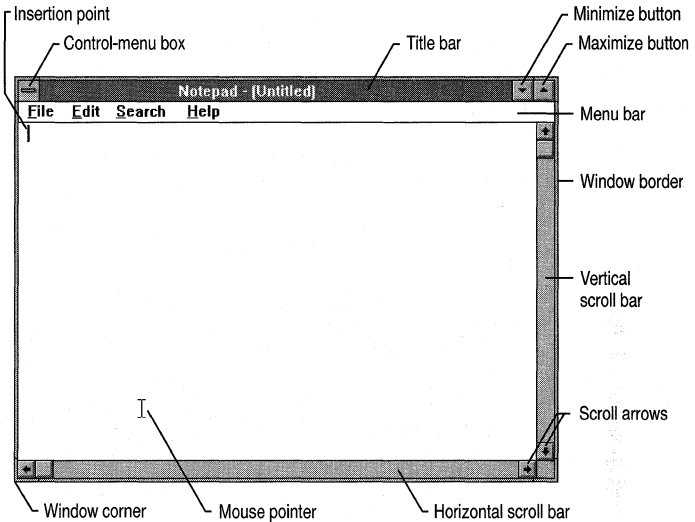
The following illustration shows applications running in windows and applications running as icons on the desktop.



For more information about how to start, run, switch between, and quit applications, see Chapter 5, “Application Basics.”

Parts of a Window

Most windows have certain elements in common, such as a title bar and a menu bar. Not all windows, however, have every element.



You'll learn more about how to use window elements throughout this chapter.

- The *Control-menu box* is in the upper-left corner of each window. Click the Control-menu box to open the *Control menu*. The Control menu is most useful if you use your keyboard (rather than a mouse) to move, size, and close a window.
- The *title bar* shows the name of the application, document, group, directory, or file. If more than one window is open, the title bar for the *active* window (the one in which you are working) has a color or intensity different from other title bars.

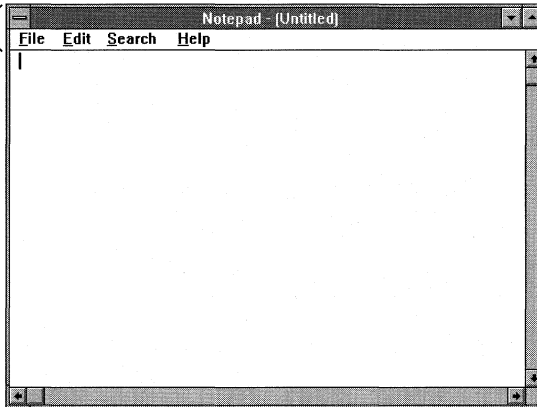
- The *menu bar* contains the available menus from which you can choose commands.
- The *scroll bars* enable you to move through a document or a list when the entire document or list does not fit in the window or the allotted space. Click the *scroll arrows* with the mouse to move through the document or list one line at a time.
- Clicking the *Maximize button* with the mouse enlarges the active window so that it fills the entire desktop; clicking the *Minimize button* reduces the window to an icon. You can also use the Maximize and Minimize commands on the Control menu.
- The *Restore button* replaces the *Maximize button* after you enlarge a window. Clicking the Restore button returns the window to its previous size. You can also use the Restore command on the Control menu.
- The *window border* is the outside edge of a window. You can change the window size by lengthening or shortening the border on each side of a window.
- Moving the *window corner* shortens or lengthens two adjoining sides of a window border at the same time.
- The *insertion point* shows where you are in a document. It marks the place where text and graphics appear when you begin typing or drawing. (The shape of the insertion point may vary among applications.)
- The *mouse pointer* appears if you have a mouse installed. When you move the mouse, the position of the pointer changes on the screen. (The shape of the mouse pointer may vary among applications and even among documents within the same application.)

Types of Windows

As you work with applications, two kinds of windows appear on your desktop: application windows and windows inside the application window.

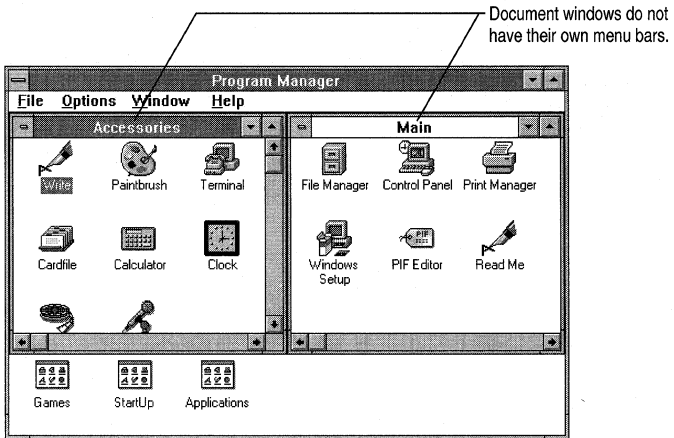
An *application window* contains a running application. The following is an example of an application window.

An application window has a title bar and menu bar.



Another window, sometimes called a *document window*, may appear inside an application window. This type of window may contain documents, data files, groups (in Program Manager), or directories (in File Manager). In certain applications, more than one of these windows can be open at a time. For example, with File Manager (one of the main applications included with Windows), you can view several directories at a time. Each directory appears inside its own window.

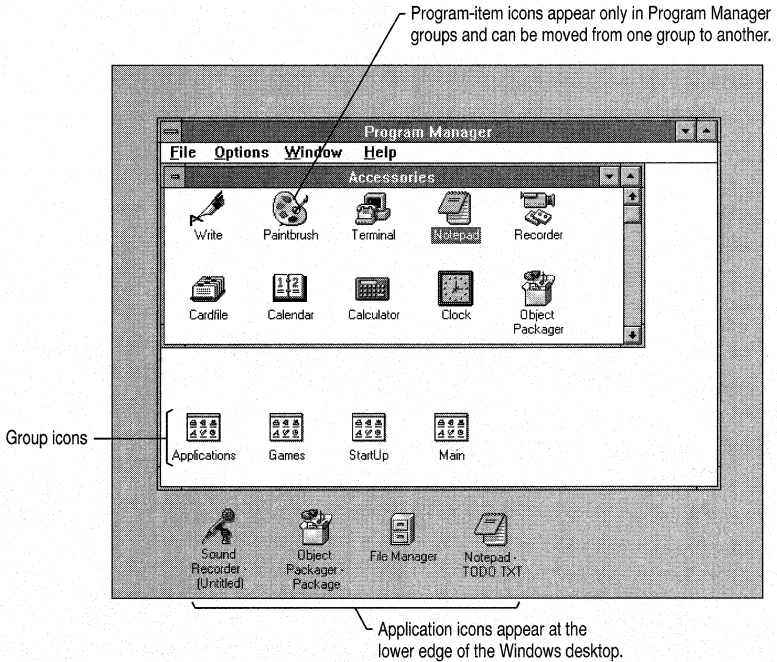
As the following illustration shows, document windows share the application-window menu bar but not the title bar. When a document window is open, commands that you choose from the application's menus affect the document window and the information contained in it.



If you use a mouse, you move and size application windows and document windows in the same way. If you use the keyboard, however, you use different keystrokes to manipulate each type of window. For more information, see "Working with a Window" later in this chapter.

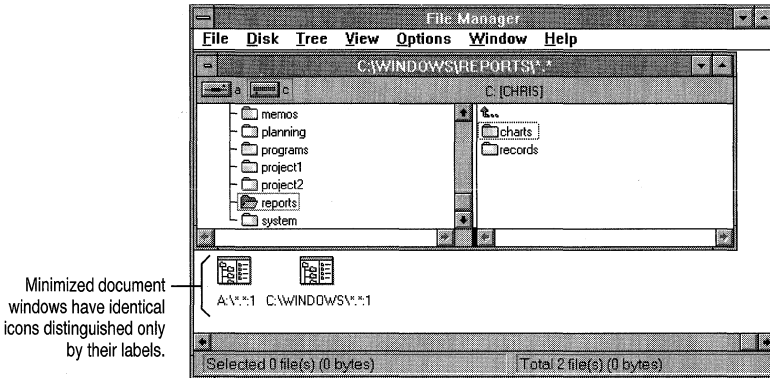
Types of Icons

Icons are small pictures that represent various types of applications and files.



The following table describes the three types of icons found on the desktop.

Icon type	Description
Program-item icon	Represents an application you can start from Windows. Most program-item icons look unique. However, icons for many MS-DOS-based applications are identical. A group might contain several MS-DOS-based applications. The icon label is the only way to distinguish which application the icon represents.
Application icon	Represents a program-item icon (an application) that was started and then reduced to an icon.
Group or document icon	Generally appears along the lower edge of the application window and represents a group or document window that was reduced to an icon. This icon can be moved anywhere within the application window.



Basic Mouse Techniques

The following table describes some of the terms referred to throughout this guide. Other terms are explained as they are introduced in the text.

Term	Meaning
Click	To quickly press and release the mouse button.
Double-click	To click the mouse button twice in rapid succession.
Drag	To press and hold down the mouse button while you move the mouse.
Point	To move the mouse until the mouse pointer on the screen points to the item of choice.

Note The mouse has more than one button. In Windows, use the left mouse button, which is the default. You can change the default by using Control Panel. For more information, see Help for Control Panel.

Basic Keyboard Techniques

Using a mouse is usually easier and faster than using the keyboard. Therefore, in most cases the procedures in this guide show you mouse techniques for completing tasks. If you prefer using the keyboard, see Appendix A, "Keyboard Shortcuts."

Choosing and Selecting

In Windows, the terms *choose* and *select* have different meanings. Selecting an item usually means marking it with the selection cursor, which can appear as a highlight, a dotted rectangle, or both. Selecting alone does not start an action.

You choose an item to carry out an action. For example, choosing an icon might start an application, open a window, or carry out a command. You choose an item from a menu and choose a command button in a dialog box. (Menus and dialog boxes are discussed later in this chapter.)

You select an item by clicking it once with the mouse or by using the TAB key or the arrow keys to move the cursor to the item. You choose an item by double-clicking it or by pressing a key (such as ENTER) after the item is selected.

You can use a combination of mouse and keyboard techniques. For example, you can click an item to select it and then press ENTER to choose it. When a procedure in this guide directs you to choose an item, generally you can use either a mouse or the keyboard, whichever method you prefer.

Selecting Items

While using Windows, you often need to select an item or multiple items from a list; for example, when using a dialog box.

- ▶ **To select a single item by using a mouse**
 1. If necessary, click the scroll arrows until the item you want appears.
 2. Click the item.

- ▶ **To select a single item by using the keyboard**
 1. If necessary, use the arrow keys until the item you want appears.
 2. Press ENTER.

Sometimes you may want to select multiple items that may or may not be in sequential order. In these cases, you can select or cancel items.

- ▶ **To select or cancel multiple sequential items by using a mouse**
 - To select items, click the first item you want to select, and then drag the cursor to the last item you want. To cancel the selection, click any item in the list.
Or click the first item you want to select, press and hold down SHIFT, and then click the last item you want. Both items and all items in between are selected. To cancel the selection, release SHIFT, and then click any item.

- ▶ **To select or cancel multiple sequential items by using the keyboard**
 1. To select items, use the arrow keys to highlight the first item you want.
 2. Press and hold down SHIFT, and press the arrow key to continue to select items. To cancel the selection, press the appropriate arrow key.

- ▶ **To select or cancel multiple nonsequential items**
 - To select, press and hold down CTRL, and then click each item you want. To cancel, press and hold down CTRL, and then click the item to cancel the selection.

For more information about using the keyboard to select items, see “Selecting Items” in Appendix A, “Keyboard Shortcuts.”

Using a Menu

Commands are listed on *menus*. Most applications have their own menus, which are listed on the menu bar along the top of the application window.

Note Some applications, such as Clock, can hide their menu bar. To display a hidden menu, double-click anywhere in the application window.

The following are typical Windows menus.

File	
New...	
Open	Enter
Move...	F7
Copy...	F8
Delete	Del
Properties...	Alt+Enter
Run...	
Exit Windows...	

Edit	
Undo	Ctrl+Z
Cut	Ctrl+X
Copy	Ctrl+C
Paste	Ctrl+V
Delete	Del
Select All	
Time/Date	F5
Word Wrap	

Choosing Commands from Menus

To open a menu, you select it. When a menu is open, you can choose an item from it. Menu items are most often commands. However, they can also be characteristics (such as bold or centered) that you assign to graphics or text, a list of open windows or files, or the names of other menus (*cascading menus*) that list additional commands.

► **To open a menu and choose an item**

1. Move the mouse pointer so that it points to the name of the menu on the menu bar, and then click the left mouse button.
2. Click the menu item you want. Or drag the selection cursor down the menu until the menu item is highlighted, and then release the mouse button.

Tip To move directly to a command on a menu, type the letter that is underlined in the item name.

The following menu conventions are used in Windows.

Menu convention	Meaning
Dimmed (or not visible) command	You cannot use the command with your application at the current time. (For example, you may need to select another item before you can use this command.)
An ellipsis (...) following a command	A dialog box appears when you choose the command. The dialog box contains options you need to select before the command can be carried out.
A check mark (✓) to the left of a command	The command is in effect. When you remove the check mark (by choosing the command again), the command is no longer in effect.
A key combination to the right of a command	The key combination is a <i>shortcut</i> for choosing the command. You can press the keys listed to choose the command without first opening the menu.
A triangle (▶) to the right of a command	When you choose this command, a cascading menu appears.

► **To close a menu without choosing an item**

- Click the menu name, or click anywhere outside the menu.

Using the Control Menu

Application windows and their icons, document windows and their icons, and some dialog boxes have a Control menu.

You open the Control menu for windows and dialog boxes by selecting the Control-menu box in the upper-left corner of the window or dialog box. You open the Control menu for an icon by selecting the icon.

The commands on the Control menu and the way you open this menu vary. The following section describes how to use the Control menu in different environments.

Opening the Control Menu in a Windows Application

How you open the Control menu depends on whether you are working with an application window, a document window, a dialog box, or an icon.

Note In an application window that contains document windows, there may be more than one Control-menu box. The Control-menu box to the left of the application title bar controls the application. The others control the document windows inside the application window.

► To open the Control menu

- Click the Control-menu box in the upper-left corner of the dialog box, application window, or document window. Or, if the application or document window has been reduced to an icon, click the icon.

Do not double-click; if you do, you close the window or application or restore the icon to a window.

You can also use the keyboard to open the Control menu. Use one of the following key combinations after the window or icon is selected.

To open the Control menu	Press
In an application window	ALT+SPACEBAR
In a document window	ALT+HYPHEN (-)
In a dialog box	ALT+SPACEBAR

Tip When you are using the keyboard, you must first cycle through the windows and icons to select the one whose Control menu you want to open. Press ALT+ESC (to cycle through application windows and icons) or CTRL+TAB (to cycle through document windows and icons).

Opening the Control Menu in an MS-DOS Application

An MS-DOS-based application is designed to run with Microsoft MS-DOS rather than with Windows. You can use most MS-DOS-based applications with Windows.

Windows can run in one of two modes: standard or 386 enhanced. An MS-DOS-based application running in standard mode does not have an application window; it occupies the entire screen. Before you can open its

Control menu, you must switch back to Windows so that the application is reduced to an icon.

To find out which mode Windows is running in, choose the About command on the Help menu in Program Manager.

► **To open the Control menu for an MS-DOS–based application running in a full screen**

1. Press ALT+ESC to switch from the application to Windows.
The application is reduced to an icon at the bottom of the screen.
2. Click the icon. Or press ALT+ESC to select the icon you want, and then press ALT+SPACEBAR to open the Control menu.

386

► **To open the Control menu for an MS-DOS–based application running in a window in 386 enhanced mode**

- Click the Control-menu box in the upper-left corner of the application window. Or, if the application window has been reduced to an icon, click the icon.
Do not double-click; if you do, you close the window or restore the icon to a window.

Control-Menu Commands

The following table describes the commands on the Control menu. Some applications do not have all these commands.

Use	To
Restore	Restore the window to its former size after you have enlarged (maximized) it or reduced (minimized) it to an icon.
Move	Move the window to another position by using the keyboard.
Size	Change the size of the window by using the keyboard.
Minimize	Reduce the window to an icon.
Maximize	Enlarge the window to its maximum size.
Close	Close the window or dialog box. (From an application window, you can use this command to quit the application.)
Switch To	Open Task List, which enables you to switch between running applications and to rearrange windows and icons on your desktop.
Next	Switch between open document windows and icons (available for document windows only).
Edit	Display a cascading menu with additional commands (available for MS-DOS–based applications running in 386 enhanced mode only).

Use	To
Settings	Display a dialog box that requests information about multitasking options (available for MS-DOS-based applications running in 386 enhanced mode only).
Fonts	Display a dialog box that you can use to specify font information (available for MS-DOS-based applications running in 386 enhanced mode only).
Always On Top	Ensure that a particular window is not covered by any other window.

Choosing the Edit command opens a menu with four additional commands, as follows.

Use	To
Mark	Select text and move it onto the Clipboard by using the keyboard.
Copy	Copy the selected text onto the Clipboard.
Paste	Copy text from the Clipboard to the active window.
Scroll	View information not currently visible in the window.

Working with a Window

When you work with applications and documents, you often have a number of windows open. This section explains how to move and resize windows, scroll through their contents, and arrange them on the desktop.

Moving a Window

You can move any window to a different location on your desktop.

► **To move a window**

1. Drag the title bar of the window to the new location.
As you move the mouse pointer, an outline of the window moves with it.
2. Release the mouse button.

Tip To cancel the move, press ESC before you release the mouse button.

Changing the Size of a Window

You can change the size and shape of a window so you can view the contents of two or more windows simultaneously.

Note Some application windows cannot be resized.

► **To change the size of a window**

1. Select the window you want to resize.
2. Point to a border or corner of the window.
The pointer changes to a two-headed arrow.
3. Drag the corner or border until the window is the size you want.
If you drag a corner, the two sides that form the corner are sized at the same time.
4. Release the mouse button.

Tip To cancel the resizing, press ESC before you release the mouse button.

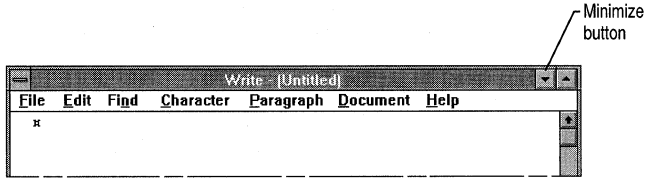
Reducing a Window to an Icon

You may want to reduce an application window to an icon if you want the application available for later use. When reduced to icons, Windows-based applications continue to run but their windows do not take up space on the desktop. You may also be able to reduce a document window to an icon. These icons appear in the application window, not at the bottom of the desktop.

After a window is reduced to an icon, you can select and move the icon in the same way you select and move a window.

► **To reduce a window to an icon**

1. Select the window you want to reduce.
2. Click the Minimize button in the upper-right corner of the window.



Tip When a document window is maximized, the Minimize and Maximize buttons are replaced by the Restore button. If you want to minimize the document window, you can either choose Minimize from the window's Control menu, or you can first use the Restore button to restore the window and then click the Minimize button.

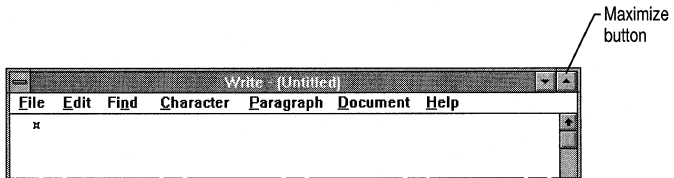
Enlarging a Window

In most cases, you can enlarge an application window to fill a larger portion of the desktop or even the entire desktop. A document window can be enlarged to fill the application window.

► **To enlarge a window to its maximum size**

- Click the Maximize button in the upper-right corner of the window.

The Maximize button is replaced by the Restore button.



Tip You can also maximize a window by double-clicking its title bar. To restore an application window to its previous size, double-click the title bar again. To restore a document window, click the Restore button in the upper-right corner of the window.

A maximized document window shares the application window's title bar. The Minimize and Maximize buttons affect the application window, not any windows inside it. Only the Restore button affects the document window alone.

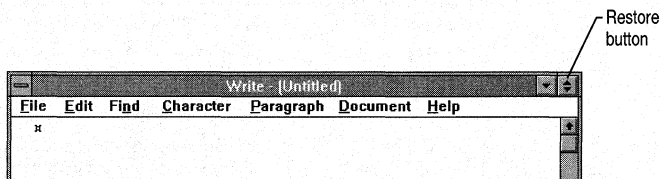
Tip When two or more windows are open inside an application window and you enlarge one of them, all the others are covered up by the enlarged window. If you want the other windows displayed, choose the Restore button to return the enlarged window to its previous size, or choose Minimize from the document window's Control menu to reduce the window to an icon.

Restoring an Icon or Window

You can restore an icon or window to its original size.

- ▶ **To restore an icon to a window**
 - Double-click the icon.

- ▶ **To restore an enlarged window to its previous size**
 - Click the Restore button in the upper-right corner of the window.



Moving an Icon

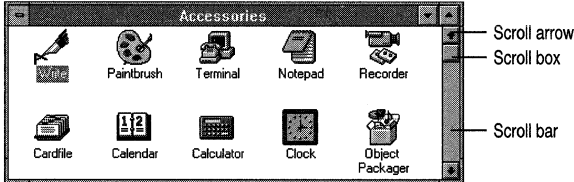
You can move an application icon anywhere on your desktop except into another application window. (An application icon may appear to be in another application window, but if you close the window, the icon remains on the desktop.) You can move a document icon to a different location in its application window but not outside the application window.

- ▶ **To move an icon**
 1. Drag the icon to a new location. The mouse pointer changes to an outline of the icon, which moves as you move the mouse.
 2. Release the mouse button.

Tip To cancel the move, press ESC before you release the mouse button.

Using Scroll Bars

Some windows and dialog boxes have scroll bars you can use to view information that does not fit inside the window. When you can view all the contents of a window or dialog box without scrolling, scroll bars may be absent or dimmed to indicate they cannot be used.



► **To scroll through information displayed in a window or dialog box**

- Drag the scroll box to scroll through all the information in a list or document. You can also use the following techniques to scroll.

To scroll	Do this
One line up or down	Click the up or down scroll arrow.
One screen	Click the scroll bar above or below the scroll box on vertical scroll bars to scroll vertically. Click to the left or right of the scroll box on the horizontal scroll bar to scroll horizontally.
Continuously	Point to one of the scroll arrows, and press and hold down the mouse button until the information comes into view.
To any position	Drag the scroll box in the scroll bar to the position you want. The section of the document or list that moves into view depends on where you position the scroll box. For example, if you position the scroll box halfway down the vertical scroll bar, the text halfway through the document or list appears.

For information about using the keyboard to scroll, see Appendix A, “Keyboard Shortcuts.”

Closing a Window

One way to quit an application is to close the application window. Similarly, you can close a document by closing the document window. If you made changes to your document since you last saved it, a message prompts you to save the document before closing the window.

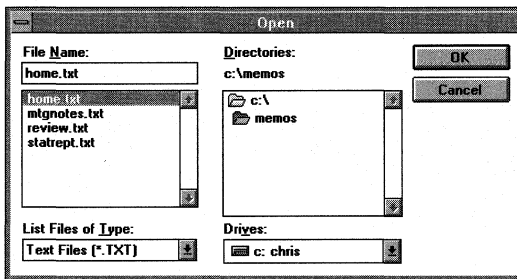
► **To close a window, use one of the following methods**

- From the File menu, choose Exit.
- From the Control menu, choose Close.
- Double-click the Control-menu box.
- Press ALT+F4.

Using a Dialog Box

A *dialog box* appears when you need to supply additional information to complete a task.

An ellipsis (...) after a menu command indicates that a dialog box will appear when you choose that command. For example, if you choose the Open command on the File menu in Notepad, the Open dialog box appears. In this dialog box, you specify the name of the file you want to open.



Most dialog boxes contain options you can select. After you specify options, you can choose a command button to carry out the command. Some dialog boxes may display information, warnings, or messages indicating why a requested task cannot be accomplished.

If a dialog box has a title bar, you can move the dialog box to another location on your desktop. Moving a dialog box is just like moving a window—you drag the title bar or use the Move command on the Control menu. For more information, see “Moving a Window” earlier in this chapter.

Moving Within a Dialog Box

Often you need to move within a dialog box to select one or more options. The currently selected option is marked by the selection cursor, which appears as a dotted rectangle, a highlight, or both.

- ▶ **To move within a dialog box**
 - Click the option or area you want to move to. Or press TAB to move clockwise or SHIFT+TAB to move counterclockwise through the options or areas.

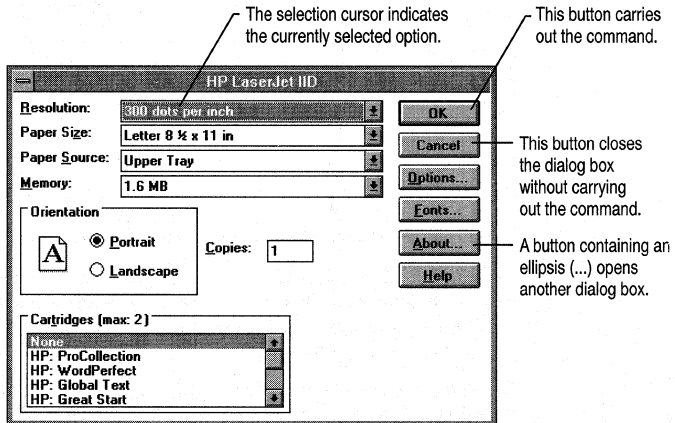
Tip If the option, box, or button has an underlined letter in its name, you can choose that item by pressing and holding down ALT while typing the underlined letter.

Types of Options

Several types of dialog box options are described in the following sections.

Command Buttons

You choose a *command button* to initiate an action, such as carrying out or canceling a command. The OK, Cancel, and Help buttons are common command buttons. They are often located along the bottom or on the right side of the dialog box.



Some dialog boxes contain a command button marked with greater-than signs (>>). This button expands the active dialog box.

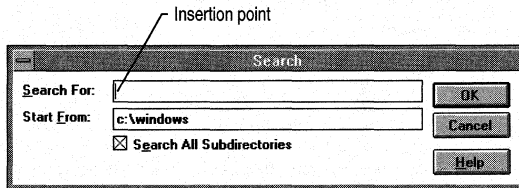
Unavailable buttons appear dimmed. The currently selected button has a border that is darker than that of other buttons. You can choose the selected button simply by pressing ENTER.

► **To choose a command button**

- Click the command button. Or press TAB until the button you want is selected, and then press ENTER.

Text Boxes

You type information into a *text box*. When you move to an empty text box, an *insertion point* (a flashing vertical bar) appears. The text you type starts at the insertion point.



If the box you move to contains text, and the text is highlighted, any text you type will replace it. You can also delete the existing text by pressing DEL or BACKSPACE. For information about editing text, see “Working with Text” in Chapter 5, “Application Basics.”

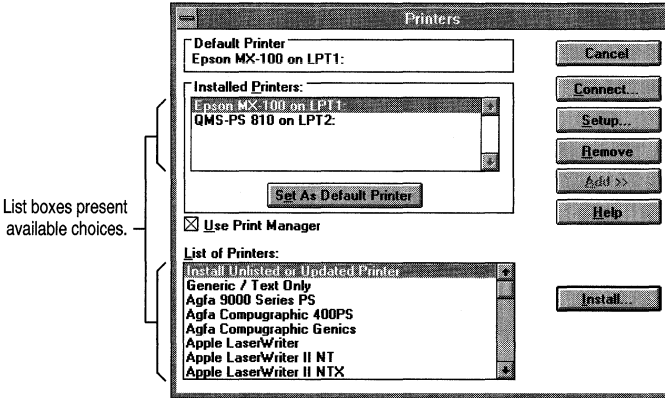
► **To select text in a text box**

- Drag the pointer across the text, or double-click a word to select one word at a time. Or press and hold down ALT while pressing an arrow key.

For more information about selection methods, see “Selecting Text” in Chapter 5, “Application Basics.”

List Boxes

A *list box* displays a list of choices. If there are more choices than can fit in the box, scroll bars are provided so you can move quickly through the list. For information about scrolling, see “Using Scroll Bars” earlier in this chapter.

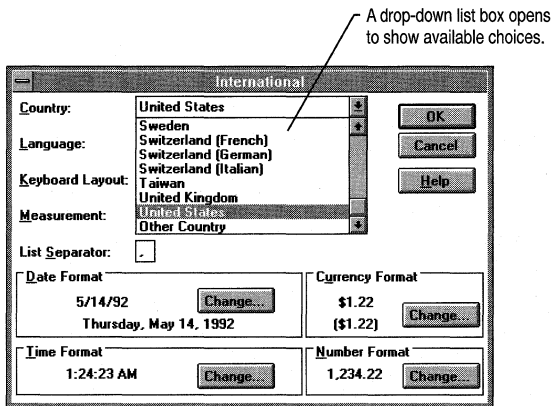


Usually, you can select only one item in a list box. In some cases, you can select more than one item, as in the Disconnect Drive dialog box in File Manager.

For more information about selecting items in a list box, see “Selecting Items” earlier in this chapter.

Drop-Down List Boxes

A *drop-down list box* appears initially as a rectangular box containing the current selection. When you select the down arrow in the square box at the right, a list of available choices appears. If there are more items than can fit in the box, scroll bars are provided.

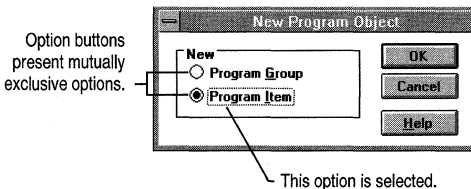


- ▶ **To open a drop-down list box and select an item by using a mouse**
 1. Click the arrow at the right of the box to open the box.
 2. Click the up or down scroll arrow. Or drag the scroll box until the item you want to select is displayed.
 3. Click the item.

- ▶ **To select an item from a drop-down list by using the keyboard**
 - Press the UP ARROW or DOWN ARROW key to move through the available options until you reach the one you want.

Option Buttons

Option buttons represent a group of mutually exclusive options. You can select only one option at a time. If you already have one option selected, your current selection replaces it. The selected option button contains a black dot. Names of unavailable options appear dimmed.



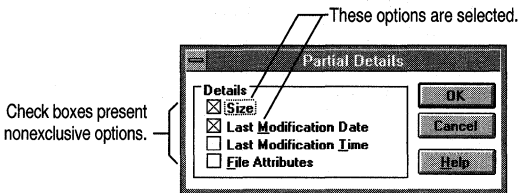
► **To select an option button**

- Click the option button, or press the SPACEBAR.

Tip If the option name has an underlined letter, you can select the option button by pressing and holding down ALT while typing the underlined letter.

Check Boxes

A *check box* presents nonexclusive options; you can select as many check-box options as needed. When a check box is selected, it contains an X. Names of unavailable options appear dimmed.



► **To select or clear a check box**

- Click the check box, or press the SPACEBAR.

Tip If the option name has an underlined letter, you can select or clear the check box by pressing and holding down ALT while typing the underlined letter.

Closing a Dialog Box

When you choose a command button, the dialog box closes and the command is carried out. You can also close the dialog box to cancel a command.

► **To close a dialog box without carrying out a command**

- Choose the Cancel button, double-click the Control-menu box, or press ESC.

Note You can also choose the Close command on the Control menu (or press ALT+F4) to close a dialog box. If a dialog box does not have a Control menu, choose the appropriate button.

CHAPTER 5

Application Basics

A major advantage of using Windows is that you can run two or more applications at the same time. For example, you can have a spreadsheet calculating complex formulas while you are using a word-processing application to prepare an annual report. At the same time, your computer can be receiving the latest information about industry sales trends that you can use in the introduction of your report.

Types of Applications

Various types of applications run with Windows. Some are specifically designed to run with Windows. Others are designed to run with Microsoft MS-DOS rather than Windows. The following table lists the types of applications you can run.

Type of application	Description
Windows-based	Windows-based applications require Windows version 3.0 or later in order to run. These programs are generally highly graphical and designed to share your computer's memory among applications as efficiently as possible.
Older Windows-based	Some Windows-based applications were designed for previous versions of Windows and do not work correctly with Windows version 3.0 and later. If you have an older Windows-based application, it is best to obtain an updated version of it.
MS-DOS-based	MS-DOS-based applications are designed to run with the MS-DOS operating system but not specifically with Windows. They do not take advantage of the Windows graphical interface, they may not have menus or dialog boxes, and they may not make use of the mouse. However, you can still use most of these applications with Windows. For more information, see Chapter 11, "MS-DOS Applications."

Type of application	Description
Memory-resident program	Memory-resident programs are MS-DOS-based applications; however, they run differently than other applications. When started from MS-DOS, a memory-resident program is loaded into memory and is available even when another application is running. A common type of memory-resident program is a <i>pop-up program</i> , which is loaded into memory but is not visible until you type a certain key combination. Memory-resident programs are sometimes referred to as <i>terminate-and-stay-resident programs</i> , or <i>TSRs</i> . For more information, see Chapter 11, "MS-DOS Applications."

Organizing Your Applications into Groups

Windows has several predefined groups of applications, described in the following table. You can control how the groups are arranged on your desktop, and you can define and add new groups.

Group	Contains
Main	Windows system applications: File Manager, Control Panel, Print Manager, Clipboard Viewer, MS-DOS Prompt, Windows Setup, and PIF Editor. This group also contains an item named Read Me that includes information you should have before you start working with Windows.
Applications	Applications found on your hard disk during Setup. If, during Setup, you chose the Custom Setup option and chose not to have Windows set up applications from your hard disk, your Program Manager window will not contain an Applications group.
Accessories	Windows-based applications for word processing, drawing, and communications.
Games	Games included with Windows. You can use these games to practice basic Windows skills.
StartUp	Applications that start when you start Windows. You can add any application to this group. The group is empty until you add applications to it.

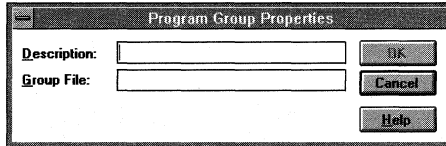
Creating and Deleting a Group

You can add any number of groups to Program Manager to organize your applications and documents. If you no longer need a group, you can delete it. You do not have to delete the contents of the group before you delete it.

► **To create a new group**

1. From the File menu in Program Manager, choose New.
2. Select the Program Group option button, and then choose the OK button.
3. In the Program Group Properties dialog box, type a description for the group you want to create, and then choose the OK button.

The Group File box contains information about the contents of the group. You can leave this box blank, because Program Manager automatically assigns a name to this file.



After creating a group, you can add program items (icons that represent applications) to it.

► **To delete a group**

1. Select the group icon for the group you want to delete.
2. From the File menu, choose Delete. Or press DEL.

Creating a Program Item

When you create a program item for an application, you specify the program item's properties, such as a description (label) for the item, a working directory where any files the application creates are stored, and the icon that represents the application. You can change these properties at any time. For information about changing properties, see Help for Program Manager.

A group can contain a maximum of 40 program items.

You can create a program item by using any of the following methods:

- Choose the New command from the File menu in Program Manager to create a program item for an application or document.
- Drag files from File Manager to a Program Manager group.
- Run Windows Setup to create program items for one or more applications.

The following sections describe these methods in detail.

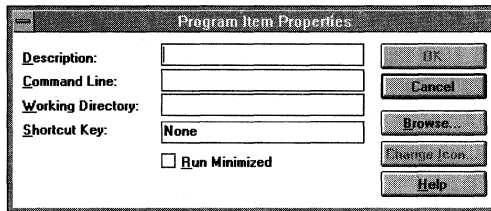
Using the New Command to Create a Program Item

You can create a program item for an application or document. When you choose a program item for a document, the application opens, displaying the document.

► **To create a program item for an application**

1. Open the group that you want to add an item to, and then choose New from the File menu in Program Manager.
2. Select the Program Item option button, and then choose the OK button.

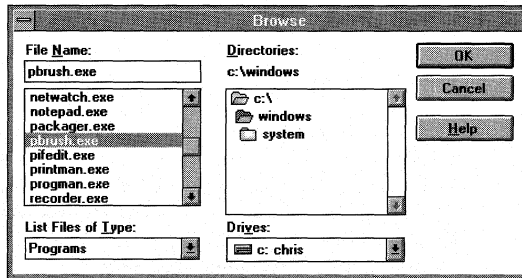
Tip You can quickly open the Program Item Properties dialog box by pressing and holding down ALT while double-clicking in a blank area of the group window.



3. In the Program Item Properties dialog box, type a description for the application. The description becomes the label that appears under the icon in the group window. If you leave this box blank, Program Manager labels the icon for you.
4. In the Command Line box, type the name of the program file, including the path (if there is one) and extension.

For example, to add Microsoft Excel, located in a directory named C:\EXCEL, type `c:\excel\excel.exe`.

If you don't know the name of the program file, choose the Browse button in the Program Item Properties dialog box to display a list of files and directories. Select the appropriate filename from the list, and then choose the OK button. (You can use the directory listing to change to a different directory.)



5. In the Working Directory box, type the name of the directory where the program files for this application are located and where new files will be stored.
6. To reserve a shortcut key for use with the application, type the key combination in the Shortcut Key box. You use a shortcut key to switch to the application when it is running or to start an application when the Program Manager window is active.

Valid shortcut-key sequences are:

- CTRL+ALT+*character*
- CTRL+SHIFT+*character*
- SHIFT+ALT+*character*
- CTRL+SHIFT+ALT+*character*

Character can be any letter, number, or special character. When you type only a character in the Shortcut Key box, Program Manager adds CTRL+ALT in front of it. To specify a different control-key sequence, you must type the sequence.

Note You can reserve shortcut keys for an MS-DOS–based application by using Program Manager or PIF Editor. Shortcut-key settings made in Program Manager override settings made in PIF Editor.

7. If you want this application to be reduced to an icon when it starts, select the Run Minimized check box.
8. Choose the Change Icon button to see the default icon for this program item. Scroll through the list, select the icon you want to use, and then choose the OK button.
9. Choose the OK button in the Program Item Properties dialog box. The new program item appears in the group.

► **To create a program item for a document**

1. Follow the first four steps in the procedure describing how to create a program item for an application, in the preceding section.
2. After the program filename in the Command Line box, press the SPACEBAR, and type the filename of the document. Include the path required to locate the document.

For example, to specify a spreadsheet named 93BUDGET.XLS, located in the C:\ADMIN\FY93 directory, as the document to be opened when you start Microsoft Excel, you would type the following:

```
c:\excel\excel.exe c:\admin\fy93\93budget.xls
```

Note If the document is in the same directory as the application, you do not have to repeat the path when you type the filename of the document. If you have specified a working directory that is different from the application directory, you must specify a path with the document filename.

3. Complete the other areas in the dialog box, and then choose the OK button.

Dragging Files from File Manager to Create a Program Item

You can also use File Manager to create program items by moving applications and associated documents from File Manager directories to Program Manager group windows. You can do this even if a group window is minimized. The following procedure requires a mouse.

► **To create a program item by using File Manager**

1. Locate the Program Manager group where you want to create a new program item. The destination group can be either a window or an icon.
2. Open File Manager and select the program or document file that you want to add as a program item. (You can also select multiple items and add them to a group at the same time.)
3. If necessary, reposition the File Manager window so that you can see both File Manager and the Program Manager group icon or window where you want to place the new program item.

Tip If no other application windows are open except for File Manager and Program Manager, you can press CTRL+ESC to open Task List, and then choose the Tile button to arrange the File Manager and Program Manager windows.

4. Drag the file icon from File Manager to Program Manager, and drop it in the group window or onto the group icon.

As you drag the file icon, the mouse pointer turns into a replica of a file icon. If you select multiple items, you can drag them all at the same time.

Running Setup to Create Program Items

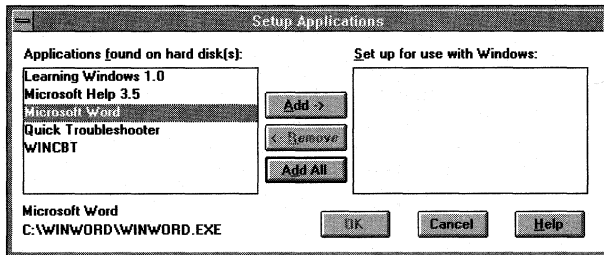
By using the Windows Setup icon, you can create a program item for one or more applications already on your hard disk. Instead of adding each application to a group separately, you can have Windows Setup search your computer's drive(s) and set up multiple applications at the same time. Windows Setup creates an Applications group, and each application found appears as an icon in that group.

Caution Before running a setup program for any other Microsoft application that is not yet on your hard disk, you must quit Windows Setup. Otherwise, the application's setup program may fail.

Note If Setup finds an MS-DOS-based application on your hard disk, it uses a program information file (PIF) to set up the application. Setup will set up only those MS-DOS-based applications that have a PIF. If Setup detects a naming conflict or multiple PIFs for one application, it displays a dialog box prompting you to specify the name of the application or PIF you want to use. For more information, see Chapter 11, "MS-DOS Applications."

► **To have Setup search for and set up applications**

1. In the Main group, choose the Windows Setup icon.
2. From the Options menu, choose Set Up Applications.
3. Select the Search For Applications option button, and then choose the OK button. Setup displays a dialog box where you specify that Setup search for applications on one or more specific drives, and/or the current path.
4. Click the search options you want, and then choose the Search Now button. When the search is completed, Setup displays a list of the applications found.



In the Applications Found On Hard Disk(s) box, Setup lists the names of all the applications it found. (If you cancel the search, Setup lists the names of applications found before you canceled.)

5. Click each application you want. (You can cancel the selection by clicking it again.)
6. After you select all the applications you want, choose the Add button to move them to the Set Up For Use With Windows box. To add all the listed applications, choose the Add All button.
To delete an application after you add it, select the application name, and then choose the Remove button.
7. After you have selected the applications you want to set up, choose the OK button.

Changing a Program-Item Icon

If you don't like the icon assigned to a program item, you can choose one of the many icons provided with Program Manager.

► To change the program-item icon

1. Select the program-item icon that you want to change.
2. Choose Properties from the File menu, and then choose Change Icon in the Program Item Properties dialog box.
3. In the File Name box, type the path for either the PROGMAN.EXE file or the MORICONS.DLL file (in your Windows directory).
You can now select from these icons by scrolling through the Current Icon box.
4. After you select the new icon, choose the OK button.
5. Choose the OK button in the Program Item Properties dialog box. The icon you selected appears.

Starting an Application

With Windows, you can start an application in a number of ways:

- Choose a program-item icon from a group in Program Manager.
- Choose a program file or a program information file (PIF) from a directory window in File Manager. (For information about starting an application from its PIF, see Help for PIF Editor.)
- Choose the Run command from the File menu in Program Manager or File Manager.
- Use MS-DOS Prompt to start MS-DOS-based applications.

Note In the following procedures, remember that when using a mouse, you click to choose menu commands and command buttons, and you double-click to choose icons.

Starting an Application from Program Manager

The easiest way to start an application in a group is to choose the program-item icon for the application from the group window. If a document is associated with this program-item icon, the application opens, displaying the document.

► **To start an application from a group**

1. If necessary, double-click the group icon to open the group window that contains the application you want to run.
2. Double-click the icon for the application.

Tip You can choose the Minimize On Use command from the Options menu in Program Manager to reduce Program Manager to an icon whenever you start an application.

Starting an Application When You Start Windows

When you install Windows by using the Setup program, Windows creates a StartUp group. Each application in this group starts when you start Windows.

For example, if you want File Manager to start whenever you start Windows, copy the File Manager icon from the Main group to the StartUp group. (For more information, see Chapter 4, “Windows Basics.”)

You can also have Windows automatically reduce an application to an icon in the StartUp group. To do this, select the Run Minimized check box when you create the program item, or choose the Properties command on the File menu.

Returning to Program Manager from an Application

When you are working with an application or document and you want to start a different application, you can do so by returning to Program Manager.

► **To return to Program Manager**

- Click the Program Manager window. Or double-click anywhere on the Windows desktop or press CTRL+ESC to display Task List, and then choose Program Manager from the list of running applications.

Tip Press and hold down ALT, and then press TAB repeatedly. As you continue to press TAB, the title of each running application is displayed. When "Program Manager" appears in the center of your screen, release ALT. The Program Manager window appears in the foreground.

Starting an Application by Using File Manager

You can start an application from File Manager by choosing the application program file from a directory window. A program file has a .COM, .EXE, .PIF, or .BAT filename extension. If you start an application that can run in a window, the window appears in front of the File Manager window. If the application is a full-screen application, such as MS-DOS Prompt, it replaces the Windows desktop on your screen.

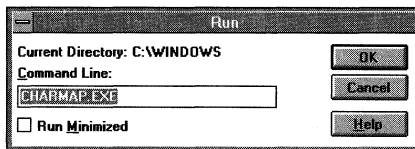
- ▶ **To start an application by using File Manager**
 1. In the Main group, double-click the File Manager icon.
 2. Click the drive icon for the drive you want.
 3. Click the directory icon for the directory you want.
 4. Double-click the name of the application's program file.

Tip You can choose the Minimize On Use command from the Options menu in File Manager to reduce File Manager to an icon whenever you start an application.

Starting an Application by Using the Run Command

You can use the Run command to start an application that you run only occasionally or have not yet added to a group. You can also specify that a particular document open when you start the application.

- ▶ **To start an application by using the Run command**
 1. From the File menu in Program Manager or File Manager, choose Run. The Run dialog box appears.



2. In the Command Line box, type the path and the name of the program file, including the extension, if there is one. (In File Manager, you do not need to type the path if the program file is in the current directory. In Program Manager, you can choose the Browse button to display a list of program files to select from.)

For example, if you want to start Aldus PageMaker and it is in the directory C:\PAGEMKR, you would type the following in the Command Line box:

c:\pagemkr\pm.exe

In most cases, you can open a document at the same time you start an application by typing a space and the document filename (including the path where the document is located) after the program filename.

For example, to open a document named NEWSLTR.PM3 in the AUGUST subdirectory of C:\PAGEMKR, you would type the following:

c:\pagemkr\pm.exe c:\pagemkr\august\newsltr.pm3

3. If you want the application to be reduced to an icon as soon as it starts, select the Run Minimized check box.
4. Choose the OK button or press ENTER.

Starting an Application by Using the MS-DOS Command Prompt

Generally, you can set up your MS-DOS-based applications to run from Program Manager. (For more information, see Chapter 11, “MS-DOS Applications.”) For MS-DOS-based applications that aren’t set up, such as memory-resident programs, you can start them by using MS-DOS commands.

MS-DOS Prompt appears as a program item in the Main group in Program Manager. You can use it to gain access to the MS-DOS command prompt without leaving Windows.

► To start an application by using MS-DOS Prompt

1. In Program Manager, choose the Main group icon.
2. In the Main group, choose the MS-DOS Prompt icon.
3. When the command prompt appears, type the necessary MS-DOS commands to start your MS-DOS-based application.

386

► To run MS-DOS Prompt in a window (in 386 enhanced mode only)

- After MS-DOS Prompt is running (follow steps 1 and 2 from the previous procedure), press ALT+ENTER. MS-DOS Prompt appears in a window so you can use the commands on the Control menu.
- To return to a full screen, press ALT+ENTER again.

Tip If you want MS-DOS Prompt to always start in a window, you can change the DOSPRMPT.PIF file located in the Windows directory. Using PIF Editor, open the file and select the Windowed option under Display Usage. Then save the file. Running MS-DOS Prompt in a window uses more memory.

► **To quit MS-DOS Prompt**

1. At the command prompt, type the following:

exit

2. Press ENTER.

You can also leave MS-DOS running and switch to Windows to work with applications. For more information, see “Switching Between Applications and Documents” later in this chapter.

Caution Some MS-DOS commands do not work properly when Windows is running. For example, when you use the **chkdsk** command with the /f option, **chkdsk** tries to modify part of the operating system that cannot be modified while Windows is running. You should also avoid using the **undelete** command; the **chcp (change codepage)** command; and disk-compaction or optimization programs, such as the Norton SD.EXE program, when Windows is running. If you need to run such programs or such commands, quit Windows first.

Running Two or More Applications

With Windows, you can start an application and then keep it running while you start one or more additional applications.

When applications run at the same time, they share computer resources. The way they share resources depends on the type of computer you have, the type and amount of available memory, whether the applications are Windows-based or MS-DOS-based, and which mode Windows is running in.

386

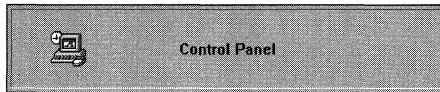
Note When Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode rather than in standard mode, more applications can run simultaneously. To find out which mode Windows is running in, choose the About command from the Help menu in Program Manager.

Switching Between Applications and Documents

When you have more than one application window open at once, the window you are currently working with is the *active window*. The active window always appears in the foreground, so it might overlap or completely obscure other windows. To work with another application, you must select its window to make it active.

► **To switch to an application, use one of the following methods**

- If the application is visible, click anywhere in the application window. If the application is running as an icon, double-click the icon.
- To return to the application you last used, press ALT+TAB.
- To switch quickly to another application, press and hold down ALT, and then press TAB repeatedly. As you continue to press TAB, the title of each running application appears.



When the title of the application you want appears, release ALT. The application then appears in the foreground.

- Press ALT+ESC repeatedly to cycle through open application windows and application icons until you reach the application you want.
- Display Task List, and use it to switch to the application you want. For more information, see the following section, “Using Task List to Switch Between Applications.”

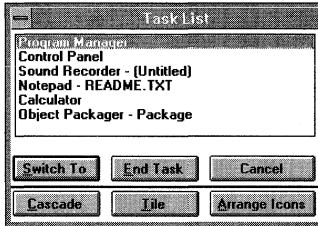
Tip If you use an application frequently, you may want to create a shortcut key to use when switching to it. You can define a shortcut key in the Program Item Properties dialog box in Program Manager. For more information, see “Using the New Command to Create a Program Item” earlier in this chapter.

Using Task List to Switch Between Applications

Task List is a window that displays a list of all the applications you are currently running. You can use Task List to switch to another application.

► **To switch to an application by using Task List**

1. Double-click anywhere on the desktop (that is, not inside an open window) to display Task List, or choose Switch To from the Control menu in Program Manager, or press CTRL+ESC.



2. In Task List, double-click the name of the application to switch to. Or select the name of the application you want, and then choose the Switch To button.

► **To close Task List**

- Press ESC, or choose the Cancel button.

For more information about displaying and using Task List, see “Arranging Application Windows and Icons” later in this chapter.

Switching Between Documents

With some applications, you can open more than one document at a time, each in its own window. If you have more than one document window open, you can easily switch between them.

For example, you can switch between directory windows in File Manager.

► **To switch to another document window in an application**

- Click anywhere in the document window you want to switch to. Or open the application's Window menu, and then choose the document you want.

Tip You can also press CTRL+F6 or CTRL+TAB repeatedly until the document window you want is selected. (This is a shortcut for using the Next command on the Control menu.)

Arranging Application Windows and Icons

You can use the Cascade and Tile buttons in Task List to rearrange application windows so that all running applications are visible on your desktop. The Cascade command causes the windows to overlap so that each title bar is visible. The Tile command arranges the open windows in smaller sizes to fit next to each other on the desktop.

► **To arrange application windows on your desktop**

1. Double-click anywhere on the desktop to open Task List. Or press CTRL+ESC.
2. Choose the Cascade or Tile button.

If you have a number of applications running as icons and they are scattered across your desktop, follow the next procedure to rearrange them evenly.

► **To rearrange application icons**

1. Double-click anywhere on the desktop to open Task List. Or press CTRL+ESC.
2. Choose the Arrange Icons button. The icons are arranged along the lower edge of the desktop.

Dragging Files to Perform Tasks

When using File Manager, Program Manager, Print Manager, and certain other Windows-based applications, you can perform some essential tasks by dragging File Manager files from one place to another with the mouse. This is known as *dragging and dropping*.

For example, you can print a file on your default printer by dragging a File Manager file onto the Print Manager icon (the minimized Print Manager window) and then releasing the mouse button. Or you can set up an application to run with Windows by dragging a File Manager file onto a group window or icon in Program Manager.

Note Dragging File Manager files can only be done by using a mouse. There is no keyboard equivalent.

► **To drag and drop a file**

1. In the Main group, double-click the File Manager icon to start File Manager.
2. Select the drive and directory containing the file you want to drag.
3. Make sure the application that you want to drag the file to is running either as a window or an icon.

4. Arrange the windows on your screen so that both the File Manager file you want to drag and the application window or icon you want to move the file onto are visible.
5. Select the file you want.
6. Press and hold down the left mouse button, drag the file onto the application window or icon, and then release the mouse button.

You can perform the following tasks by dragging File Manager files.

To	Drag the file onto
Create a Program Manager group item	A Program Manager group window or icon.
Open a file in an application	The application's icon or title bar.
Move or copy a file to a different drive	A File Manager drive icon.
Move or copy a file to a File Manager directory	A File Manager directory window or directory icon.
Print a file on your default printer with the default settings	The minimized Print Manager window (Print Manager running as an icon).

Note The ability to print and open files by dragging and dropping icons depends on the application. Some applications may not support this feature. Check your application's documentation to find out whether dragging and dropping are supported.

Receiving a Message from an Inactive Application

When an inactive application issues a status or error message, the application title bar or icon flashes, and you may hear a beep.

- ▶ **To receive a status or error message**
 - Select the application window or icon. The message appears.

Quitting an Application

There are various ways to quit an application. If you are working on a document and you haven't saved your changes, you are prompted to save them.

- ▶ **To quit a Windows-based application, use one of the following methods**
 - From the application's File menu, choose Exit.
 - From the Control menu, choose Close.

- Press ALT+F4.
- Double-click the Control-menu box.

► **To quit an MS-DOS-based application**

- Choose the application's exit or quit command. If you are using MS-DOS Prompt, type **exit** at the command prompt. The application closes, and you return to Windows.

When you quit an MS-DOS-based application that is running in a full screen, you usually return to the Windows desktop just as you left it. If you return to an MS-DOS prompt, type **exit**.

Opening and Saving Documents

This section explains some basic tasks, such as opening, editing, and saving files, that are common to many Windows-based applications.

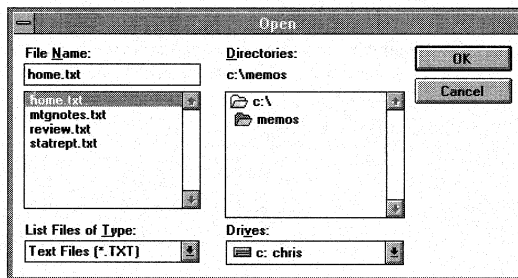
Note The procedures in this section apply to the applications supplied with Windows. Other applications may work differently.

Opening Files

Choosing the Open command from an application's File menu opens a dialog box that is often the same regardless of which application you are using. This dialog box is designed to save you time because you can select the drive, directory, file, and file type from the ones displayed in the list boxes.

► **To open a file**

1. From the application's File menu, choose Open. The Open dialog box appears.



2. If the file you want to open is on a different drive, select the drive you want from the Drives list.
3. In the Directories box, choose the directory you want to open. (Double-click the directory.)

Windows displays the names of all files in that directory that are the type selected in the List Files Of Type box. To display a different type of file, select the type you want from the List Files Of Type box.

4. Type the filename, and then choose the OK button. Or double-click the filename in the File Name box.

Saving Files

In many applications, the File menu contains two commands for saving files: Save and Save As. You use the Save command to save changes to an existing file. You use the Save As command to name and save a new file or to save an existing file under a new name. For example, you may want to make changes to a file, yet also keep the original file without the changes. By using the Save As command, you can save a copy of the original file with a different name.

► **To save an existing file**

- From the application's File menu, choose Save.

► **To save a new file or an existing file under a new name**

1. From the application's File menu, choose Save As.
2. If you want to save the file on a different drive, select the drive you want from the Drives list.
3. In the Directories box, choose the directory in which you want to save the file.
4. In the File Name box, type a name for the file.

If you don't specify a filename extension, the application may add one. For example, Notepad adds the extension .TXT to a filename.

The default extension is shown in the Save File As Type box. To use a different extension, select an extension from the Save File As Type list, or type an extension.

5. Choose the OK button.

Working with Text

With many applications, you type text from time to time. The procedures for typing text, correcting errors, and editing text are the same for most Windows-based applications.

Typing Text

When you start typing text, an insertion point marks the place where the text appears.

► **To type text in a new document**

- Begin typing the text. Press ENTER to move the insertion point to the next line. Press the SPACEBAR to move the insertion point one space to the right.

► **To type text in an existing document**

- Move the mouse pointer to where you want text to appear, click once, and then start typing. Or use the arrow keys to move the insertion point to where you want text to appear.

Note To create a blank line and move the insertion point along that line, use ENTER and the SPACEBAR. For example, to type a report title 10 lines from the top of a new page and 20 spaces from the left margin, press ENTER 10 times, and then press the SPACEBAR 20 times before you type the title.

Moving Within Text

You can easily move the insertion point wherever you want within text.

To move to the	Press
Next line	DOWN ARROW
Previous line	UP ARROW
End of the line	END
Beginning of the line	HOME
Next screen	PAGE DOWN
Previous screen	PAGE UP
Next word	CTRL+RIGHT ARROW
Previous word	CTRL+LEFT ARROW
End of the document	CTRL+END
Beginning of the document	CTRL+HOME

Correcting Typing Mistakes

If you make a mistake while typing, you can correct it by using one of the methods in the following table. Or, if you need to change more than a few characters, you can select the text and edit it.

To	Do this
Delete the character (or selected text) to the left of the insertion point	Press BACKSPACE.
Delete the character (or selected text) to the right of the insertion point	Press DEL.
Insert characters at the insertion point	Type the characters.

Selecting Text

You can make changes to blocks of text by selecting (highlighting) the text you want to change, and then choosing one of the commands from the application's Edit menu.

► **To select text**

1. Point to the first character you want to select.
2. Press and hold down the mouse button, and then drag the insertion point to the last character you want to select.
3. Release the mouse button.

Tip With some applications, you can select a single word by double-clicking it. Or you can select all the text in your file by choosing Select All from the Edit menu.

► **To cancel the selection**

- Click anywhere in the document.

The following table shows ways to select text by using the keyboard. Not all applications offer all options. In most cases, you can select an area of text by pressing and holding down SHIFT while you use standard keystrokes. For information about valid key combinations, see your application's documentation.

To extend the selection to the	Press
Next word	CTRL+SHIFT+RIGHT ARROW
Previous word	CTRL+SHIFT+LEFT ARROW
Next line	SHIFT+DOWN ARROW
Previous line	SHIFT+UP ARROW
End of the line	SHIFT+END
Beginning of the line	SHIFT+HOME
Next screen	SHIFT+PAGE DOWN
Previous screen	SHIFT+PAGE UP
End of the document	CTRL+SHIFT+END
Beginning of the document	CTRL+SHIFT+HOME

Editing Selected Text

The following table describes ways you can edit selected text.

To	Do this
Delete the selected text and place it onto the Clipboard	From the Edit menu, choose Cut.
Make a copy of the selected text and place it onto the Clipboard	From the Edit menu, choose Copy.
Replace the text with new text	Type the new text.
Delete the text (not place it onto the Clipboard)	Press DEL or BACKSPACE.
Cancel the previous editing operation	From the Edit menu, choose Undo.
Paste text from the Clipboard into the active window	Place the insertion point where you want the text to appear, and then choose Paste from the Edit menu.

Transferring Information Between Applications by Using the Clipboard

Information you cut or copy onto the Clipboard remains there until you clear it or cut or copy another piece of information onto it, or until you quit Windows. Because the information remains on the Clipboard, you can paste the information into a document as often as you like.

Cutting or Copying Information onto the Clipboard

The method you use to transfer information onto the Clipboard depends on whether you are using a Windows-based or MS-DOS-based application and whether it is running in a window or a full screen. For more information about cutting or copying information onto the Clipboard from an MS-DOS-based application, see Chapter 11, "MS-DOS Applications."

If you are using a Windows-based application, you can cut or copy selected information onto the Clipboard. You can also copy an image of the entire desktop or a single window.

► To cut or copy information onto the Clipboard

1. Select the information you want to cut or copy. (For information about selecting text in Windows, see "Selecting Text" earlier in this chapter.)

You can cut or copy text, graphics, or a combination of text and graphics.

2. From the application's Edit menu, choose Cut or Copy.

Use the Cut command to remove information from a file and place it onto the Clipboard.

Use the Copy command to place a copy of the information onto the Clipboard, leaving the information in its original location as well.

Copying the Desktop

Whether Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode or in standard mode, you can copy the contents of the desktop onto the Clipboard. When Windows is running in standard mode, however, graphics from an MS-DOS-based application are not copied onto the Clipboard.

► To copy an image of the desktop onto the Clipboard

- Press PRINT SCREEN.

Note If pressing PRINT SCREEN does not copy the screen onto the Clipboard, you may not have an enhanced keyboard. Try pressing ALT+PRINT SCREEN or SHIFT+PRINT SCREEN to copy the screen.

Copying the Contents of the Active Window

386

To use the following procedure, Windows must be running in 386 enhanced mode.

► **To copy the contents of the active window onto the Clipboard**

- Press ALT+PRINT SCREEN. If you are copying from a Windows-based application, a bitmap of the window is placed onto the Clipboard. If you are copying from an MS-DOS-based application, the information is placed onto the Clipboard as text. The application you want to transfer the information to must be able to read bitmap (.BMP) files. See the documentation supplied with your application to determine this.

► **To copy from an MS-DOS-based application running in a window**

Mouse

1. Drag the mouse pointer across the information you want to copy.
2. Click the Control-menu box, and then choose Edit from the Control menu. The Edit drop-down menu appears.
3. Choose Copy to transfer the selected information onto the Clipboard.

Keyboard

1. Press ALT+SPACEBAR to open the Control menu for the application, and then choose Edit from the Control menu. The Edit cascading menu appears.
2. Choose Mark. A rectangular cursor appears at the upper-left corner of the window.
3. Move the cursor to the first character you want to select.
4. Press SHIFT and an arrow key to mark the information you want to copy.
5. From the Control menu, choose Edit. The Edit menu appears.
6. Choose Copy to transfer the selected information onto the Clipboard.

Viewing the Contents of the Clipboard

When you copy or cut information, it is placed on the Clipboard. You can view the contents of the Clipboard by starting Clipboard Viewer.

► **To view the contents of the Clipboard**

1. Switch to Program Manager.
2. In the Main group, choose the Clipboard Viewer icon.

Note Sometimes Windows changes the line length of the information you copy or cut so that all of it can be seen in the Clipboard window. When you paste the information from the Clipboard into the destination application, however, the information is intact.

The Clipboard accepts a number of text and graphics formats. When you transfer information from one application to another, the original application places the information onto the Clipboard in all the formats the Clipboard recognizes. The application you paste the information into then selects the format that is most compatible. To view a list of all the available formats on the Clipboard and to view the information in a different format, use the Display menu in Clipboard Viewer.

Pasting Information from the Clipboard

You can paste information from the Clipboard into an application at any time. Make sure the application you want to paste the information into accepts the bitmap format if you copied the desktop or a window onto the Clipboard. Information you cut or copy onto the Clipboard remains there until you cut or copy something else, clear it, or quit Windows. The method you use to paste information depends on whether you are pasting into a Windows-based or MS-DOS-based application. For information about MS-DOS-based applications, see Chapter 11, "MS-DOS Applications."

► **To paste information into a Windows-based application**

1. Make sure the information you want to paste is on the Clipboard. (For information about viewing the Clipboard contents, see the preceding section, "Viewing the Contents of the Clipboard.")
2. Start the application.
3. Place the insertion point where you want to paste the information.
4. From the application's Edit menu, choose Paste.

Saving the Contents of the Clipboard

You can save the contents of the Clipboard in a file. You can later retrieve the file and paste its contents into an application. You can view the file you save by using Clipboard Viewer.

► **To save the contents of the Clipboard to a file**

1. Switch to Program Manager.
2. In the Main group, choose the Clipboard Viewer icon, and then choose Save As from the File menu. The Save As dialog box appears.
3. Type a filename for the contents of the Clipboard. The default extension for a Clipboard file is .CLP.

You can also type a path if you want to store the Clipboard file in a different directory.

4. Choose the OK button.

You can open a Clipboard file and then paste it into any application. Only files with a .CLP extension can be opened in Clipboard Viewer.

► **To retrieve a Clipboard file**

1. Switch to Program Manager.
2. In the Main group, choose the Clipboard Viewer icon, and then choose Open from the File menu. The Open dialog box appears.
3. Select the .CLP file you want to retrieve, and then choose the OK button.

Note If the Clipboard already contains information, you are prompted to clear it. If you choose the OK button, the current contents of the Clipboard are replaced by the contents of the file you specified.

If you need more memory to run an application, you can clear the Clipboard. Since the Clipboard stores information in multiple formats, clearing it might free some memory.

► **To clear the Clipboard**

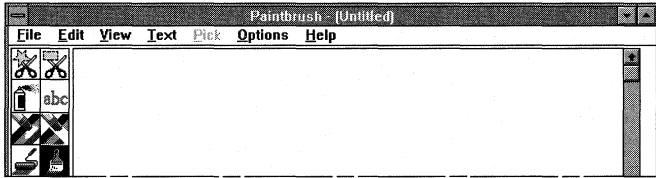
1. Switch to Program Manager.
2. In the Main group, choose the Clipboard Viewer icon, and then choose Delete from the Edit menu or press DEL.
3. Choose the OK button.

CHAPTER 6

Online Help

Online Help in Windows is a convenient, quick way to look up information about a task you are performing or a feature or dialog box you would like to know more about.

Help is available whenever you see a Help command button in a dialog box or Help as an item on a menu bar.



The applications and accessories (except Clock) you received with Windows include Help, as described in this section. Other Windows-based applications and MS-DOS-based applications might also have Help. For information, see the documentation for your application.

Starting Help

Because Help may be displayed differently, depending on which application you are using and what kind of information you need, you can request Help in several ways. Not all methods can be used with every application.

► **To request Help, use one of the following methods**

- From the Help menu, choose a Help command.
- Press F1. Then choose a topic from the Help Contents for the application you are using, or search for a topic by using the Search button.
- Choose the Help button available in many dialog boxes. This method gives you quick access to specific information about the dialog box.
- Use the keyboard to select an item on a menu, and then press F1 to see a description of the item (available in certain applications).
- Select a dialog box option or command, and then press F1 or choose the Help button to move directly to an explanation of the option (available in PIF Editor, an application included with Windows).

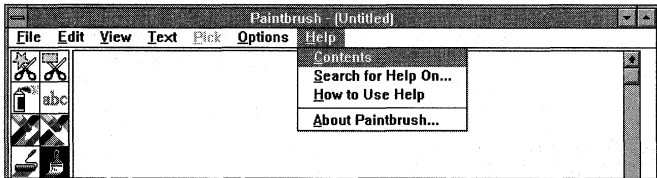
Tip You can keep Help readily available by resizing the Help window and moving it next to the running application. For information about moving and sizing windows, see “Working with a Window” in Chapter 4, “Windows Basics.”

Using the Help Menu

When you choose Help from the menu bar, a list of Help menu commands appears.

► **To get Help by using the Help menu**

1. Choose the Help menu from the menu bar.



2. Choose the menu command you want to use.

You can find the following standard commands on most Help menus in Windows. If this is the first time you've used Help, you may want to choose How To Use Help to get started.

Menu item	Description
Contents	An alphabetic list of all Help topics available for the active application.
Search For Help On	A dialog box for locating information about a specific topic.
How To Use Help	Information about how to use Help.
Always On Top	When selected, ensures that no other open window on the desktop overlaps the Help window. (This command appears only on the Help menu in a Help window.)
About <i>application</i>	Information about the active application, such as copyright, version, and application name. Generally, this also includes a user name and company name, the mode Windows is running in, and the amount of memory available on your computer.

Note The Help menu in Program Manager also contains a command named Windows Tutorial. Choose this command to start an online Tutorial that teaches basic mouse and Windows techniques. To use the Windows Tutorial, you need a mouse and a VGA (or better) monitor. For information about how to use the Tutorial, see “Running the Microsoft Windows Tutorial” in Chapter 3, “A Guided Tour of Microsoft Windows.”

Finding Information in Help

You can find information in Help by using Help Contents or Search For Help On, two commands on the Help menu.

Finding Information by Using Help Contents

If you are using an application that has Help on the menu bar, you can view all the available Help topics. Each application has a unique Help file, so the Help topics displayed are for the application you are currently using.

► **To display Help Contents and choose a topic**

1. From the Help menu, choose Contents or press F1.
2. Scroll to the topic you want information about.
3. Click the topic. Or press TAB until you reach the topic you want, and then press ENTER.

Finding Information by Using Search

The Search feature is an efficient way to find the information you need. When you have a topic that you want help with, you can use Search to find the information.

► **To search for a Help topic**

1. From the Help menu in your application, choose Search For Help On. Or press F1 to open Help, and then choose the Search button.

The Search dialog box appears.

2. Select the word or phrase you want to search for. Or type a word in the text box. You do not have to type an entire word; Help matches the characters you type as closely as possible with the available keywords.
3. Double-click the word or phrase, or choose the Show Topics button. A list of topics is displayed at the bottom of the dialog box.
4. Double-click the topic. Or select the topic you want to view, and then choose the Go To button.

Information about the topic you selected appears on your screen.

Getting Help for a Dialog Box

Many dialog boxes contain a Help button.

► **To request Help on a dialog box**

1. While using the dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1.

A new window opens that contains a description of the dialog box. If the dialog box contains only a few areas, procedural information for the entire dialog box is included. More complex dialog boxes have a list of areas to select from.






2. Select the area you want information about.

A pop-up window displaying procedural information appears. (If the window has no Control menu, you can close it by pressing any key or clicking anywhere on your screen.)




Tip It may be helpful to resize and arrange the Help window so that it does not overlap the dialog box. In some cases, the smaller the Help window is, the smaller the pop-up window is. If you cannot read all the information in a pop-up window, enlarge the Help window. For more information, see “Working with a Window” in Chapter 4, “Windows Basics.”

Additional Methods

When you finish reading about a topic, you have several choices. If a list of related topics follows the information, you can choose from the list. Or you can choose one of the buttons along the top of the Help window.

Use this button	To
	View the Help Contents for your application.
	Locate information about a topic (keyword or phrase) you select from a list or that you type in the Search For box.
	Retrace your path through the Help topics you've already viewed.
	View a complete, sequential list of every Help topic you have viewed during the current Windows session.
	View an alphabetic listing of terms used in Help.

The following buttons may appear in Help for some applications.

Use this button	To
	View the previous topic in a series of related topics. When you reach the first topic in the series, the button appears dimmed.
	View the next topic in a series of related topics. When you reach the last topic in the series, the button appears dimmed.
	View an alphabetic list of all Help topics.

Displaying Glossary Definitions

In Help, glossary terms have a dotted underline. If you choose a glossary term, a definition of that term appears.

- ▶ **To display a glossary definition**
 - Choose the term.
 - A definition appears.

▶ **To remove the definition from your screen**

- Click anywhere on your screen. Or press ESC.

You can also view the entire list of available glossary terms. This list is organized alphabetically.

▶ **To view the list of glossary terms**

1. From the Help window, choose the Glossary button.
2. Scroll through the list until you find the term you want to learn about.
3. Choose the term.

Quitting Help

You can quit Help at any time.

▶ **To quit Help**

- From the File menu, choose Exit.

CHAPTER 7

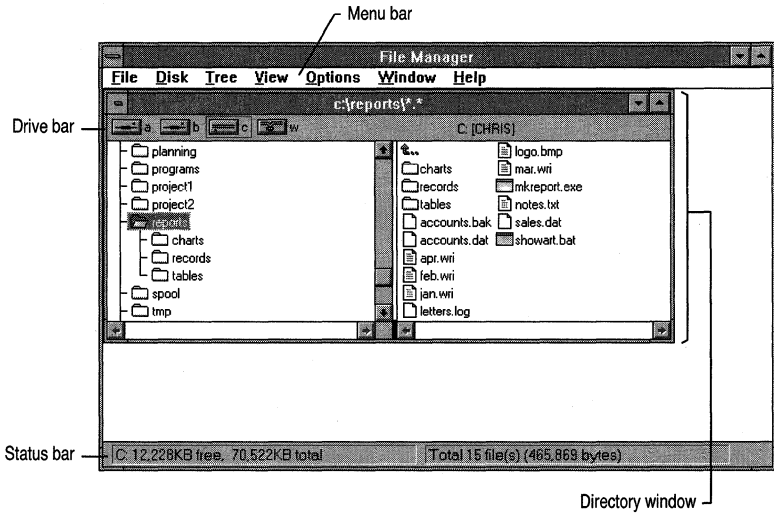
File Manager

File Manager is an application included with Windows that can help you organize files and directories on your disk drives.

This chapter describes how you can use File Manager to perform some common tasks, including managing drives, directories, and files and connecting to network directories. For a more complete list, see Help for File Manager.







The File Manager Window

When you start File Manager from the Main group, the window shown on the following page appears.



- The *directory window* is divided by the *split bar*. The left side of the window displays the structure of the current drive, or the *directory tree*. The right side of the window displays a list of files in the selected directory.

The following table describes the various icons used in the directory window.

Icon	Description
	Displays the contents of the directory one level up in the directory tree.
	Represents a directory.
	Represents an application file. These files start applications or run programs.
	Represents a document file associated with an application. When you open this file, the application associated with it starts.
	Represents a system or hidden file. These files have system or hidden attributes.
	Represents other document files.

- You can use the *drive icons* on the *drive bar* to choose what drive is displayed in a directory window. You can choose to hide the drive bar.
- The *status bar* displays information about the current drive and directory and other information that helps explain the task you are performing with File Manager. You can choose to hide the status bar.
- The *menu bar* contains menus listing File Manager commands.

Viewing Information in a Directory Window

File Manager provides many ways to display files. Often, if you are looking for a particular file or group of files, it helps to change the way the files are listed or to display only the files that fit particular criteria. Also, when you are preparing to copy or move a file, it may be useful to display both the file and the directory that you will move or copy the file to.

Opening a New Directory Window

You can open more than one directory window to display more than one drive or directory at a time. Among other things, opening more than one directory window enables you to move and copy files by dragging them from one directory window to another. For more information about moving and copying files, see “Moving and Copying Files and Directories” later in this chapter.

► **To open a new directory window**

- From the Window menu, choose New Window.

If you want to open a new window displaying the contents of a different drive, you can double-click the drive icon.

The new window initially has the same display characteristics as the original window, but you can change its characteristics independently of other windows.

Changing the Information Displayed for Each File

You can change the way files are displayed in the directory window. For example, if you want to know when each file was created, you can display all the details about each file (including the date) and then sort the files by creation date. Or, if you want to see as many files as will fit in the window, you can display only the name of each file. The following table describes how you can use the many display options.

Use the following commands on the View menu to determine what information is displayed for each file.

Use this command	To
Name	Display only the names of files.
All File Details	Display the names, sizes, dates and times of creation, and attributes of files.
Partial Details	Display specific information about each file.
Sort By Name	Display files in alphabetic order, based on the filename.
Sort By Type	Display files in alphabetic order, based on the filename extension.
Sort By Size	Display files in order of size, from largest to smallest.
Sort By Date	Display files in chronological order.
By File Type	Specify which types of files are displayed in a directory window.

To save the new settings when you quit File Manager, choose the Save Settings On Exit command from the Options menu. A check mark next to the command means it is in effect.

Note These commands affect only the list of files in the active directory window. If the directory window is displaying only the directory tree, the commands do not affect the window.

Updating a Directory Window

In most cases, File Manager updates open directory windows automatically. Sometimes, however, File Manager cannot do this, especially if you are using network drives or if you change floppy disks.

- ▶ **To update a directory window**
 - Click the icon for the current drive, or choose Refresh from the Window menu. You can also press F5.

More Ways to View Information in a Directory Window

For information about the following additional tasks, see “Changing the Look of File Manager” in Help for File Manager:

- Arranging windows and icons
- Changing views in a directory window

Looking at Drives, Directories, and Files

In order to perform tasks with File Manager, you must be able to locate the file or directory you want to work with. This section describes how to locate and select files and directories.

Selecting Files and Directories

You can select one or more files or directories in the list of files when you want to copy, move, or delete files or perform other related tasks. You use the same methods for selecting files and directories as you do for selecting items in a list box. For more information about selecting items in a list box, see Chapter 4, “Windows Basics.”

- ▶ **To select a file or directory**
 - Click the icon. Or press TAB to move to the list of files, and then use the arrow keys.

- ▶ **To select consecutive items**
 - Click the first item, press and hold down SHIFT, and then click the last item in the group. Or select the first item by using the arrow keys, press and hold down SHIFT, and then use the arrow keys to extend the selection to the last item in the group.

- ▶ **To select or cancel selection of nonconsecutive items**
 - Press and hold down CTRL, and click each item. Or press SHIFT+F8, use the arrow keys to move to each item, press the SPACEBAR to select it or to cancel selection, and then press SHIFT+F8 again.

► **To select files with similar filenames**

1. From the File menu, choose Select Files.
2. In the Files box, specify the type of files you want to select. For example, type *.txt to select all files that have a .TXT extension.
3. Choose the Select button.

You can repeat steps 2 and 3 to select more groups of files, if you want.

You can choose the Deselect button at any time to remove from a selection the file type currently specified in the Files box.

Tip You can select all files in a directory by pressing CTRL+SLASH (/). You can cancel all selections by clicking any item (without pressing CTRL), or by pressing CTRL+BACKSLASH (\).

Changing Drives and Directories

The files you want to work with may be on a different drive or in a different directory. File Manager enables you to easily view and work with them.

► **To change the current drive**

- In the drive bar, click the drive icon for the drive you want, or double-click it to create a new directory window displaying information for the new drive. You can also press and hold down CTRL while typing the letter of the drive you want to select. The last method works even if the drive bar is not displayed.

Note When you change drives, File Manager searches the drive to display its contents. You can press ESC at any time to stop the search. If you stop the search, only a partial directory tree may be displayed, as indicated in the status bar.

► **To change to another directory**

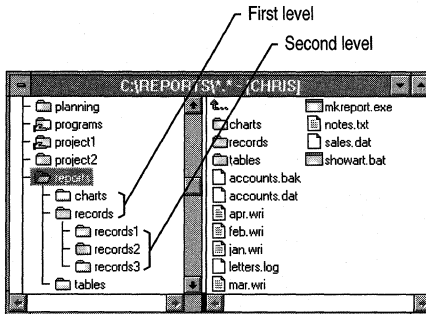
- Select the directory in the directory tree (or select the directory in the list of files) by using the mouse or the arrow keys.

In the list of files, you can move up one level in the directory structure by clicking the Up icon.

Viewing Different Directory Levels

In the directory tree, you can view the subdirectories in a directory by *expanding* the directory. You can also choose not to view subdirectories by *collapsing* the directory.

When you expand a directory, the names of its subdirectories are displayed in the directory tree, as shown in the following example.



You can expand an entire branch (all levels of subdirectories in a directory), a single level of the branch, or all branches on the drive.

You can collapse a directory so that subdirectories are not shown in the directory tree. All directories except the root directory are collapsed the first time you start File Manager.

► To expand one level of a directory

- In the directory tree, double-click the icon of the directory you want to expand. Or select it by using the arrow keys, and then press ENTER.

You can also use the following commands on the Tree menu to expand directories.

Use	To
Expand One Level	Display the immediate subdirectories of the selected directory. Or you can press the PLUS (+) key.
Expand Branch	Display all the subdirectory levels below the selected directory. Or you can press the ASTERISK (*) key.
Expand All	Display all the directories and subdirectories on the drive. Or you can press CTRL+ASTERISK (*) on the numeric keypad.

► **To collapse a directory**

- In the directory tree, double-click the icon of the directory you want to collapse. Or select the icon by using the arrow keys, and then press ENTER. You can also use the Collapse Branch command on the Tree menu.

Using Network Directories

If you are using a network, you can use File Manager to connect to a network directory if you know its location (and password, if there is one). With some networks, you can browse through all the network directories to find the one you want to connect to. You can also disconnect from network directories that you are no longer using. If you are not using a network, the network commands are not available.

You should always start the network before you start Windows. If you made network connections before you started Windows, the network drive icons for these connections appear on the File Manager drive bar. Windows saves any new network connections you make and, if you do not disconnect from them, sets up the same network connections the next time you start Windows.

With some networks, you can change settings so that your connections are not reestablished each time you start Windows. To change network settings, choose the Network icon in Control Panel. For more information, see Help for Control Panel.

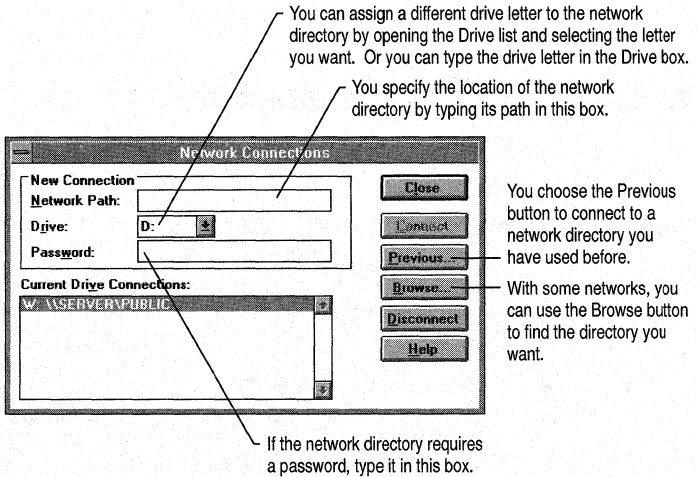
Connecting to and Disconnecting from Network Directories

When you connect to a network directory, File Manager assigns the directory the next available drive letter (or you can assign a letter of your choice). This creates a *network drive*, which appears as a drive icon on the File Manager drive bar. After you are connected to a network directory, you can use the resulting network drive as you would any other drive.

Note Depending on your network, you may have different commands and dialog boxes available to connect to and disconnect from network directories. The following procedures are based on your having the Network Connections command available. If you have different network commands, such as Connect Network Drive and Disconnect Network Drive, substitute those commands for Network Connections in the following procedures. If the dialog box for connecting to a network directory is different from the one shown in this procedure, choose the Help button in the dialog box for more information.

► **To connect to a network directory**

1. From the Disk menu, choose Network Connections.
2. In the Network Connections dialog box, specify the network path, drive letter, and password, if any, for the connection. For help with the Network Connections dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.



3. Choose the Connect button.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 for each connection you want to make. When you are finished, choose the Close button.

Note The Browse button may appear dimmed if your network does not support browsing.

► **To disconnect from a network directory**

1. In the Network Connections dialog box, select the directory you want to disconnect from in the Current Drive Connections box.
2. Choose the Disconnect button, and then choose the Close button.

Note If Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode, you may not be able to disconnect from network drives that were active before you started Windows.

Working with Files and Directories

You can use File Manager to move, copy, create, delete, rename, and search for files or directories. You can also print files from File Manager.

Moving and Copying Files and Directories

You can move and copy files and directories from one location (called the *source*) to another (called the *destination*) either by the drag-and-drop method or by using the Copy or Move command. The destination can be a directory window, directory icon, or drive icon.

► **To move or copy a file or directory**

- To move a file or directory to a destination on a different drive, press and hold down SHIFT while you drag the item. To move a file or directory to a destination on the same drive, drag the item.
- To copy to a different drive, drag the item to the appropriate drive icon. To copy to the same drive, press and hold down CTRL while you drag the item.
- You can also select the file or directory and then choose Move or Copy from the File menu. Then complete the appropriate dialog box.

Creating Directories

You can create a directory by using the Create Directory command.

► **To create a directory**

- From the File menu, choose Create Directory. Then type the new directory's path in the Name box.

Tip To quickly create a subdirectory of an existing directory, select the existing directory before you choose the Create Directory command. Then type only the new directory's name instead of its path in the Name box.

Deleting Files and Directories

You can delete a file or an entire directory, including all the files and subdirectories contained in it.

- ▶ **To delete a file or directory**
 - Select the file or directory you want to delete (you can extend the selection to include more than one file or directory). Then choose Delete from the File menu, or press DEL.

Renaming Files and Directories

You can change the names of files, but you must be careful when working with system or hidden files. A *system file* contains information required for running the Microsoft MS-DOS operating system. A *hidden file* is a file not intended to be viewed in a directory listing. For example, your Windows swap file is a hidden file. If you change the name of a system file, your Windows directory, or any initialization (.INI) file used by Windows, your system may not run correctly.

- ▶ **To rename a file or directory**
 1. Select the file(s) or directory you want to rename, and then choose Rename from the File menu.
 2. The From box contains the name(s) you selected. In the To box, type a filename to rename a single file, or use wildcards (* or ?) to rename a group of files. For example, type *.bak to affect all files that have the .BAK extension. For more information about wildcards, see your MS-DOS documentation.

Searching for Files and Directories

If you know a particular file is on your disk, but you don't remember where, you can use the Search command to find it.

- ▶ **To search for a file or directory**
 1. Select the directory that you want to start the search from, and then choose Search from the File menu.
 2. Type a filename, or use wildcards (* or ?) in the Search For box to search for a group of files or directories that have related filenames or extensions. The Search Results window displays a list of all the files that meet the criteria.

You can work with the files that appear in the Search Results window in the same way you work with files in the directory window.

To cancel the search, press ESC. To close the Search Results window, choose Close from the Control menu.

If you modify information on the drive on which the search was performed, and the Search Results window is active (or is made active), a dialog box appears, asking whether you want to update the Search Results window. If you choose the Yes button, the search is repeated.

Printing Files

You can print files by dragging the file icons onto the Print Manager application icon or window. Some applications do not support printing through File Manager. If this is the case, or if a file is not associated with an application, you must open the appropriate application and then print the file from there.

► To print a file by using File Manager

- Make sure Print Manager is activated, and then drag the document-file icon onto the Print Manager application icon or window.

Or, in the directory window, select the file you want to print, and then choose Print from the File menu.

For information about activating Print Manager, see Help for Print Manager.

Note Printing by using File Manager prints the file on the default printer.

Working with Floppy Disks

You can use commands on the Disk menu to format floppy disks and copy the contents of one disk to another.

► To format a floppy disk

1. Insert a disk in a drive.
2. From the Disk menu, choose Format Disk.
3. In the Disk In list, select the letter for the drive you want to format. The other parameters are adjusted to match that drive.
4. Complete the other areas of the dialog box, and then choose the OK button.

In the Format Disk dialog box, you can use the following options.

Use	To
Label	Specify the disk label.
Make System Disk	Make the disk a startup disk.
Quick Format	Format the disk quickly (the disk is not scanned for bad sectors). This works only for disks that have been previously formatted.

For more information about formatting a disk, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the Format Disk dialog box.

Caution Be sure you format the correct disk. Unless you are running MS-DOS version 5.0 or later, or you have a disk-recovery program, you cannot recover information on a disk that is accidentally formatted.

► **To copy a floppy disk to another floppy disk**

- Insert the source disk in the drive you want to copy from. If you have two floppy disk drives of the same size, insert the destination disk in the drive you want to copy to. Then choose Copy Disk from the Disk menu.

Both disks must have the same storage capacity, but you do not need two drives of the same storage capacity. If you have only one floppy disk drive of the right capacity, Windows prompts you to switch source and destination disks as needed.

For information about the following additional tasks, see “Managing Floppy Disks” in Help for File Manager:

- Labeling a disk
- Making a system disk

More Ways to Use File Manager

There are many other features that you can use to customize File Manager to fit your needs and to perform various tasks. For example, you can start applications from File Manager (for more information, see Chapter 5, “Application Basics”).

For information about the following tasks, see Help for File Manager:

- Associating files with applications
- Changing the look of File Manager
- Managing floppy disks
- Moving around in File Manager
- Starting applications
- Turning off confirmation messages
- Working with files and directories

Print Manager

Print Manager is an application included with Windows that you can use to manage documents sent to a printer. You can also use Print Manager to install and configure printers and to connect to network printers.

If you print from a Windows-based application, the application creates a *print file* and sends it to Print Manager. Print Manager works in the background, sending your documents to the printer while you continue working. You can check the status of the document at any time and change its status until it starts printing.

This chapter describes some of the common tasks you can perform by using Print Manager. For a more complete list, see Help for Print Manager.

Before You Print

You must do the following before you can print:

1. Make sure the appropriate *printer driver* is installed. This is a program that enables your printer to communicate with Windows. For each type of printer you plan to use, whether it is your own or a printer on the network, you must install the appropriate printer driver.

Generally, you specify a printer when you set up Windows, and the Setup program installs the printer driver for that printer. However, if you skipped this step during Setup, or if you want to use an additional or different printer, you need to perform this step again. For information about how to set up a printer, see “Setting Up a Printer” later in this chapter.

2. If you plan to use a printer on the network, you must connect to that printer. For information about how to connect to a network printer, see “Connecting to a Network Printer” later in this chapter.

Managing Documents

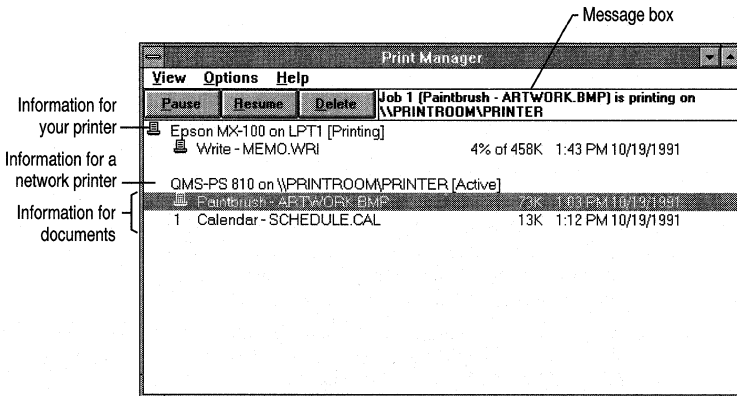
Most Windows-based applications include a Print command on the File menu that you can use to print documents. You can also print a document from File Manager by dragging the file's icon onto the Print Manager application icon or window. For information about this procedure, see Chapter 7, "File Manager."

When you print a document from a Windows-based application on your own printer (a printer physically connected by a printer cable to your computer), Print Manager starts and appears on the desktop as an icon, if it is not already running. The icon does not appear when you print on a *network printer* (a central printer that anyone who is using a network can use).

MS-DOS-based applications that run in Windows print the same way they would from MS-DOS. They do not use Windows printer drivers and do not route print files through Print Manager, but they can still print on network printers.

Looking at the Print Queue

As you send documents to Print Manager, a *print queue* forms. Print queues list information about the printers that are installed on your system and about the documents that are printing or waiting to print. You can view this information by enlarging the Print Manager icon to a window or by choosing Print Manager from the Main group.



The print queue displays the following printer information:

- The name of the printer.
- The port your printer is connected to and, if it is a network printer, the network path.
- The current status of the printer (such as active or idle).

Beneath the printer information, the print queue displays the following document information:

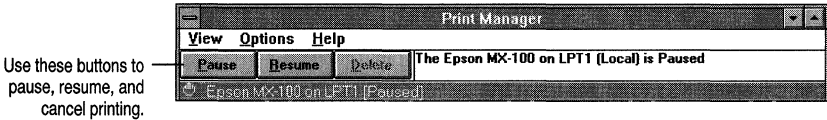
- The title of the document (some network software may not support this feature).
- The document's position in the queue, or a printer icon if the document is printing.
- The size of the document in kilobytes (if the Print File Size command has a check mark next to it).
- The time and date you sent the document to Print Manager (if the Time/Date Sent command has a check mark next to it). If you are connected to a network printer, the network time and date are shown, which may differ from your computer's time and date.
- If a document is currently printing, the amount (as a percentage) of the document printed so far.

If you are printing on a network printer from a Windows-based application, Print Manager only reports the status of your documents in the network queue. For information about viewing every document in a network queue, see "Viewing Network Print Queues" in Help for Print Manager.

Pausing and Resuming Printing

You can pause your printer or your individual documents on a network printer. Pausing your printer stops every document in its queue from printing. Pausing a single document stops only that document from printing—other documents in the queue will print. After a document has actually started to print, you cannot pause it.

Most networks allow you to pause only the documents you send to a network printer. However, your ability to pause the entire network queue depends on the features your network supports.



► **To pause printing**

1. In the Print Manager window, select the document or the name of the printer you want to pause.
2. Choose the Pause button. Or press ALT+P.

► **To resume printing**

1. In the Print Manager window, select the document or the name of the printer you want to resume printing.
2. Choose the Resume button. Or press ALT+R.

Canceling the Printing of a Document

You can cancel the printing of your document on your own printer or on a network printer by deleting it from the print queue. Whether you can cancel the printing of other documents on a network printer depends on the capabilities of the network.

► **To cancel the printing of a document**

1. In the Print Manager window, select the document you want to cancel.
2. Choose the Delete button. Or press ALT+D. A dialog box appears, prompting you to confirm the deletion.

► **To cancel the printing of all documents on your printer**

- From the File menu, choose Exit to quit Print Manager. A dialog box appears, prompting you to confirm the deletion.

Note If you quit Print Manager while a document is printing in graphics mode, you might need to turn your printer off and on or use the reset option on your printer.

Choosing the Default Printer

Many Windows-based applications use the default printer when you choose the Print command.

► **To choose a default printer**

1. From the Options menu, choose Printer Setup.
2. In the Installed Printers list, select the printer you want.
3. Choose the Set As Default Printer button, and then choose the Close button.

Tip You can also double-click the printer in the Installed Printers list.

Note Some Windows-based applications may have a Print Setup command that you can use to print to any installed printer. In most cases, selecting a different printer does not make it the default printer for all Windows-based applications. However, with some applications, the setting for the default printer does change. For more information, see the documentation that comes with your application.

Printing to a File

If you are planning to merge two files or to print a document at a later time or different location, you may want to print a document to a file rather than directly to a printer.

Some applications have an area in their Print dialog box in which you can specify printing to a file. If your application does not support this feature, you can print your document to a file by specifying FILE as the port in Print Manager. For more information, see “Setting Up a Printer” later in this chapter.

Printing Through MS-DOS

When you print in Windows, documents are sent directly to the port your printer is connected to, bypassing MS-DOS printing interrupts. This speeds up printing and is the recommended method to use.

However, in the following situations you may want to print by using MS-DOS interrupts:

- You are using additional printer software that relies on MS-DOS interrupts (such as software that accompanies switch boxes).
- You are trying to print on a network not supported by Windows.
- You are trying to print to a serial printer and are using a terminate-and-stay-resident (TSR) program that takes direct control of the COM port.

Printing through MS-DOS may slow down printing, but it ensures that in these cases your files print correctly.

► **To print through MS-DOS**

1. From the Options menu, choose Printer Setup.
2. In the Printers dialog box, choose the Connect button.
3. In the Connect dialog box, clear the Fast Printing Direct To Port check box, and then choose the OK button to return to the Printers dialog box.
4. Choose the Close button.

Connecting to a Network Printer

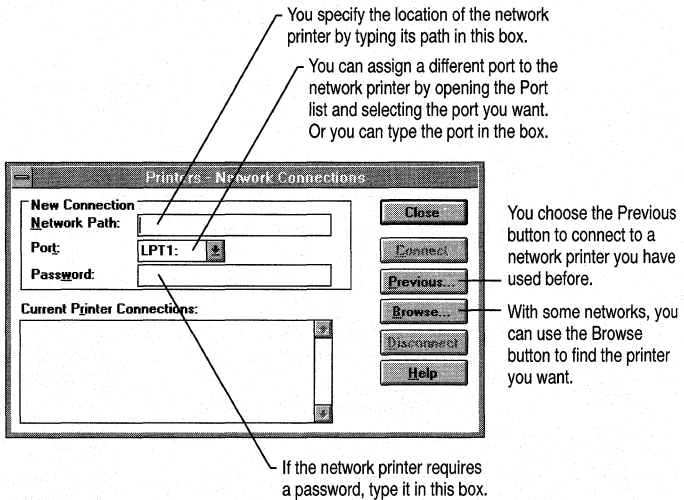
If you are using a network and want to print to a network printer, you can use Print Manager to connect to the printer.

When you connect to a network printer, you specify the location of the printer, a password, if one is required, and a port name, such as LPT2 or LPT3. Before connecting to a network printer, make sure that you have installed the printer driver for the network printer and that the printer is assigned to the port that you want to use for the network connection. For more information about installing a printer driver, see "Setting Up a Printer" later in this chapter.

Note Depending on your network, you may use different commands and dialog boxes to connect to and disconnect from network printers. The following procedures are based on your having the Network Connections command and dialog box available. If your network provides different commands, such as Connect Network Printer and Disconnect Network Printer, substitute those commands for Network Connections in the following procedures. If the dialog box for connecting to or disconnecting from a network printer is different from the one shown in this procedure, choose the Help button in the dialog box for more information.

► **To connect to a network printer**

1. From the Options menu, choose Network Connections.
2. In the Network Connections dialog box, specify the network path, port, and password, if any, for the connection. For help with the Network Connections dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.



3. Choose the Connect button.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 for each connection you want to make. When you are finished, choose the Close button.

Note The Browse button may appear dimmed if your network does not support browsing.

► **To disconnect from a network printer**

1. In the Network Connections dialog box, select the printer you want to disconnect from in the Current Printer Connections box.
2. Choose the Disconnect button, and then choose the Close button.

Setting Up a Printer

If you did not set up a printer when you set up Windows, the Print Manager window is empty and you cannot print. You can set up printers by using Control Panel or Print Manager.

It is recommended that you read the PRINTERS.WRI online document, which contains information about specific printers, before you set up a printer.

Note The Printers option in Control Panel provides the same method for setting up a printer as the Print Manager method described in the following sections.

► **To set up a printer**

1. From the Options menu, choose Printer Setup.
2. Choose the Add button to display the List Of Printers box if it is not already displayed.
3. In the List Of Printers box, do the following.

Double-click	If
The model name of your printer	Your printer is listed and does not emulate another printer.
The PostScript version of your printer	Your printer uses a PostScript cartridge that does not emulate another printer.
The printer that your printer emulates	Your printer is not listed but emulates a listed printer.
The printer that your PostScript cartridge emulates	Your printer uses a PostScript cartridge that emulates a listed printer.
PostScript Printer	Your printer is not listed, does not emulate a listed printer, but is PostScript-compatible.
Install Unlisted or Updated Printer	You have a disk from your printer manufacturer that contains a Windows printer driver for your printer.
Generic/Text Only	Your printer is not listed and is a daisy-wheel printer or a text-only printer.

Depending on the choice you make, you may be required to insert one of the installation disks contained in the Windows package, a disk provided by your printer manufacturer, or, if you are not a United States customer, the additional Non-USA Printer Drivers disk that comes with your Windows package.

Note If you choose the name of a printer that your printer emulates, your printer must be set to operate in the appropriate emulation mode. Make sure that you set the proper DIP-switch settings or menu settings on your printer. For more information, see your printer documentation.

4. If you want to change the port that is assigned to your printer, select the printer in the Installed Printers list, and then choose the Connect button. In the dialog box that appears, select the port that you want to assign to your printer.

Following is a description of the types of ports available.

Port	Description
LPT	A parallel port.
COM	A serial port.
EPT	Used for the IBM Personal Pageprinter. This port requires that a special card be installed in your computer.
FILE	Prints to a file instead of to a printer. If the application you are working with supports this feature, you can print to a file even if you don't select this option.

If you select a COM port, you might want to make sure that the communications settings for the port match those required by your printer. You can choose the Settings button to determine this. For help with the Settings dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.

If the printer is a network printer, choose the Network button to connect to it. For more information about connecting to network printers, see "Connecting to a Network Printer" earlier in this chapter.

Choose the OK button to close the Connect dialog box.

5. If you want to make this printer the default printer, double-click the printer in the Installed Printers list. Or select the printer, and then choose the Set As Default Printer button.
6. Choose the Close button.

If none of the printers listed in the Printers dialog box is appropriate for your printer, you have two choices:

- Contact your printer manufacturer for a printer driver that works with Windows.
- Request information about additional drivers included on the Windows Driver Library (WDL) disk. Microsoft adds drivers as they become available. For more information, see "The Windows Driver Library" in Chapter 13, "Configuring Hardware."

386

If you are using MS-DOS–based applications in 386 enhanced mode, you can use the 386 Enhanced option in Control Panel to control what happens when several applications compete for access to a printer port. For more information, see Help for Control Panel.

There are more procedures to help you set up printers. For information about the following additional tasks, see “Setting Up a Printer” in Help for Print Manager:

- Selecting timeout options
- Selecting printer settings

Removing an Installed Printer

If you are no longer using a printer, you can remove it from the Installed Printers list in the Printers dialog box.

► **To remove an installed printer**

1. From the Options menu, choose Printer Setup.
2. From the Installed Printers list, select the printer you want to remove.
3. Choose the Remove button. A dialog box appears, prompting you to confirm the removal.
4. Choose the Close button.

Removing a printer from the Installed Printers list does not remove the printer driver from your hard disk. This is because another printer may use the same driver. Similarly, removing the printer does not remove any associated fonts from memory. For information about removing fonts, see Chapter 12, “Customizing Windows.”

More Ways to Use Print Manager

There are many other features that you can use to customize Print Manager to fit your needs and to perform various tasks. For information about the following tasks, see Help for Print Manager:

- Changing the print order
- Deactivating Print Manager
- Displaying Print Manager messages
- Giving Print Manager priority
- Printing on a network

CHAPTER 9

Accessories

Windows includes accessories that you can use to perform many everyday tasks. The following list briefly describes how to use the accessories:

- Use Media Player and Sound Recorder to play or record sound files and work with other multimedia devices.
- Use Calculator, Calendar, Cardfile, and Clock to manage personal information.
- Use Write, Notepad, Paintbrush, and Character Map for publishing or writing tasks.
- Use Terminal to communicate with another computer through a modem.
- Use Recorder to record keystrokes or mouse actions to play back later.

This chapter introduces the accessories (in alphabetic order). Procedures for performing tasks are provided in online Help. To view Help, choose the Contents command from the Help menu.

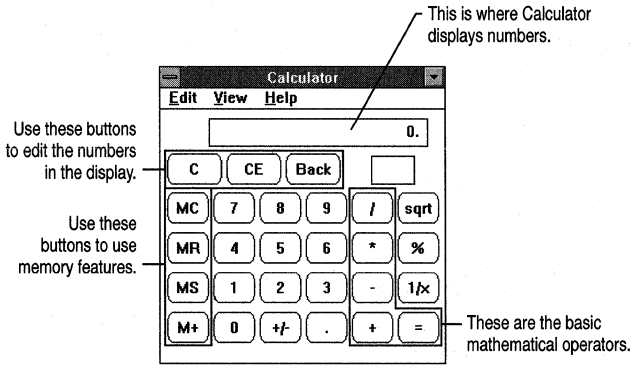
To start an accessory, choose an icon in the Accessories group. For information about starting accessories, see Chapter 4, “Windows Basics.”

Calculator



Calculator includes both a standard and scientific calculator. You can use the standard calculator to do simple calculations and then store them in memory. You use the scientific calculator to do advanced scientific and statistical calculations.

When you start Calculator for the first time, the standard calculator appears.



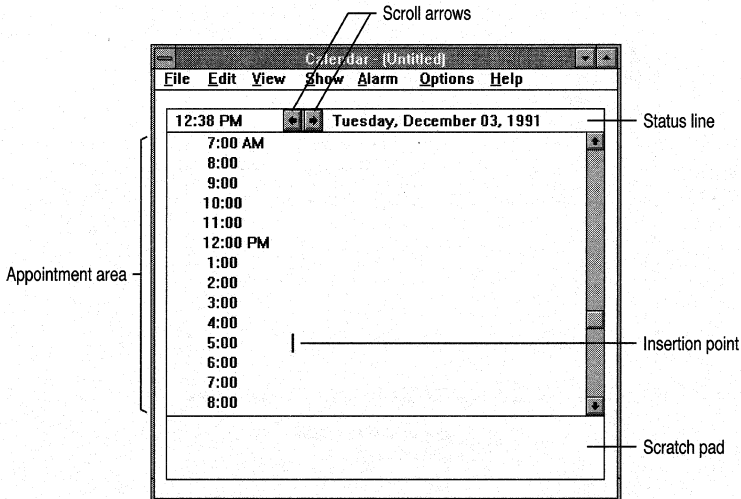
For information about the following tasks, see Help for Calculator:

- Performing calculations
- Using Calculator memory
- Using Calculator with the Clipboard
- Using the scientific calculator
- Working with different number systems
- Using advanced functions (operators, number-base functions, advanced statistical functions)

Calendar



Calendar combines a month-at-a-glance calendar and a daily appointment book.



For information about the following tasks, see Help for Calendar:

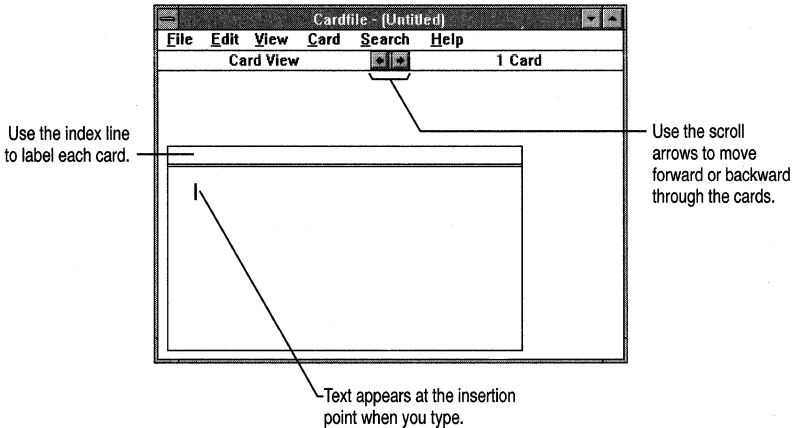
- Entering appointments
- Moving to appointments
- Printing appointments
- Setting and removing appointments

Cardfile



Cardfile is similar to a set of index cards. You can use it to keep track of names, addresses, phone numbers, directions, or anything else you want quick access to. If you have a modem, you can dial a telephone number that is typed on a Cardfile card.

You can also copy, link, or embed information into Cardfile. For example, on a card that shows a client's name, address, and telephone number, you could add a picture (a bitmap image) of the client. Or you could add an icon that, when chosen, opens and displays the picture. For more information about linking and embedding objects, see Chapter 10, "Object Linking and Embedding."



For information about the following tasks, see Help for Cardfile:

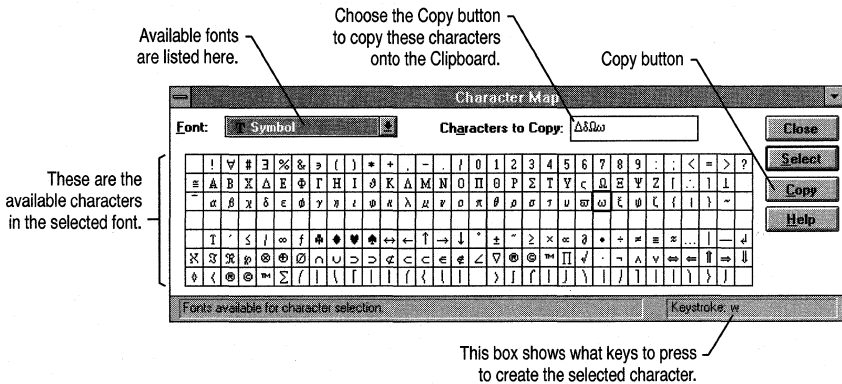
- Filling in and adding cards
- Viewing cards as a list
- Moving through your cards
- Editing text on cards
- Embedding or linking an object
- Restoring or deleting a card
- Duplicating a card
- Printing a Cardfile file
- Using automatic dialing

Character Map



Character Map displays all the characters, including extended and special characters, that you can use with the selected font in your Windows-based application. Character Map also displays the keystrokes you can use to create a selected character within your application.

You can use Character Map only with Windows-based applications. If you are running an MS-DOS-based application, check its documentation to find out how to insert special characters.



For information about the following tasks, see Help for Character Map:

- Selecting a font
- Inserting a character into a document
- Using keystrokes to create selected characters

Clock



Clock helps you keep track of time. You can display an analog or digital clock. You might find it useful to add Clock to your StartUp group, so that Clock is running every time you start Windows.

Media Player

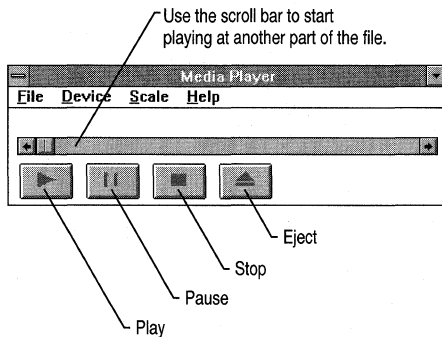


Using Media Player, you can play multimedia files and control hardware devices. For example, you can use Media Player to play sound files through a sound card. If you have an audio compact-disc player or videodisc player connected to your computer, you can use Media Player to start and stop them.

Media Player can play digitized sounds created by Sound Recorder or Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI) devices.

Before Media Player can play a file, you must have the sound hardware and its driver installed and configured. For information about installing hardware drivers, choose the Drivers icon from Control Panel, and then choose the Help button.

To play a multimedia file (sound or animation) or device (such as a videodisc player), you must first choose the type of device you want to use. For information about setting up your device, see Chapter 13, "Configuring Hardware." If the device requires a file to play, you must also open the file. Some devices, such as audio compact-disc players, do not require a file.



For information about the following tasks, see Help for Media Player:

- Specifying a media device
- Playing a media file
- Changing and positioning the scale

Notepad



Notepad is a text editor. You can use Notepad to create notes, write short memos, and create and edit batch files. Notepad creates files by using the ASCII format and has none of the features used for formatting a document.

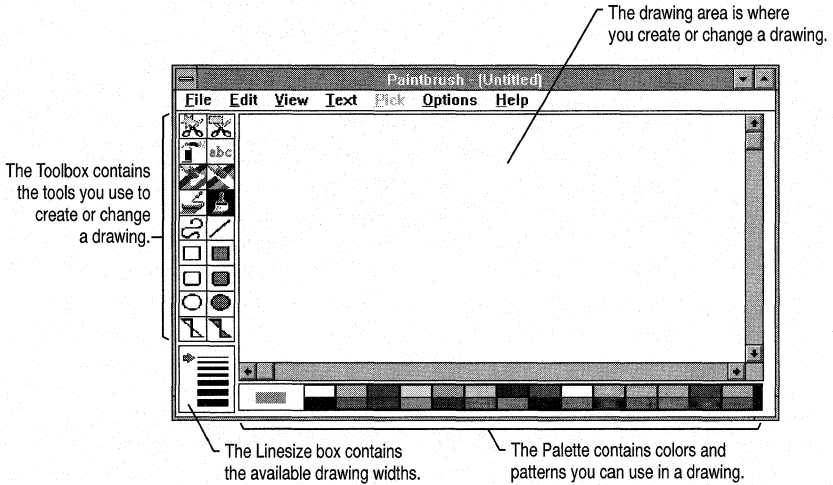
For information about the following tasks, see Help for Notepad:

- Setting word wrap
- Searching for text in Notepad
- Managing Notepad files
- Printing a Notepad document










Paintbrush



Using Paintbrush, you can create simple or elaborate, black-and-white or color drawings. After you've created a drawing, you can print it or use it in another document. For information about using Paintbrush drawings in other documents, see Chapter 10, "Object Linking and Embedding."



You use the tools in the Paintbrush Toolbox to create and change drawings. The following list provides a brief description of each tool's function.

Scissors		Pick
Airbrush		Text tool
Color Eraser		Eraser
Paint Roller		Brush
Curve		Line
Box		Filled Box
Rounded Box		Filled Rounded Box
Circle/Ellipse		Filled Circle/Ellipse
Polygon		Filled Polygon

This tool	Does this
Scissors	Defines an area to cut, copy, or change.
Pick tool	Defines a rectangular area to cut, copy, or change.
Airbrush	Creates a circular spray of dots.
Text tool	Adds text to your drawing.
Color Eraser	Changes colors in all or part of a drawing.
Eraser	Changes foreground colors to the selected background color.
Paint Roller	Fills any closed shape or area with color.
Brush	Draws freehand shapes and lines.
Curve	Draws curved lines.
Line	Draws straight lines.
Box	Draws hollow squares and rectangles.
Filled Box	Draws squares and rectangles filled with color.
Rounded Box	Draws hollow round-cornered squares and rectangles.
Filled Rounded Box	Draws round-cornered squares and rectangles filled with color.
Circle/Ellipse	Draws hollow circles and ellipses.
Filled Circle/Ellipse	Draws circles and ellipses filled with color.
Polygon	Draws polygons from connected straight lines.
Filled Polygon	Draws polygons filled with color.

Unlike the other accessories, Paintbrush makes use of both mouse buttons. Help for Paintbrush specifies when to use the right mouse button. If no button is

specified, use the left mouse button. For information about performing tasks with Paintbrush, see Help for Paintbrush.

Recorder



Using Recorder, you can record a sequence of keystrokes and mouse actions—called a *macro*—to play back at a later time. You can use macros to automatically type a special phrase or code that you use frequently or to automate the steps of a task you routinely perform. For example, you could record the steps you go through to switch to the Main group in Program Manager, choose the MS-DOS Prompt icon, change to the MS-DOS directory, and start a text editor. When you run this macro, it performs these steps for you.

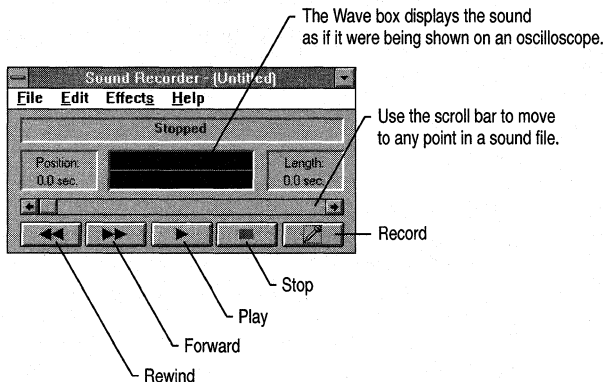
For information about the following tasks, see Help for Recorder:

- Recording a simple macro
- Playing back a macro
- Setting permanent preferences
- Creating macros to use as demos

Sound Recorder



You can use Sound Recorder to play, record, and edit digitized sound files. To play sound files, you must have a sound card and its driver installed and configured. To record sound files, you must also have a microphone installed. For information about hardware drivers, see Chapter 13, “Configuring Hardware.”



For information about the following tasks, see Help for Sound Recorder:

- Creating and editing a sound file
- Playing a sound file
- Linking and embedding sound files

Terminal



Using Terminal, you can connect your computer to other computers and exchange information through a modem. For example, you can connect to online information services, such as Dow Jones News/Retrieval, and to online bulletin boards, such as CompuServe.

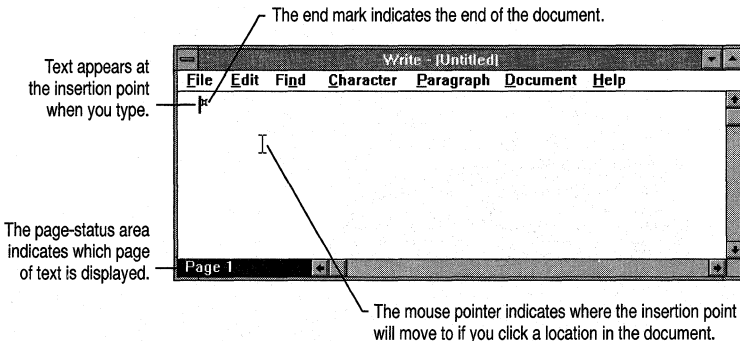
To run Terminal, you must have a Hayes or Hayes-compatible modem installed on your computer. For information about performing tasks with Terminal, see Help for Terminal.

Write



Write is a word-processing application that you can use to create and print documents for business and personal use. When you create Write documents, you can type, edit, and format text in the Write window; insert graphics; save the text and graphics as a file; and print your documents.

Write also supports object linking and embedding (OLE). For more information, see Chapter 10, "Object Linking and Embedding."



For information about performing tasks with Write, see Help for Write.

PART 3

Getting the Most Out of Windows

Object Linking and Embedding

In Windows, you can use a feature called *object linking and embedding (OLE)* to transfer and share information between Windows-based applications and accessories. When you use OLE, you can view and use different forms of information in a single document. For example, rather than switching between applications, you can view and even work on a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet or a Paintbrush bitmap right from a Microsoft Word for Windows document.

Paintbrush, Sound Recorder, Write, Cardfile, and Object Packager all support OLE and are included with Windows. Many other Windows-based applications support OLE. Check the documentation supplied with your applications to determine whether they support OLE and how to use their OLE features.

This chapter provides an introduction to OLE. Some procedures are provided as examples, using the Paintbrush and Write applications. For more comprehensive information about using the OLE features of Paintbrush and Write, see Help for each of these applications.

What Is Object Linking and Embedding?

To understand object linking and embedding, you need to be familiar with the following terms and concepts:

- An *object* is a piece of information such as a chart, a spreadsheet, a drawing, or text that can be *linked* or *embedded*.
- A *source document* is the document in which the object originates. For example, if you use Microsoft Excel to create a spreadsheet and then use that spreadsheet or part of it in another document, the original spreadsheet is the source document.
- A *destination document* is the document into which you place an object. For example, if you use part of a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet (as in the previous example) in a Word document, the Word document is the destination document.
- An *embedded object* is an object in a destination document that is a copy of information that was created in another application. By choosing an embedded object—for example, by double-clicking it—you start the application that was used to create it, without switching away from the document you're working in.

For example, suppose you are creating a memo by using Write and you want to use a drawing of your company logo at the top of the memo. The drawing has been created by using Paintbrush, so you can embed the drawing in your Write document. After it is embedded, making changes to it is easy—you choose the embedded object, and Paintbrush starts, displaying the object.

After it is embedded, an object is no longer connected to the source document. Changes you make to the object do not affect the source document.

- When you create a *linked object*, you establish a link between the destination and source documents. Although the linked object is displayed in the destination document and you can print the object, the data that makes up the object resides only in the source document. When you make changes

to a linked object, you are actually changing the information in the source document. When you make changes in the source document, the changes appear in the destination document (*updating* the linked object).

Note You can control whether a linked object is updated manually or automatically. For more information, see “Maintaining Links” later in this chapter.

By choosing a linked object—for example, by double-clicking it—you start the application that was used to create it, without switching away from the document you’re working in.

For example, suppose you are writing a chapter of a book by using Word for Windows. Someone else is creating the artwork for your chapter by using Paintbrush. You can create a link between the Paintbrush artwork and your Word document so that any changes to the artwork are automatically reflected in your document.

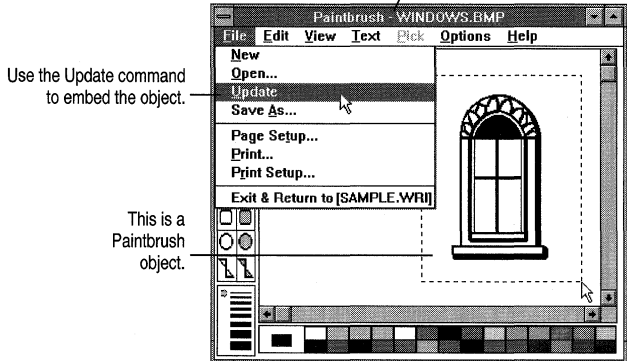
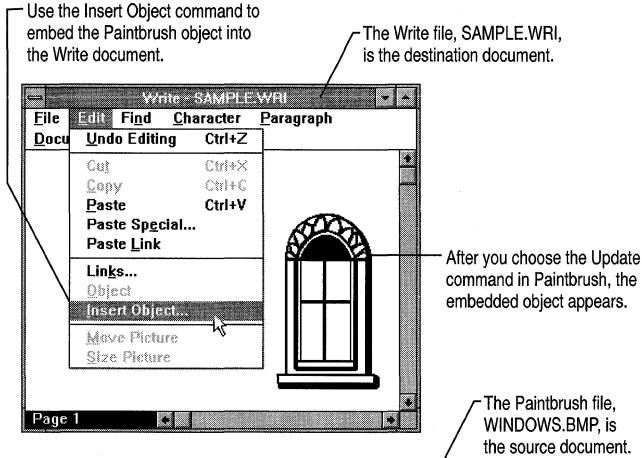
The procedures you use for embedding and linking objects are generally similar to the procedures you use for copying and pasting information. The end result depends on the application that was used to create the information you are using. If the application supports OLE, then following the procedures in this chapter will result in an embedded or linked object. If the application does not support OLE, then following these procedures will result in static copies of the information.

Embedding an Object

The way you embed an object depends on the type of object it is and whether the object has already been created.

Note Different applications may use different menu commands for object linking and embedding. For information about embedding an object by using a specific application, see the documentation supplied with the application.

You can embed an object by starting from either the source or destination document. The following illustration shows an example of both methods of embedding.



The following procedure describes one way of embedding a Paintbrush object in a Write document.

► **To embed a Paintbrush object, starting from Write**

1. Open the Write document in which you want to embed the object.
2. Place the insertion point where you want the object to appear.
3. From the Edit menu, choose Insert Object. A dialog box appears, listing all the applications on your computer that support OLE.

Note Some applications have a Paste From command on the Edit menu that you can use to open the document containing the drawing you want to embed as an object.

4. Select Paintbrush Picture, and then choose the OK button.
5. In the Paintbrush window, create a drawing. Or open the document that contains the drawing you want to embed.
6. From the File menu in Paintbrush, choose Update. This embeds the Paintbrush object into the Write document.
7. From the File menu in Paintbrush, choose Exit & Return To (name of document). Paintbrush closes and you return to the Write document.

Editing an Embedded Object

You can edit an embedded object from within its destination document. The following procedure describes how to edit a Paintbrush object that has been embedded in a Write document.

► **To edit an embedded Paintbrush object from within a Write document**

1. In the Write document, choose the embedded object. Paintbrush opens, with the object displayed.
2. Edit the object as needed.
3. From the File menu in Paintbrush, choose Update.
The embedded object is updated in the Write document.
4. From the File menu in Paintbrush, choose Exit & Return To (name of document). Paintbrush closes and you return to the Write document.

Linking an Object

The way you link an object depends on the type of object it is.

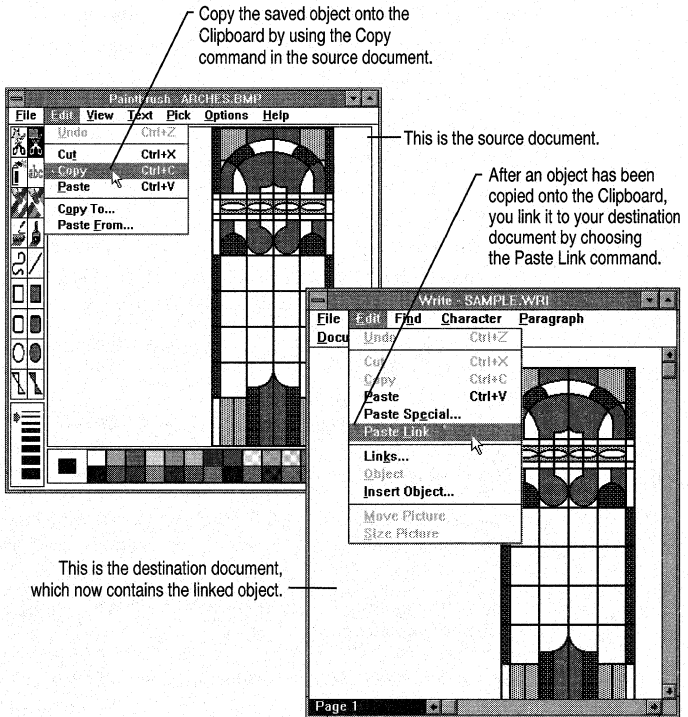
Note Different applications may use different command names for object linking and embedding. For more information about linking an object by using a specific application, see the documentation supplied with the application.

From a single source document, you can create links to more than one destination document. Any changes you make to a linked object in a destination document appear in the source document and in every destination document that contains a link to that object.

Note You can control whether a linked object is updated manually or automatically. For more information, see “Maintaining Links” later in this chapter.

You can link objects only from saved documents. For example, if you open Paintbrush and create a drawing, you must save it as a file before you can link the drawing to another document.

The following illustration shows how to link a Paintbrush object to a Write document.



The following procedure describes how to link a Paintbrush object to a Write document.

► **To link a Paintbrush object to a Write document**

1. In Paintbrush, open the document that contains the drawing you want to link. Or create a drawing.
2. If you've created a drawing or made any changes to an existing drawing, save the drawing.
3. Use the Pick tool to select the drawing.
4. From the Edit menu, choose Copy. A copy of the drawing is placed onto the Clipboard.
5. Start Write and open the document to which you want to link the drawing.
6. Place the insertion point where you want the object to appear.
7. From the Edit menu in Write, choose Paste Link.

Some applications have a Paste Special command that, when chosen, displays a list of formats. You can choose which format you want the information displayed in.

The linked object appears in your Write document.

Editing a Linked Object

Any changes you make to a linked object in a destination document appear in the source document and in every destination document that contains a link to that object.

The following procedure describes how to edit a Paintbrush object that is linked to a Write document.

► **To edit a linked Paintbrush object from within a Write document**

1. In the Write document, choose the linked object. Paintbrush opens, with the source document displayed.
2. Edit the object as needed. The linked object in the Write document is updated as you make your changes.
3. In Paintbrush, choose Save from the File menu.
4. From the File menu, choose Exit. Paintbrush closes and you return to the Write document.

Maintaining Links

After you create a linked object in a destination document, you can do the following:

- Control whether the linked object is updated manually or automatically.
- Create multiple links to the same object.
- Cancel or delete a link.
- Restore a broken link.
- Change the format of an object.

The following sections generally describe these tasks. For more information about performing these tasks by using a specific application, see the documentation supplied with the application.

Controlling How Linked Objects Are Updated

You can *update* a linked object either automatically or manually. A linked object in a destination document that is updated automatically is updated whenever the object in the source document changes. By default, linked objects are updated automatically. If you specify that a linked object is to be updated manually, the object in the destination document does not change when the object in the source document changes, but only when you choose to update it.

Some applications have a Links command that, when chosen, displays a dialog box containing a list of existing links; you can then specify how a linked object is updated. Sound and animation objects are always updated automatically when you save changes to the source document.

Creating Multiple Links

There are two ways to create multiple links to an object. You can create each link by using the procedure described earlier in this chapter, or you can copy an existing linked object from a destination document. The result is the same—multiple destination documents will contain links to the object in the source document. You can edit the object from any document that contains a link to the source document, or you can change the source document without opening a destination document. Either way, the changes are reflected in every document that contains a link to the source document.

To copy a linked object, select the object in one destination document, and then copy it onto the Clipboard. Then paste the object from the Clipboard into the document in which you want it to appear.

Canceling or Deleting a Link

Many applications have a Links command that opens a dialog box from which you can cancel or delete existing links.

You can cancel a link so that an object in a destination document no longer retains a link to the object in the source document but exists as a static copy. After you cancel a link, changes made in the source document no longer appear in the destination document, and you can no longer make changes to the source document from the destination document. The object still exists in both the source and other destination documents.

To edit an object in a destination document after you cancel a link, you must cut and paste it into the application that was used to create it, make your changes, and then copy and paste the object back into the destination document.

Deleting a link is different from canceling a link because both the link and the object itself are removed from the destination document. To delete a link, select the linked object in the destination document, and then cut it from the document.

Restoring a Broken Link

If you change the name of a source document that contains linked objects, the links between the destination document and those objects break because they refer to a filename that no longer exists. From the destination document, you must change the name of the document that the object is linked to so that the link will work properly again.

Some applications have a Links command that, when chosen, displays a dialog box containing a list of existing links; you can then specify the name of the source document that the selected object is linked to.

Note If for any other reason a link no longer works, try choosing the object again to open the source document. If the link still does not work, you may need to delete the linked object from the destination document and try linking it again.

Changing the Format of an Object

Because information is stored on the Clipboard in a variety of formats, you can transfer and share information between applications that use different formats. For example, on the Clipboard you can store a Paintbrush picture, unformatted text, or a document in Word for Windows format.

When you use the Copy command to place information onto the Clipboard, the source application sends the information in more than one format. When you paste the information from the Clipboard, the destination application selects a format that it can use.

You can change the format that the destination application selects from the Clipboard by using the Paste Special command. For example, you might select a particular format if you know that people using the destination document have an application that can read only one format. When you choose the Paste Special command, a dialog box appears, listing other available formats for the information currently on the Clipboard, with the default format for the Paste command selected. You can select a different format and then choose the Paste button to paste or embed the object, or the Paste Link button to link it. (With some formats, choosing the Paste button may paste the object rather than embed it.)

Choosing the Paste button from the Paste Special dialog box without selecting a different format is the same as choosing the Paste command directly from the Edit menu.

Note Not all applications provide the Paste Special command. Write and Cardfile, both applications that support object linking and embedding, provide this command as described. Check your application's documentation to see how the Paste Special command is used.

Using Object Packager

There is another way to embed or link objects. Instead of embedding or linking the object in the form in which it was created, you can use Object Packager, an application in the Accessories group, to embed an icon that represents the object. This icon is called a *package*. A package can contain either an embedded object or a link to a document, but a package itself is always embedded.

A package has the same properties as any embedded object. When you choose a package, the object it contains is displayed (as in the case of text or a Paintbrush object) or played (as in the case of a sound object).

For example, suppose you are writing a report that refers to survey results on your topic. You want the survey results to be available to those who are interested, but easy to skip over for those who are not. Placing the results as a package in the context of your report makes the information easily accessible but not actually part of the text. To view the survey results, you simply open the package by choosing it.

Object Packager is also useful if you've embedded or linked a range of spreadsheet cells into a text document. You can package the cells so that they appear as an icon instead of as a range of cells within your text.

You can use Object Packager to:

- Package information into an object so that you can embed it in a destination document.
- Package an MS-DOS command line into an object so that it can be embedded and run from within a destination document.
- Customize the icon and label of the packaged object.

For more information about Object Packager, see Help for Object Packager.

MS-DOS Applications

MS-DOS-based applications are designed to run with MS-DOS but not specifically with Windows. Most MS-DOS-based applications can run with Windows nonetheless. These applications are also sometimes referred to as non-Windows applications.

To run an MS-DOS-based application in the most efficient way, you may need to supply Windows with more information about the application. You do this by using a *program information file (PIF)*. A PIF contains information about an MS-DOS-based application, such as how much memory it needs and how it uses various system components.

Windows provides PIFs for many common MS-DOS-based applications, in addition to a default PIF with settings that work for most applications. If Windows does not provide a PIF and the settings in the default file do not work with your application, you need to create a PIF. You do this by using PIF Editor, an application in the Main group.

This chapter explains what you need to know about setting up and running MS-DOS-based applications, describes how to use PIFs, and introduces PIF Editor. For more information about PIF Editor and all its options, see Help for PIF Editor.

Setting Up an MS-DOS Application

You set up an MS-DOS-based application to run with Windows just as you would other applications, by using Program Manager, File Manager, or Windows Setup. Regardless of which method you use, Windows sets up a PIF for the application. This section describes using the Setup program. For information about using Program Manager or File Manager to set up an application, see “Creating a Program Item” in Chapter 5, “Application Basics.”

When you run the Setup program to install Windows, you can choose to have Setup search your hard disk for applications you have installed and create a PIF and an icon for each application. Setup gets the information it needs for each PIF by using information provided by Windows.

When you set up an MS-DOS-based application after Windows is set up, the Windows Setup program searches your hard disk for a PIF to use with the application. If it finds one, it sets up the application and the PIF to work together. If Setup doesn't find a PIF and there is no information available to create one, Windows uses the default PIF, named `_DEFAULT.PIF`, when you start the application.

► **To set up an MS-DOS-based application after Windows is set up**

1. In the Main group, choose the Windows Setup icon.
2. From the Options menu, choose Set Up Applications.
3. Select one of the two option buttons, depending on whether you want the Setup program to search your hard disk for applications or whether you want to specify an application. Then choose the OK button.
4. If you selected Search For Applications, a dialog box appears, prompting you to select the MS-DOS path or individual drives that Setup should search. Select Path to search the directories specified by the **path** command in your `AUTOEXEC.BAT` file. Select a drive letter to search the entire contents of a hard disk. After making your selection, choose the Search Now button.

At the completion of the search, Setup displays a dialog box listing the applications found. From the list of applications, select those you want to set up, and then select the Add button, or select Add All to set up all applications listed. Then choose the OK button.

5. If you selected to specify an application, a dialog box appears. Type the application's path (the drive letter and directory where the program file is located) and filename, or choose the Browse button to select from a list of applications. Then choose the OK button in the Setup Applications dialog box. For each application you select, Setup adds a program-item icon to the Applications group. If there is no Applications group, Setup creates one.
6. If Setup detects a naming conflict or multiple PIFs for one application, it displays a dialog box prompting you to specify the name of the application or PIF you want to use.

If Setup doesn't find a PIF, it searches for the information it needs to create one. If it finds the information, a dialog box appears, asking whether you want Windows to use the information. When you choose the Yes button, a PIF is created.

Using Program Information Files

After you set up your application, you can start using it with Windows. If the application doesn't perform properly, you probably need to modify the application's PIF. The following procedure describes how to do this. (You can also use this procedure to create a PIF.)

Make sure you are modifying the PIF that Windows is using with your application. Sometimes you can determine this by using the Properties command on the File menu in Program Manager. The PIF is specified in the Command Line box in the Program Item Properties dialog box.

Caution Changing PIF settings can affect how, and even whether, the application runs.

► **To modify a PIF**

1. In the Main group, choose the PIF Editor icon. Depending on which mode Windows is running in, PIF Editor displays an untitled PIF that contains either standard-mode or enhanced-mode settings. (To create a PIF, you can change these options and then name the new file by using the Save As command on the File menu.)
2. From the File menu, choose Open. In the File Name box, type the name of the PIF you want to open, or select a PIF from the list. Then choose the OK button.
3. Change any options that are appropriate for your application. To receive Help for a selected option, press F1 while using PIF Editor.
4. From the File menu, choose Save. Use the same base filename as the application. For example, if the application filename (program file) is WP.EXE, use WP.PIF as the name of the PIF.
5. From the File menu, choose Exit.

Using a Manufacturer-Supplied PIF

Some software manufacturers provide a PIF for an application so that you can run the application with Windows. To determine whether a PIF has been supplied, contact the software manufacturer or search the application disks for a file that uses the same base filename as the application and has a .PIF extension. If you have PIFs from both Windows and the software manufacturer, use the PIF supplied by the manufacturer.

To use a PIF supplied with an application, copy the file to the directory where the application's files are located or the directory where you set up Windows. Then create a program item in Program Manager so that you can run the application from its PIF. For more information, see "Creating a Program Item" in Chapter 5, "Application Basics."

Using the Default PIF

The `_DEFAULT.PIF` file is located in your Windows directory. This PIF contains settings that work with most MS-DOS-based applications. Windows uses the `_DEFAULT.PIF` file when there is no other PIF available for your application.

Because Windows might use the default PIF with more than one application, do not modify it; however, you can use the default PIF as a starting point for creating a PIF. Use the procedure for modifying a PIF described earlier in this chapter to open the `_DEFAULT.PIF` file and modify it. Then save it by using the Save As command and specifying a new filename. Your default PIF remains unchanged.

Using Multiple PIFs for an Application

You can create more than one PIF for an application if you run an application under different circumstances. For example, you can specify in a PIF how much expanded (EMS) memory an application has access to. By using two PIFs, you could give an application access to a large amount of EMS memory when you are using large data files but limit its use of memory when you are working with smaller files.

To start the application, you choose the program-item icon for the PIF that contains the settings you want.

► To set up two PIFs for an application

1. Create two PIFs. For more information, see the procedure for modifying a PIF earlier in this chapter.
2. For each PIF, indicate the appropriate settings. In the example just cited, for one PIF you would set the EMS Memory: KB Limit setting to -1, which allocates as much expanded memory to the application as it requests. For the other PIF, you would set the EMS Memory: KB Limit setting to 1024K. (These options are available only in 386 enhanced mode.)
3. Save each PIF with a unique filename.
4. Create program-item icons for both PIFs in Program Manager, giving each a unique label. For more information, see "Creating a Program Item" in Chapter 5, "Application Basics."

Note Because you want to start the application from its PIF in this case, be sure to specify the PIF filename, not the program file, in the Command Line box.

You then can choose either program-item icon to start the application.

Starting an MS-DOS Application

You start an MS-DOS–based application from Program Manager by choosing the application’s program-item icon, or from File Manager by choosing its program file, a document associated with a program file, or the application’s program information file (PIF). For detailed information about ways to start an application, see Chapter 5, “Application Basics.”

When you start an application from Program Manager or File Manager, Windows searches for a PIF with the same base filename. It searches directories in the following order: the directory where the application’s files are located, the current working directory, the Windows directory, the SYSTEM subdirectory of the Windows directory, and then the directories specified by the **path** command in the AUTOEXEC.BAT file.

You can also run MS-DOS–based applications, such as memory-resident programs (TSRs), by using MS-DOS Prompt. However, when you start an MS-DOS–based application from the command prompt, the DOSPRMPT.PIF file is used instead of the application’s PIF. If your application requires unique PIF settings and has its own PIF, start the application from Program Manager or File Manager.

Working with MS-DOS Applications in 386 Enhanced Mode

386

This section describes features that you use only when you are running MS-DOS–based applications in 386 enhanced mode. To determine which mode Windows is running in, choose the About command from the Help menu in Program Manager. The mode is displayed near the bottom of the dialog box.

Running an MS-DOS Application in a Window

You can run most MS-DOS–based applications in a window when Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode. You cannot run an MS-DOS–based application in a window if Windows is running in standard mode. When the application is running in a window, you can move and size the window, and you can share

information with other applications by using the Clipboard. For more information about using the Clipboard with MS-DOS-based applications, see “Copying and Pasting Information by Using the Clipboard” later in this chapter.

- ▶ **To switch an MS-DOS-based application between a window and a full screen**
 - While working with the MS-DOS-based application, press ALT+ENTER.
If the application was running in a full screen, it now appears in a window. If the application was running in a window, it now appears in a full screen.

Tip You can specify that you want an application to run in a window every time you start it. To do this, select the Windowed option button in the application's PIF.

Changing Settings for a Running Application

You can make temporary changes to the way an MS-DOS-based application runs. Your changes stay in effect until you quit the application.

- ▶ **To change settings for a running application**
 1. If your MS-DOS-based application is running in a full screen, press CTRL+ESC to reduce it to an icon, or press ALT+ENTER to run it in a window.
 2. From the Control menu, choose Settings. A dialog box appears, displaying the settings you can modify.

Tip To both run the application in a window and open the Control menu in one step, press ALT+SPACEBAR. (If your application uses ALT+SPACEBAR for another function, you cannot open the Control menu by pressing ALT+SPACEBAR.)

3. Change the appropriate setting(s), and then choose the OK button. The options (Display, Tasking, Priority, and Terminate) are described in the following sections.

For information about using the Control menu, see Chapter 4, “Windows Basics.”

Display Options

Use the Display options to specify whether an application appears in a window or in a full screen.

Use	To
Window	Run the application in a window.
Full Screen	Run the application in a full screen.

Tasking Options

Use the Tasking options to control how an application shares system resources with other applications. You can select one or both of the following check boxes.

Use	To
Exclusive	Suspend other applications while the application is the active one. (If the application is running in a window, Windows-based applications continue to run, but other MS-DOS-based applications are suspended.)
Background	Run the application in the background while you work with other applications. (This application is suspended when an application that has the Exclusive option set is the active application.)

You can also set these options in the application's PIF by using PIF Editor. For more information about these and other PIF Editor options, see Help for PIF Editor.

Priority Options

Use the Priority options to specify how much processor time the application should receive, relative to other applications. Giving the application a high priority makes it run faster than applications with lower priorities; conversely, giving it a lower priority slows it down.

Use	To
Foreground	Control how fast the application runs, relative to other applications, when it is the active application. You can type a value from 0 to 10000; the default foreground priority is 100.
Background	Control how fast the application runs, relative to other applications, when it is not the active application. For this option to take effect, you must also select the Background check box under Tasking Options. You can type a value from 0 to 10000; the default Background priority is 50.

You can also set these options in the application's PIF by using PIF Editor. For more information about these and other PIF Editor options, see Help for PIF Editor.

Terminate Option

Use the Terminate button to quit an MS-DOS-based application when you cannot use the usual methods from within the application—for example, when the application does not respond to the commands you type.

Caution Use the Terminate button only as a last resort, because it can result in lost data. If you cannot open the Control menu in your MS-DOS-based application, you can press CTRL+ALT+DEL to quit the application. Windows displays a message confirming the action. Press ENTER to quit the application.

Changing the Size of the Font

When you are running an MS-DOS-based application in a window, you can change the size of the font displayed in the window by using the Fonts command on the Control menu.

► **To change the size of the font**

1. If your MS-DOS-based application is running in a full screen, press CTRL+ESC to reduce it to an icon, or press ALT+ENTER to run it in a window.
2. From the Control menu, choose Fonts.
3. Select a font size. The Selected Font box displays the font size.
4. If you want to use this font size whenever you run this MS-DOS-based application in a window, select the Save Settings On Exit check box.
5. Choose the OK button.

Copying and Pasting Information by Using the Clipboard

The methods you use to copy and paste information between MS-DOS-based applications are different from those you use with Windows-based applications. With MS-DOS-based applications, you use commands on the Control menu.

► **To copy selected information from an MS-DOS-based application**

1. If the MS-DOS-based application you want to copy from is running in a full screen, press ALT+ENTER to run it in a window.
2. From the Control menu, choose Edit.
3. From the Edit cascading menu, choose Mark.
4. Select the information you want to copy.
5. Click using the right mouse button, or press ENTER, to copy the selected information onto the Clipboard. You can also choose the Copy command from the Edit menu.

The method you use to paste information into an MS-DOS-based application depends on whether the application is running in a window or in a full screen.

► **To paste information into an MS-DOS application running in a window**

1. Make sure the information you want to paste is on the Clipboard. To view the contents of the Clipboard, choose the Clipboard Viewer icon in the Main group.
2. Switch to the destination application.
3. Place the insertion point where you want the information from the Clipboard to appear.
4. Open the application's Control menu.
5. From the Control menu, choose Edit.
6. From the Edit cascading menu, choose Paste.

The following procedure can be used in either standard or 386 enhanced mode.

► **To paste information into an MS-DOS application running in a full screen**

1. Make sure the information you want to paste is on the Clipboard. To view the contents of the Clipboard, choose the Clipboard Viewer icon in the Main group.
2. Switch to the destination application.
3. Place the insertion point where you want the information from the Clipboard to appear.
4. Press ALT+SPACEBAR to open the application's Control menu.

Note If Windows is running in standard mode, or if your application uses ALT+SPACEBAR for another function, you cannot open the Control menu by pressing ALT+SPACEBAR. Press CTRL+ESC. The application will then appear as an icon near the bottom of the Windows desktop. (Task List will also appear.) Click the icon to open the application's Control menu.

5. From the Control menu, choose Edit.
6. From the Edit cascading menu, choose Paste.

Giving an Application Exclusive Use of Resources

You can specify that an application has exclusive use of system resources when it is the active application. For example, you might want to do this to ensure that an application runs as quickly as possible, without being slowed down by applications running in the background. Also, some applications use hardware in such a way that they cannot run at the same time as other applications.

There are two ways to give an application exclusive use of resources:

- Use PIF Editor to open the application's PIF, and then select the Exclusive check box. When you use this setting, no other applications can run when that application is active. This setting takes effect every time you start the application.
- If the application is running in a window or as an icon, use the Settings command on the application's Control menu. Select the Exclusive check box (under Tasking Options). The application gets exclusive use of resources only until you quit the application. The next time you start the application, the setting is not in effect.

Running an Application in the Background

You can run an application in the background (calculating numbers or reading a large file, for example) while another application is in the foreground.

There are two ways to run an application in the background:

- Use PIF Editor to open the application's PIF, and then select the Background check box. This setting takes effect every time you run the application.
- If the application is running in a window or as an icon, use the Settings command on the application's Control menu. Select the Background check box (under Tasking Options). The application runs in the background only until you quit the application.

Note If an MS-DOS-based application is running in the foreground and the Exclusive check box is selected in its PIF, other applications cannot run in the background (even if the Background check box is selected in their PIFs).

Using Memory-Resident Programs

If you want a memory-resident program (TSR) to be available to all Windows-based and MS-DOS-based applications, start it before you run Windows. The program is then available to all applications you run with Windows; however, the memory it uses is not available to other applications. In general, most memory-resident programs are started from your CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT file. (These files are located in the root directory of your startup drive.) The files indicate to MS-DOS which commands and programs to run when you start your computer.

If only one application requires a memory-resident program, you might not want to start the program from the CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Instead, you can create an MS-DOS batch program that starts the memory-resident

program and then the application. You can run that batch program from Windows. For more information about using batch programs with Windows, see your MS-DOS documentation.

Running Pop-up Programs

A pop-up program is a memory-resident program that is loaded into memory but isn't visible until you press a certain key combination. You should start pop-up programs, such as Borland SideKick, only after starting Windows. By doing so, you can switch to and from that program as you would any MS-DOS-based application (rather than by using its "pop-up" shortcut key), and the pop-up program can share memory with Windows and other applications.

► To use a pop-up program with Windows

1. If necessary, create a PIF for the pop-up program.
2. Start the pop-up program as you would any application—for example, by setting it up as a program item in Program Manager and then double-clicking its icon. When you start the pop-up program, Windows displays a message confirming that the program is loaded.

For information about setting up and starting applications, see Chapter 5, "Application Basics."

3. Press the appropriate key combination to make the program appear on your screen.

A few pop-up programs require a key combination that is usually reserved for Windows (for example, ALT+ESC). In this case, you can edit the PIF for the pop-up program, selecting the appropriate key-combination check box in the Reserve Shortcut Keys area in the Advanced Options window. When you press the key combination, the pop-up program appears instead of the usual Windows function being performed.

Note You can switch to and from a pop-up program by using Task List (press CTRL+ESC) rather than by pressing the key combination that usually displays the program.

Customizing Windows

After setting up Windows, you may want to change some of your system settings. For example, you may want to use a different color scheme or add some fonts. This chapter describes the following tasks that you can perform to customize Windows:

- Changing your desktop colors, pattern, or wallpaper
- Using a screen saver
- Adding and removing fonts
- Changing your network settings
- Using sounds and setting MIDI options
- Changing your code page

For information about other customization tasks, see “More Ways to Customize Windows” at the end of this chapter.

Customizing Desktop Colors

By using the Colors option in Control Panel, you can customize the colors used for your *desktop*, the area of the screen in which windows, icons, and dialog boxes appear. You can change the color of an individual screen element or several elements at once. You can also create your own colors.

Choosing a Color Scheme

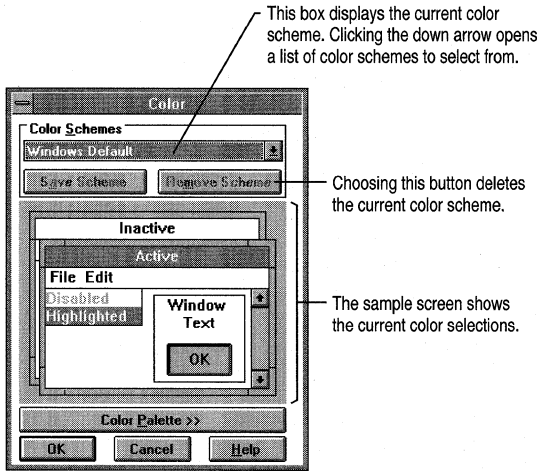
Windows provides several predefined *color schemes*. A color scheme is a collection of complementary colors. Some color schemes include only *solid colors*; others also include *nonsolid colors*.

A solid color is directly supported by your display adapter. Video graphics adapters (VGAs) support 16 solid colors, and 256-color adapters support 20 solid colors. Both types of adapters support hundreds of nonsolid colors. A nonsolid color is produced by a pattern of colored dots.

► **To choose a color scheme**

- In the Control Panel window, choose the Color icon. In the Color dialog box, select the color scheme you want to use, and then choose the OK button.

For help with the Color dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.



When choosing a color scheme, note the following:

- Using a color scheme that has only solid colors (such as Windows Default) may increase the speed at which Windows redraws your screen.
- If you are using a plasma display adapter, you might want to use the Plasma Power Saver color scheme, which uses darker colors that require less power.
- If you are using a liquid crystal display adapter (LCD), colors may appear in reverse video. In this case, you might want to use one of the color schemes whose names start with LCD.
- Control Panel uses the solid color closest to the selected nonsolid color for several screen elements. This will be reflected in the sample screen.

Note Some LCD monitors have switches you can use to set the screen display so that it does not appear in reverse video. For other computers with LCD monitors, you need to press a key to change the screen display. In this case, you may need to quit Windows before you can change the display.

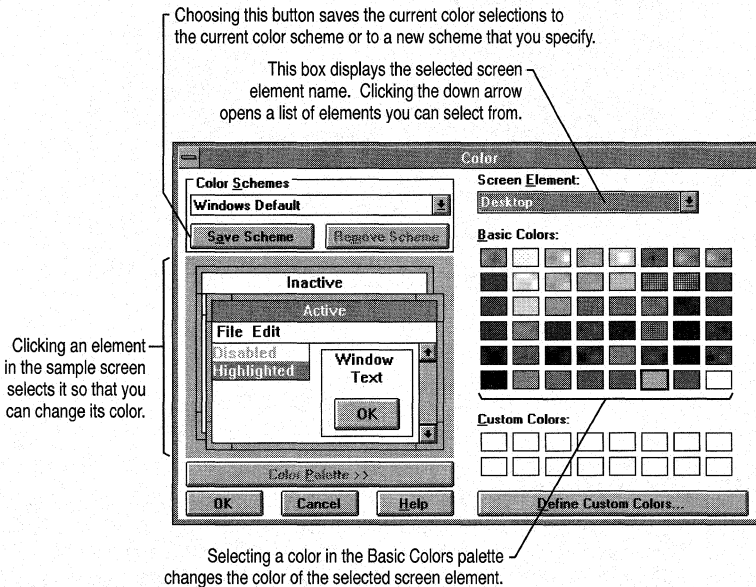
If you use only a few color schemes, you can shorten the list of selections by removing schemes. The only color scheme you cannot remove is Windows Default.

Changing the Color of Screen Elements

You can change the color of one or more *screen elements* (parts of a window) and then save the changes you make.

► To change the color of a screen element

- In the Color dialog box, choose the Color Palette button. The dialog box expands as shown. Select the colors you want for particular screen elements, and then choose the OK button.



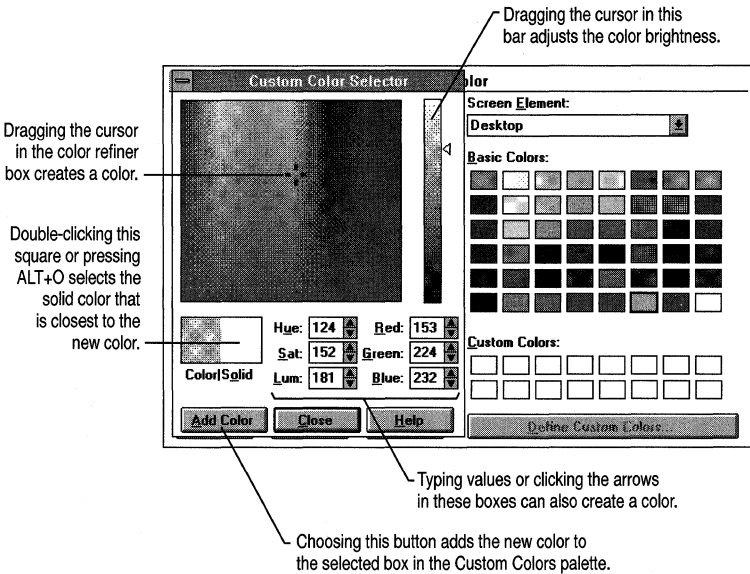
Creating Your Own Colors

You can create up to 16 additional colors at a time and use them in your color schemes.

► **To create your own color**

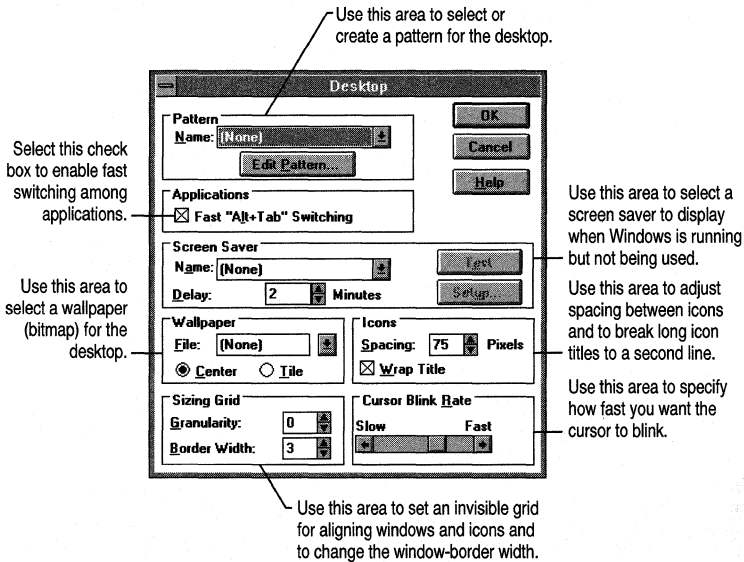
- In the expanded Color dialog box, choose the Define Custom Colors button. In the Custom Color Selector dialog box, create colors, and then choose the Add Color button to add them to the Custom Colors palette. Then choose the Close button.

For help with the Custom Color Selector dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.



Changing Desktop Settings

By using the Desktop option in Control Panel, you can change the screen background and customize the way that windows and icons appear on your screen. When you choose the Desktop icon, the Desktop dialog box appears.



This section describes procedures for using patterns, wallpaper, and screen savers. For information about the other desktop options, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the Desktop dialog box.

Displaying Desktop Patterns

When you first start Windows, the desktop is a solid color. You can replace the color with a predesigned desktop pattern or, if you are using a mouse, you can create a pattern of your own.

The background color for the pattern is the same as the Desktop color. The foreground color (the dots that make up the pattern) is the same as the color of the Window Text screen element. For information about setting these colors, see "Customizing Desktop Colors" earlier in this chapter.

Note If the Desktop and Window Text colors are the same, you will not see a pattern on your desktop.

► **To choose a pattern**

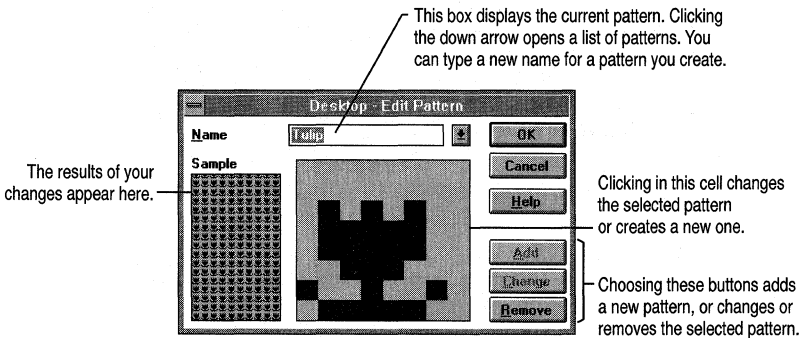
- Under Pattern in the Desktop dialog box, open the Name list, select a pattern, and then choose the OK button.

If you are using a mouse, you can change an existing desktop pattern or create one and save it with a new name. You cannot change a pattern by using the keyboard.

► **To change or create a pattern**

- In the Desktop dialog box, choose the Edit Pattern button. In the Desktop–Edit Pattern dialog box, create or edit a pattern, and then choose the OK button.

For help with the Desktop–Edit Pattern dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.



The pattern you define is repeated as many times as necessary to completely fill the background.

If you use only one or two patterns, you can shorten the list of selections by removing unneeded patterns.

Displaying Custom Wallpaper

Instead of a desktop color or pattern, you can display a *wallpaper*. You can use any bitmap file that has a .BMP extension, even an elaborate one such as a scanned color photograph. If you select both a wallpaper and a pattern, the wallpaper appears as your desktop background. The pattern appears as the background used to highlight icon titles on your desktop.

You can also use Paintbrush or another drawing application to produce .BMP files.

► **To choose a bitmap to display as wallpaper**

1. Under Wallpaper in the Desktop dialog box, open the File list, and then select a bitmap. Or, in the File box, type the full path for the bitmap if it is not in your Windows directory.
2. Select the Center or Tile option button, and then choose the OK button.

The Center option positions the bitmap at the center of the desktop. The Tile option repeats the bitmap as many times as necessary to cover the desktop. This is useful if you are using small bitmaps.

If the original bitmap is too large to fit on the screen or takes up too much memory, Windows does not display it.

Note Windows uses more memory when displaying wallpaper than when displaying a solid color or a pattern on the desktop. If you receive a memory error when running an application, you can try changing to a color or pattern, or you can select None in the Pattern or Wallpaper box.

► **To remove a wallpaper from the list**

- Delete the bitmap file from your Windows directory.

Using a Screen Saver

If you want, you can select a *screen saver*, a moving pattern or bitmap, to appear on your screen after your computer has not been used for a specified amount of time. Screen savers can reduce the wear on your screen and provide some security for your system. Windows provides several screen savers.

► **To choose a screen saver**

1. Under Screen Saver in the Desktop dialog box, open the Name list, and then select a screen saver.
2. To see how the screen saver looks, choose the Test button. To end the test, move the mouse or press any key.
3. In the Delay box, click the up or down arrow to increase or decrease the number of minutes of inactivity you want to elapse before the screen saver appears. Or type a number larger than zero.
4. If you want to customize the screen saver, choose the Setup button. (If the screen saver cannot be customized, a message notifies you that there are no options to set.)

5. In the setup dialog box for the screen saver, change any settings you want.
If you want to specify a password, select the Password Protected check box, and then choose the Set Password button. Complete the Change Password dialog box, and then choose the OK button twice to return to the Desktop dialog box.
For information about the setup or Change Password dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.
6. Choose the OK button.

► **To return to Windows when the screen saver is active**

- Move the mouse or press any key. If you have specified a password, a dialog box appears, in which you must type the password before you can return to Windows. This ensures that unauthorized users do not have access to your work.

Note If an MS-DOS-based application is the active application, the screen saver does not appear, even after the specified number of minutes have elapsed. Windows screen savers will not appear if Windows is not running.

Using Fonts

A *font*, or typeface, is a collection of characters—letters, numerals, symbols, and punctuation marks—that have common characteristics. Fonts have various sizes and styles. Font sizes indicate the height of a character and are measured in points, a point equaling 1/72 of an inch. Font styles include bold and italic.

Choosing the right font, font size, and font style can help you create whatever look you want for a document—professional, highly graphical, or draft quality. The font size and style also determine how much text can fit on a page.

Using Windows Fonts and Printer Fonts

When you set up Windows on your computer, several kinds of fonts are installed. These fonts include:

- Screen fonts, which are used by Windows to display information such as the text that appears in application windows and dialog boxes. Screen fonts come in predefined point sizes. Screen fonts also print on some printers (for example, dot-matrix printers).

- Plotter fonts, which are scalable to any point size and are most often used for displaying information on the screen and for plotting graphics with pen plotters. Plotter fonts can also be used with some dot-matrix printers; however, the print quality may not be as good.
- TrueType fonts, which are scalable to any point size and look the same on the screen as they do printed. For information about TrueType fonts, see “Using TrueType Fonts” later in this chapter.

Printers include built-in fonts for printing. These fonts are known as *printer fonts*. The number of printer fonts that a printer supports varies according to the capabilities of the printer. Dot-matrix and some laser printers include one or two printer fonts; PostScript-compatible printers include several printer fonts. When you install a printer, the printer fonts appear in the Font list of the Fonts dialog box in applications such as Write.

Using Cartridge Fonts and Soft Fonts

You can also use soft fonts and cartridge fonts with your printer. To use soft fonts, you need to install them by using the installation program that comes with your fonts package. If an installation program was not provided with your fonts package and you are using a Hewlett-Packard LaserJet or DeskJet (PCL) printer, you can use the Font Installer program provided with Windows.

To use cartridge fonts, you need to insert one or more font cartridges into the cartridge slots on your printer. You might also need to install them, if support for the fonts is not built into the printer driver for your printer. If you need to use Font Installer, you can do so while setting printing options. For more information about setting printing options and using Font Installer, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the Printer Setup or Font Installer dialog box. For more information about printer drivers, see Chapter 8, “Print Manager.”

Viewing Printer, Soft, and Cartridge Fonts on the Screen

Because various printers and screens display information at different resolutions, many printer drivers and cartridge- and soft-font packages include matching screen fonts so that the fonts look the same on your screen as they do printed. If matching screen fonts are not included with your font cartridge or soft-font package, check with your printer or font manufacturer to determine whether they are available.

If you use a cartridge, soft, or printer font to format text, and no matching screen font is available, one of the screen, plotter, or TrueType fonts supplied with Windows is used to display text on the screen. Though the font on the screen may not look exactly like the printed font, the substitute font creates line lengths and page breaks on the screen similar to those in the printed document.

Using TrueType Fonts

If you use TrueType fonts in your documents, Windows and all Windows-based applications display the fonts on the screen exactly as they appear when printed—there is no need to install matching screen fonts. In addition, when you use TrueType fonts, your documents become more portable: The fonts look the same printed on different printers, as long as you use the same application and print at the same resolution.

Note If you print at a different resolution or print a document from an older application, line and page breaks might change.

Several TrueType fonts are installed automatically when you set up Windows. They are immediately available to your printer and to the applications (such as Write and Paintbrush) included with Windows. In these applications, TrueType fonts appear with a TT symbol next to them in the Font list in the Fonts dialog box. If you purchase additional TrueType fonts, you can add them to Windows and your Windows-based applications by using the Fonts option in Control Panel.

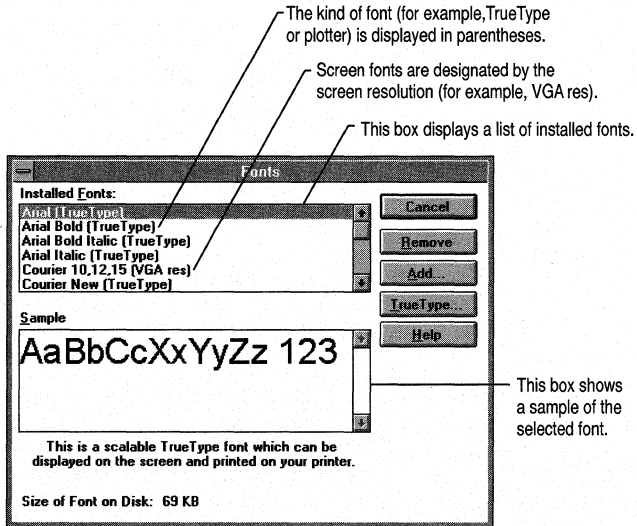
Adding and Removing Fonts

When you install a printer driver, any screen fonts matching the printer fonts that your printer supports are also installed. If you are using cartridge or soft fonts, your font manufacturer usually supplies a program for installing screen fonts. (The program that installs the cartridge or soft fonts may install the screen fonts automatically.) If no program is provided for installing screen fonts, you can use the Fonts option in Control Panel to install them. You can also use the Fonts option in Control Panel to set TrueType font options.

If you find that you use only TrueType fonts in your documents, you can use the Fonts option to prevent all other fonts—screen, plotter, and printer fonts—from appearing in the font lists of your Windows-based applications.

► **To add a font and set TrueType options**

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the Fonts icon. The Fonts dialog box appears.



2. Choose the Add button.
3. Open the Drives list, and then select the drive that contains the fonts you want to add. Then select the directory where the fonts are located.
4. From the List Of Fonts box, select the fonts you want to add. You can extend the selection to add several fonts at once. Or, to add every font in the list, choose the Select All button.
5. If you have limited disk space, you can clear the Copy Fonts To Windows Directory check box. You can then use the fonts directly from the directory in which they are located, without copying them to your Windows directory. For example, this is useful if you are using a CD-ROM that contains hundreds of TrueType fonts.

If the fonts are located on a network or on a removable disk drive, it is recommended that you select the Copy Fonts To Windows Directory check box. This ensures that the fonts will always be available, even if the source drive is removed or the fonts are removed from the network.

6. Choose the OK button. Then choose the Close button, unless you want to set TrueType options.
7. To set TrueType options, choose the TrueType button in the Fonts dialog box.
8. To turn off TrueType fonts, clear the Enable TrueType Fonts check box. Or, to use TrueType fonts exclusively, select the Show Only TrueType Fonts In Applications check box. Then choose the OK button.
9. Any change you make to the Enable TrueType Fonts option does not take effect until you restart Windows. To restart, choose the Restart Now button.

Note Selecting the Show Only TrueType Fonts In Applications check box does not turn off non-TrueType fonts. It only prevents them from appearing in the fonts lists of your Windows-based applications. You can still use these applications to view and print documents that contain other fonts. Some applications do not support the listing of TrueType fonts exclusively. If you select the Show Only TrueType Fonts In Applications check box and no TrueType fonts appear in your application, do not use this option.

If you are no longer using a font, you can remove it. Removing fonts frees memory for use by your applications.

Caution The MS® Sans Serif font set is used for most Windows dialog boxes. Do not remove this font; if you do, the text in dialog boxes will be difficult to read.

► **To remove a font**

1. From the Installed Fonts list, select the font you want to remove, and then choose the Remove button.
2. If you want to delete the font files from your disk in addition to removing the fonts from memory, select the Delete Font File From Disk check box. Then choose the Yes button. Or, if you are removing several fonts at once, choose the Yes To All button.

Caution If you chose not to copy the fonts to your Windows directory (if you cleared the Copy Fonts To Windows Directory check box in the Add Fonts dialog box), do not select the Delete Font File From Disk check box. If you do, you may delete the fonts from their source disk, making them unavailable to anyone else.

Using Sound

Control Panel provides several options to control how sound works in Windows. By using these options, you can perform tasks such as assigning different sounds to system and application events. If you are using a sound device that has Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI) capabilities, you can specify MIDI settings for your device. If you are not using such a device, the MIDI Mapper icon does not appear in the Control Panel window.

To use sound in Windows, you should have a sound card installed that conforms to the Multimedia Personal Computer (MPC) specifications. To use MIDI sound capabilities, your sound card should include a built-in MIDI synthesizer, or you should have a synthesizer connected to the MIDI output port of your sound card. You also need to install the sound drivers that control your sound card and your MIDI devices. For information about installing and configuring drivers for your sound devices, see Chapter 13, “Configuring Hardware.”

Assigning Sounds to Events

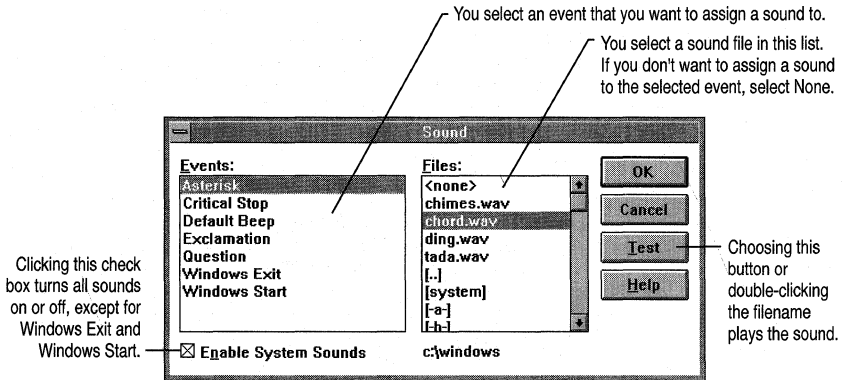
By using the Sound option in Control Panel, you can assign waveform sounds (stored in files that have the .WAV extension) to different application and system events. For example, you can select a sound to play whenever you start Windows. Other sounds play as specified by the application you are using. For example, some applications play the sound assigned to the Exclamation or Asterisk event whenever a warning message is displayed.

If you do not have a sound card that supports the waveform sound format, or if the sound driver is not configured properly, Windows uses only a warning beep when it encounters an error or when you attempt to do something your computer does not recognize.

► **To assign sounds to events**

- In the Control Panel window, choose the Sound icon. In the Sound dialog box, select which sounds you want to use for which events, and then choose the OK button.

For help with the Sound dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.



Changing MIDI Settings

If you are using a sound device, such as a synthesizer, that has Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI) capabilities, you can specify MIDI settings for your device.

Windows supports two standards for playing MIDI information that is generated by an application or stored in a MIDI file. These standards, the General MIDI guidelines and the Microsoft authoring guidelines for MIDI files, both include certain instrument patch settings and key assignments, as defined by the General MIDI specifications. However, they differ in the channel settings they require.

When you set up Windows, the Setup program installs MIDI setups that support both standards for playing MIDI information on common combinations of sound cards and synthesizers. These setups include key maps, patch maps, and channel settings that ensure that MIDI information plays accurately on your synthesizer. You can use the MIDI Mapper option in Control Panel to select a different MIDI

setup, create a new setup, or edit key assignments, patch maps, or channel mappings for an existing setup. This section describes how to select a MIDI setup. For information about how to edit or create a MIDI setup, see Help for Control Panel.

Caution To use MIDI Mapper, you should have a basic understanding of MIDI concepts and terminology. It is recommended that you not use MIDI Mapper to edit or create MIDI setups unless you are experienced with MIDI and understand the results of the changes you make.

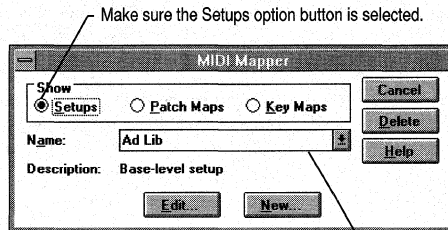
Selecting a MIDI Setup

If you are using an application, such as Media Player, that uses MIDI setups to play MIDI files, you need to select the MIDI setup for the synthesizer that will be playing the file.

► To select a MIDI setup

- In the Control Panel window, choose the MIDI Mapper icon. In the MIDI Mapper dialog box, select the name of the setup you want to use, and then choose the Close button.

For help with the MIDI Mapper dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.



Make sure the Setups option button is selected.

This box displays the current MIDI setup. Clicking the down arrow opens a list of setups to choose from.

The following table lists the MIDI setups provided with Windows and describes the setups you should use with your synthesizer and MIDI output port.

Use	For
Ad Lib	The Ad Lib or Ad Lib-compatible synthesizer included on your sound card. This setup uses channels 12–16 (base-level channels).
Ad Lib General	Same as for Ad Lib; however, this setup uses all 16 channels.
LAPC1	The Roland synthesizer included on your LAPC1 sound card. This setup uses all available LAPC1 channels.
MT32	Same as for LAPC1; however, this setup uses all available MT32 channels.
Proteus/1	The E-mu Systems Proteus/1 synthesizer connected to the Sound Blaster MIDI output port. This setup uses channels 1–10 (extended-level channels).
Proteus General	Same as for Proteus/1; however, this setup uses all 16 channels.
Extended MIDI	Any General MIDI synthesizer, such as the Roland Sound Canvas (SC-55), connected to the Sound Blaster MIDI output port. This setup uses channels 1–10 (extended-level channels). Use this setup to play MIDI files authored according to Microsoft guidelines.
General MIDI	Same as for Extended MIDI; however, this setup uses all 16 channels. Use this setup to play MIDI files authored according to General MIDI guidelines.

If you plan to play MIDI files authored according to General MIDI guidelines, use a “general” setup for your synthesizer. If you plan to play MIDI files authored according to Microsoft guidelines, use the other setup.

If you are using a synthesizer that is connected to a MIDI output port other than Sound Blaster or a Sound Blaster-compatible port, you need to edit the setup to change the port assignments. If you are using a synthesizer that is not included in the list, you may need to create a MIDI setup for it. For information about editing or creating MIDI setups, see Help for Control Panel.

Setting Network Options

If you installed a network when setting up Windows, the Control Panel window includes a Network icon. You can choose this icon to view information about your network or to specify settings available for your particular network.

When you choose the Network icon, a dialog box specific to your network appears. The following are some of the tasks you might be able to perform by using this dialog box:

- Signing on and off the network
- Changing user ID and password
- Sending messages to other network users
- Restoring network connections when you start Windows

For information about the tasks you can perform by using your network, see your network documentation and Help (if available) in the dialog box.

Changing the Code Page

In Windows, the Codepage setting determines the *character set* (the characters for the language you are using on your system) to use for your keyboard layout, for filenames that include extended characters, and for MS-DOS-based applications running in a window. When Windows is first set up on your system, Setup detects the code page used by MS-DOS and sets up Windows to use the same one. If you subsequently change your MS-DOS code page, you need to update the Codepage setting in Windows to match it.

You update the Codepage setting by using the Windows Setup program.

► To change to another code page

1. Quit Windows.
2. Change to your Windows directory, type **setup** at the command prompt, and then press ENTER.
3. In the System Information screen, select the Codepage setting (use the UP ARROW or DOWN ARROW key), and then press ENTER. A list of the available code pages appears.
4. Select the code page you want to use, and then press ENTER.
5. When the System Information screen appears, press ENTER again. Setup asks you to confirm that you want to change code pages. Press F3 to verify the change.
6. Setup prompts you for the disk containing the new code-page file.
If you are changing to a code page that you have used before, Setup asks you whether you want to use a new code-page driver or the one that is currently on

your computer. If you have an updated driver, press ESC; otherwise, press ENTER. Insert the disk or type the drive and directory where the driver file is located, and then press ENTER.

After Setup copies the file, you return to the command prompt. The new code page takes effect the next time you start Windows.

More Ways to Customize Windows

You can also use Control Panel and Windows Setup when you need to perform the following tasks:

- Setting up a network for use with Windows
- Customizing the mouse and other pointing devices
- Adjusting the keyboard speed
- Setting the system date and time
- Specifying international settings
- Creating and editing MIDI setups
- Adding and removing Windows components

Help for Windows Setup provides information about adding and removing Windows components and setting up a network for use with Windows. Help for Control Panel describes all other tasks in detail. Choose the Help button or press F1 while working in the dialog box for each Control Panel or Setup option.

Configuring Hardware

When you set up Windows, the Setup program installs the appropriate *drivers* for your hardware, based on your system configuration. A driver is a program that enables a specific piece of hardware (or *device*) to communicate with Windows. If you change your system configuration by adding a new device, you need to add a driver for it.

Generally, your device or hardware package includes a disk containing the appropriate Windows device driver. Or Windows may include the driver you need.

Although the device may be installed in or connected to your computer, Windows does not recognize a device until you install and configure the device driver.

This chapter describes how to install and change device drivers for your multimedia devices, display adapter, keyboard, and mouse. It also describes how to configure communications ports.

The Windows Driver Library

If you do not have a driver or if you want an updated driver for your device, contact your device manufacturer or check the Windows Driver Library (WDL), which contains device drivers made available after Windows was released. Device drivers are added to the WDL as they become available. If you have a modem, you can download WDL device drivers from network services, including CompuServe, GEnie, Microsoft OnLine, various user-group bulletin-board services (BBSs on the Association of PC User Groups, or APCUG, network), and the electronic downloading service maintained by Microsoft (206-936-6735). If you do not have a modem and are located in the United States, you can obtain disks by calling Microsoft Customer Support Services at 1-800-426-9400.

Methods for Installing Device Drivers

You can install device drivers after you have set up Windows, either by running the Setup program or by using Control Panel options. The method you use depends on the type of hardware you are adding or changing. For example, you can add a sound driver to your system by using Control Panel. If you want to change the resolution of your screen, you run Setup.

To install and configure a printer, you can use either the Printers option in Control Panel or the Printer Setup command in Print Manager. For instructions on how to install and configure a printer, see Chapter 8, "Print Manager."

Note Depending on the type of driver that you install or the settings that you change, you need to restart Windows or your computer in order for the new driver or changed settings to take effect.

Installing a Third-Party Device Driver

Windows provides drivers for common display adapters, mice, keyboards, and sound cards. If Windows does not supply a driver for your device, or if you are updating to a newer version of the driver, you may need to install a driver provided by your device manufacturer (*third-party driver*).

The driver disks that you receive from your device manufacturer should include an OEMSETUP.INF file. This file supplies Windows with setup information that specifies the driver files on the disk and any additional files (such as font files) the driver requires.

If your driver disks include an OEMSETUP.INF file, you can use Setup or Control Panel to install the driver. If the driver disks do not include this file, you need to follow the instructions supplied by your device manufacturer to install the driver.

Installing and Configuring Multimedia Drivers

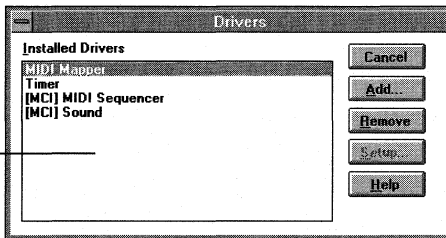
You can use the Drivers option in Control Panel to install, configure, and remove device drivers that support multimedia devices, such as sound cards, synthesizers, audio compact-disc players, and videodisc players.

Note To install an updated version of a multimedia driver, you must first remove the old driver from your system.

► **To install a multimedia device driver**

1. In the Main group, choose the Control Panel icon.
2. In the Control Panel window, choose the Drivers icon. The Drivers dialog box appears.

This box displays a list of multimedia drivers already installed in your computer.



3. Choose the Add button.
4. In the list, select the driver you want to install, and then choose the OK button. (If your device is not listed, select Unlisted Or Updated Driver.)
5. Insert the requested disk in drive A, and then choose the OK button.

Or type the drive letter and directory name (for example, **d:\drivers**) where the driver is located, and then choose the OK button.

(You can also use the Browse button to locate and select the drive and directory where the driver is located. When you are finished using the Browse dialog box, choose the OK button.)

If you selected Unlisted Or Updated Driver, another dialog box appears, listing the drivers on the disk. Select the driver you want to install, and then choose the OK button.

6. When you install a multimedia driver, Windows installs other related multimedia drivers at the same time. If the drivers require additional settings, a setup dialog box appears for each driver. Select the settings required by the driver, and then choose the OK button.

Note Make sure that the settings you specify do not conflict with the settings used by other devices installed in your system, such as a mouse or network adapter. See the documentation for your devices, including your multimedia device, for information about their settings.

7. New or changed multimedia-driver settings do not take effect until you restart Windows. To restart, choose the Restart Now button.

If you are no longer using a device, you can remove its driver.

Caution The multimedia device drivers that are automatically installed during Setup are required by your system (these are the drivers displayed when you first open the Drivers dialog box). If you remove one of these drivers, your system may not work properly.

► **To remove a multimedia driver**

1. In the Installed Drivers list, select the driver, and then choose the Remove button.
2. To completely remove the driver from memory, you need to restart Windows. To restart, choose the Restart Now button.

Removing a multimedia driver from the Installed Drivers list does not delete the driver file from your hard disk. If you need to use the same multimedia device later, you can add its driver again.

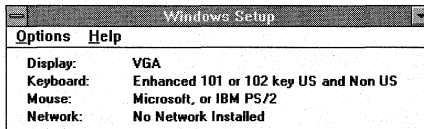
Changing Your Mouse, Keyboard, or Display Driver

You might want to add a mouse to your system, upgrade your display adapter to use a higher resolution, or install a new keyboard driver. You can do so by running Setup from within Windows.

Note If a driver is in use (for example, your display driver), and you want to update it to a newer version of the same driver, you need to quit Windows and then run Setup from MS-DOS. For more information, see the following section, "Updating a Driver Currently in Use."

► **To change your mouse, keyboard, or display driver from within Windows**

1. Be sure your hardware is set up to match the setting to which you are changing. Check the documentation for your device.
2. In the Main group, choose the Windows Setup icon. The Windows Setup window appears, listing your current hardware settings.



3. From the Options menu, choose Change System Settings.
4. Open the list for the device that you want to change, select the driver you want, and then choose the OK button.

If your hardware is not listed or if you are updating a driver that appears on the list (rather than installing a new one), scroll to the bottom of the list, and then select Other. Remember that a driver you are updating must not currently be in use by Windows.

If you are installing a new driver or updating to a newer version, Setup requests that you insert in drive A a Windows disk or the disk that comes with your new mouse, display adapter, or keyboard. Insert the disk, or type the drive letter and directory where the device driver is located, and then choose the OK button.

If you selected Other, Setup displays a list of drivers on the disk. Select the appropriate device driver, and then choose the OK button. You may be prompted for additional disks if more than one disk was provided by the hardware manufacturer. You might also be prompted for specific Windows disks. Setup then copies the appropriate files to your Windows SYSTEM subdirectory and displays the updated list of your hardware.

5. Choose the OK button. A dialog box appears that contains a Restart Windows button and may contain a Reboot button.
6. If no Reboot button appears, choose the Restart Windows button.

If the Reboot button appears, make sure there are no disks in any drive, and then choose the Reboot button. Your system restarts. Then restart Windows.

Note If the driver you install for your keyboard, display adapter, or mouse prevents Windows from running correctly, you need to run Setup from MS-DOS to install the correct driver. For more information, see the following section, "Updating a Driver Currently in Use."

Updating a Driver Currently in Use

To update a driver that is being used by Windows, you must quit Windows and then run Setup from MS-DOS.

Note Setup will not run from MS-DOS Prompt within Windows.

- ▶ **To install an updated mouse, keyboard, or display driver**
 1. Quit Windows.
 2. Change to your Windows directory, type **setup** at the command prompt, and then press ENTER. The System Information screen appears.
 3. Select the setting for the driver you want to update (use the UP ARROW or DOWN ARROW key), and then press ENTER. A screen listing the available drivers appears.
 4. Scroll to the bottom of the list (use the UP ARROW or DOWN ARROW key), select Other, and then press ENTER.
 5. Insert the disk containing the updated driver, or type the path of the driver file, and then press ENTER. You return to the command prompt. The new driver is used the next time you start Windows.

Configuring Communications Ports

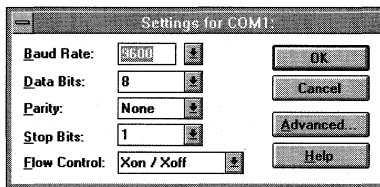
You can specify the communications settings for each *serial port* on your system by using the Ports option in Control Panel. You use serial ports to connect serial pointing devices, modems, scanners, or other serial devices to your computer. Most computers include at least two serial ports: COM1 and COM2. Some devices, such as serial-port adapters, modems, and fax cards, can use COM3 and COM4. The settings you specify determine how information is transferred between your computer and the device.

The communications settings you can specify include standard settings (such as those for baud rate, parity, and flow control) and advanced settings (such as those for the base port address and interrupt request line). If you plan to use serial ports COM1 and COM2 only, you may only need to change the standard settings. If you want to use COM3 and COM4, you may also need to change the advanced settings.

Note Most communications applications that you use to exchange information between computers (such as Terminal, which is included with Windows) require that you specify standard port settings within the application. These settings override the settings you specify by using the Ports option in Control Panel.

► **To specify standard communications settings**

1. In the Main group, choose the Control Panel icon.
2. In the Control Panel window, choose the Ports icon.
3. In the Ports dialog box, double-click the icon for the port whose communications settings you want to specify. Or press TAB to select it, and then press ALT+S to choose the Settings button. The Settings dialog box appears.



4. Open the list for each option, set the option to match the device connected to the port, and then choose the OK button.
For a description of the options, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the Settings dialog box. For information about the correct settings to use, see the documentation supplied with the device.
5. In the Ports dialog box, choose the Close button.

Setting Advanced Options

The Ports option in Control Panel provides advanced options for specifying the base port address and the interrupt request line (IRQ) for each serial port. Windows often can detect the addresses and IRQs the ports are using. However, if you install additional serial ports, or if a device connected to a serial port does not use the values that Windows detects, you can change the settings so that they match those required by your device.

The table on the following page lists common port-address and IRQ settings. See the documentation that came with your device for information about the IRQ and base port address that your device uses. If you are not sure which settings to use, select Default.

► **To specify advanced port settings for a serial port**

1. In the Settings dialog box, choose the Advanced button.
2. Open the Base I/O Port Address and the Interrupt Request Line (IRQ) lists, and then select an address and IRQ value. Or type values in the boxes. (The IRQ value must be between 2 and 15.) Then choose the OK button.
3. Any changes you make do not take effect until you restart Windows. To restart, choose the Restart Now button.

The following table lists common port-address and IRQ settings you can use if Windows does not provide settings.

Port	Address	IRQ
COM1	03F8	4
COM2	02F8	3
COM3	03E8	4
COM4	02E8	3

Note If you want to use serial ports 1 and 3 or 2 and 4 simultaneously and your computer cannot simultaneously access ports that use the same interrupt, you need to specify a unique IRQ number for each serial port. First, identify which interrupts are not being used by other cards or boards installed in your computer. After you have determined this, you may need to adjust your communications card in order to use the interrupts. For more information, see the documentation supplied with your communications card.

Managing Memory and Performance

This chapter describes ways you can manage memory and configure settings to improve system speed while leaving enough memory for your applications.

When you assess the performance of Windows, take into account how much memory your system has and how much disk space is available. Also consider how many applications you run at one time and whether you use any memory-resident programs (also called terminate-and-stay-resident, or TSRs). Typically, optimizing your system involves improving one or more aspects of system performance but sacrificing something else. For example, you might optimize your system so that more applications can run faster at one time, but you may have less disk space available as a result.

Identifying Your System Memory Configuration

Memory is found on your computer's main system board or on add-in memory boards. Before information on a disk is processed by your computer or displayed on the screen, it is first placed in memory. The following table describes memory types and terminology used throughout this chapter.

Type of memory	Description
Conventional memory	Up to the first 640K of memory on a computer. All personal computers have conventional memory. MS-DOS uses this memory to run applications.
Extended memory	Memory beyond 1 MB on 80286, 80386, and 80486 computers. Extended memory requires an extended-memory manager, such as HIMEM.SYS, to prevent applications from using the same area of extended memory at the same time. Extended memory is required for Windows.

Type of memory	Description
Expanded memory	Memory in addition to conventional memory that some MS-DOS-based applications can use. Expanded memory is installed on an expanded-memory board and comes with an expanded-memory manager. Because an expanded-memory manager gives access to only a limited amount of expanded memory at a time, using expanded memory is slower than using extended memory. Windows and Windows-based applications do not use expanded memory; however, Windows running in 386 enhanced mode can simulate expanded memory for MS-DOS-based applications that require it. For more information, see "Using Memory Managers" later in this chapter.
Virtual memory	Space on your hard disk that Windows running in 386 enhanced mode uses as if it were memory, by temporarily moving information from memory to a file (called a <i>swap file</i>). This makes the memory available for other applications. The benefit of using virtual memory is that you can run more applications at one time than your system's physical memory (found on your system boards and any add-in boards) would usually allow. The drawbacks are the disk space required for the virtual-memory swap file, and the slower performance when swapping is required.
Upper memory area	The 384K of memory above the 640K of conventional memory in your system, usually reserved for system hardware, such as your display adapter. Unused parts of the upper memory area are called upper memory blocks (UMBs) and can be used by Windows running in 386 enhanced mode.
High memory area	The first 64K of extended memory. This area is used by some applications and by Windows. If you are using MS-DOS version 5.0 or later, you can run MS-DOS in the high memory area, leaving more conventional memory available for applications. For more information, see your MS-DOS documentation.

It's important to know how much and what type of memory your computer has. On most computers, when you turn on the power, the screen displays a count of how much memory there is. However, this won't show you what type of memory it is. If you have MS-DOS version 4.0 or later, you can find out about your memory configuration by using the MS-DOS **mem** command.

► **To find out about your system's memory configuration**

1. Quit Windows.
2. At the command prompt, type **mem** and then press ENTER.

Managing Memory

Properly configuring your system memory is one of the most important things you can do to improve performance. The following sections describe ways you can free memory for your applications and configure memory so that it is used efficiently.

Streamlining Your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files

Your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, located in the root directory of your startup drive, may contain commands that load device drivers and other programs when you start your computer. You can make more memory available by removing unnecessary commands from these files. Be sure to leave intact any command lines that start or enable a network.

Note During Express Setup, the Setup program adds the appropriate memory managers to your AUTOEXEC.BAT and CONFIG.SYS files. For information about these memory managers and how to change command-line options, see “Command Reference” later in this chapter.

When you modify the CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT file, use the following guidelines:

- First, always make a system disk that you can use to start your computer. Include a backup copy of both your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files and any other startup files your system requires, such as disk-partitioning software. For more information about system disks, see Help for File Manager.
- Use a text editor that can save files in ASCII (text-only) format, such as Notepad, to open and edit the CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files.
- If you want to remove a command line, add the **rem** command (for “remark”) at the beginning of the line to disable it. This makes it easy to add the command again if you decide you want to put it back in the file.

For example, to disable the following CONFIG.SYS command line:

```
device=c:\device\mouse.sys
```

type **rem** in front of it, as follows:

```
rem device=c:\device\mouse.sys
```

Note If you use the **rem** command to disable command lines in your CONFIG.SYS file, and you are using a version of MS-DOS earlier than 5.0, you'll see a message, such as "Unrecognized command in CONFIG.SYS," when you start your computer. Once you are sure that your computer works properly with the command lines disabled, you might want to delete those lines to avoid the message.

- If you are not sure about whether you need a particular command line, do not remove it.

The changes you make do not take effect until you restart your computer. If your system does not start properly after you've modified your CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT file, insert in drive A the system disk you created, and start your computer again. If you know which command line(s) are causing the problem, edit the appropriate file (CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT) on your hard disk, and then restart your computer. Or, to start over, copy the backup version of the file(s) from the system disk to the root directory of your hard disk.

► **To streamline the CONFIG.SYS file**

- Disable command lines for any unnecessary device drivers. Your CONFIG.SYS file should define only device drivers that you absolutely need. (Device drivers are defined by using the **device** command.)

Note Do not disable the HIMEM.SYS command line. When you install Windows, the Setup program adds this command line to your CONFIG.SYS file if your system needs this device driver.

- Make sure the **buffers** setting is from 10 to 20.

The **buffers** command line sets the number of disk buffers that MS-DOS allocates in memory when your computer starts. These buffers enable MS-DOS to improve disk-access time in certain cases. The larger the number you specify for buffers, the more conventional memory is used.

Note Setting **buffers** to a value higher than 20 might improve disk-access time in some cases. However, doing so might also require more memory. If you are using MS-DOS version 5.0 or later, you can set **buffers=30** without using more memory.

- If your CONFIG.SYS file contains a **shell** command line that specifies your environment space, try specifying a smaller environment. The smaller the environment, the fewer environment variables you can define with the **set** command in MS-DOS; however, a large environment could take up more memory. Environment space should always be at least 1024 bytes.

► **To streamline the AUTOEXEC.BAT file**

- Disable command lines that start pop-up programs or other memory-resident software. Instead of starting memory-resident programs (TSRs) from the AUTOEXEC.BAT file, you can start them from within Windows. For more information about running memory-resident programs, see the following section.
- If you have a RAM drive, you might want to set your TEMP environment variable to the RAM drive. This can speed up applications that store temporary files in the directory specified by the TEMP variable. For example, if your RAM drive has the drive letter E, you could place the following lines in the AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

```
mkdir e:\temp  
set temp=e:\temp
```

The first command creates the directory TEMP on the RAM drive. The second command sets the TEMP variable to that directory.

Conserving Memory When Starting Memory-Resident Programs

If you want a memory-resident program (TSR) to be available to all applications that you run with Windows, you must start it before starting Windows. However, this takes memory away from other MS-DOS-based applications.

There are two ways to conserve memory when starting memory-resident programs:

- If a particular MS-DOS-based application needs a memory-resident program, you can start both the program and the application from the same batch file in Windows. This gives the application access to the program and does not take memory away from other applications. For more information about creating and using batch files, see your MS-DOS documentation.
- If only Windows-based applications use the memory-resident program, you can create a batch file called WINSTART.BAT in the Windows directory and then run the memory-resident program from there. Each time you start Windows in 386 enhanced mode, WINSTART.BAT runs.

386

When you start a program from WINSTART.BAT, that program is only available to Windows-based applications. This prevents the program from taking memory away from MS-DOS-based applications.

Some memory-resident programs do not work when started from WINSTART.BAT. For information, see the documentation that came with the program.

Changing Virtual Memory Settings

386

When Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode, it frees memory and speeds up performance by swapping information from memory to a swap file on your hard disk (virtual memory).

The Setup program creates a swap file based on the type and amount of available space on your hard disk. The Setup program creates a permanent swap file if it can—a permanent swap file is contiguous and thus improves the speed of Windows. Otherwise, Windows creates a temporary swap file (named WIN386.SWP) whenever you start Windows in 386 enhanced mode. This file can grow and shrink in size and is deleted when you quit Windows.

A permanent swap file consists of two files—SPART.PAR is a read-only file in your Windows directory, and 386SPART.PAR is a hidden file in the root directory of the drive specified for the swap file.

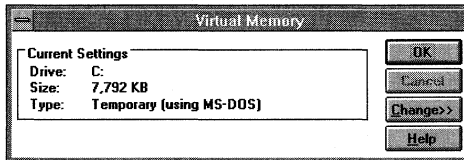
You can determine whether you are using virtual memory, and see the size and type of the swap file, by using Control Panel. (The Windows version 3.1 swap-file functionality replaces the Windows version 3.0 Swapfile application.)

Generally, you should keep the default swap-file settings. However, there may be times when you want to change the settings. For example, if you work with an application that requires a large amount of memory, you might want to create a larger swap file.

Note If you are connected to a network, storing your swap file on your local disk, as opposed to on a network disk, provides better performance and reliability.

► **To display or change information about your system's virtual memory**

1. In the Main group, choose the Control Panel icon.
2. In the Control Panel window, choose the 386 Enhanced icon.
3. Choose the Virtual Memory button. The Virtual Memory dialog box appears, which displays the current swap-file settings.



4. To change the drive location, size, and type of the swap file, choose the Change button. The dialog box expands, enabling you to change the settings.
If your hard-disk controller is compatible with the 32-bit disk-access feature, the Use 32-Bit Disk Access check box appears in the dialog box. This feature provides increased performance on all disk activities and increased performance when you are using MS-DOS Prompt and running MS-DOS-based applications. Using 32-bit disk access may be unreliable on some battery-powered portable computers when the computer's power-saving features are enabled. To turn this feature on, select the check box.
For help with the Virtual Memory dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.

Note If Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode, you can conserve disk space by preventing Windows from swapping any information to the disk. Do not prevent swapping unless disk space is at a premium, because swapping increases the number of applications you can run at one time. To prevent swapping, select None in the Type box in the expanded Virtual Memory dialog box.

Working with Application Swap Files (Standard Mode)

When you start an MS-DOS-based application in standard mode, Windows creates a temporary *application swap file* for that application. (It does not use application swap files in 386 enhanced mode.) When you switch from the application, Windows moves some or all of the application from memory to the application swap file. This makes the memory available to other applications. When you quit the application, the application swap file is deleted.

The location Windows uses to store application swap files can affect the time it takes to switch to and from MS-DOS-based applications.

Application swap files are hidden files with names that start with the characters ~WOA. These files are placed in the directory specified by the **swapidisk** setting in the [NonWindowsApp] section of your SYSTEM.INI file. If the **swapidisk** setting is not specified, the files are placed in the directory specified by the TEMP environment variable in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. If there is no TEMP environment variable specified, swap files are placed in the root directory of the first hard disk (or first floppy disk drive, if you start your system from a floppy disk).

Basic Recommendations

- Usually, it is not a good idea to set **swapidisk** to a RAM drive. If the **swapidisk** setting or the TEMP environment variable specifies a RAM drive, when Windows tries to swap application information from memory to disk, it swaps it to another area of memory instead. This is useful only if you have much more memory than you require for running applications.
- Set the **swapidisk** setting to a hard disk with at least 512K of free disk space. If you have more than one hard disk, set **swapidisk** to the disk with the most free space.

The more disk space Windows can use for application swap files, the more MS-DOS-based applications you can run at one time.

- If you have more than one hard disk and the disks differ in speed, set the **swapidisk** setting to the fastest disk (provided it has enough free space).

► To change the location that Windows uses for application swap files

1. Open your SYSTEM.INI file (located in your Windows directory) by using a text editor such as Notepad. Be sure not to use an application such as Write to edit this file. Such applications can add characters that prevent MS-DOS from correctly processing the file.
2. Find or add the [NonWindowsApp] section of the file. If you're using Notepad, you can find this section quickly by choosing Find from the Search menu, typing [NonWindowsApp], and then choosing the Find Next button.
3. Add or change the **swapidisk** setting. Set **swapidisk** to the directory and drive you want.

For example, if you want application swap files to be created in the TEMPFILE directory on drive D, type the following:

swapidisk=d:\tempfile

4. Save your SYSTEM.INI file.
5. Quit and restart Windows to have the change take effect.

For more information about SYSTEM.INI settings, use Write to open the SYSINI.WRI online document located in the Windows directory.

Other Methods for Improving Performance

There are factors other than memory to consider when optimizing your system. This section describes the following ways to speed up your system:

- Improving the efficiency of your hard disk
- Using the SMARTDrive disk-caching program
- Changing multitasking settings for Windows

This section also describes ways you can find out how your system resources are being used and ways you can free those resources to improve the performance of your system.

Improving the Efficiency of Your Hard Disk

Your system's speed can be greatly affected by the amount of free disk space and how efficiently the information on your disk is structured. You can perform the following tasks to improve the efficiency of your hard disk:

- Delete files you don't need. (This section describes how you can find out how much free disk space you have and which files you can delete.)
- Use the MS-DOS **chkdsk** command to recover lost disk space. For information about **chkdsk**, see your MS-DOS documentation.
- Run a disk-compaction program. Over time, the information on your disk can become fragmented (instead of being stored in a single location, files are split into fragments and stored in different locations on the disk). This makes it time-consuming to read the files from the disk. Running a disk-compaction program regroups fragmented files and can significantly reduce the time it takes for Windows and applications to start.

Before running a disk-compaction program, you should quit Windows, delete any unnecessary files, run the **chkdsk** command, and make sure you are not running any programs that use the hard disk.

Generally, it's a good idea to keep at least 1 MB of free space on your hard disk. Windows and applications use free disk space to temporarily store information and to save documents and other files. Use the procedure on the following page to determine how much disk space is available on your system.

► **To check the amount of free disk space when Windows is running**

1. In the Main group, choose the File Manager icon.
2. Choose the drive icon for the drive you want to check.

The status bar at the bottom of the File Manager window indicates how much disk space is currently available on that disk drive. (If the status bar does not appear, you can display it by choosing Status Bar from the Options menu.)

Often, there is less free disk space when you are running Windows than when you are not. This is because Windows uses swap files that take up some disk space. To determine how much disk space Windows is using, compare the amount of free disk space when it is running to the amount of free disk space when it is not running.

► **To check the amount of free disk space when Windows is not running**

1. Quit Windows.
2. At the command prompt, type **dir** and then press ENTER.

MS-DOS displays information about the files in the current directory. The last line of information shows how many bytes of disk space are free on that drive.

If you need more disk space, you may be able to delete some unnecessary files from your hard disk.

Deleting Unnecessary Files

If your disk is becoming full, you can delete files you don't need or don't use. Depending on how you use Windows, you might also be able to delete certain Windows files. It is particularly important to delete unnecessary files before you run a disk-compaction program. There are three categories of files you may want to delete:

- Windows files (installed by the Setup program) that you do not need or plan to use. For details, see the following procedure.
- Application files, documents, or programs that you no longer need or use.
- Temporary files (files that have a .TMP extension) that are left on your hard disk when your computer fails unexpectedly.

► **To delete unnecessary Windows files**

1. If you plan to delete Windows wallpaper or screen-saver files, first use the Desktop option in Control Panel to change these settings to "None."
2. While running Windows, quit all applications except Program Manager.

3. In the Main group, choose the Windows Setup icon.
4. From the Options menu, choose Add/Remove Windows Components.
5. Choose the Files button for the Windows component that contains the files you want to delete.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove files from your hard disk.

Note If you use this method (choosing the Windows Setup icon), Setup will not delete files that are necessary to run Windows. Therefore, it is recommended that you use this method rather than File Manager or MS-DOS Prompt to delete Windows files.

► **To delete other unnecessary files**

1. Quit Windows.
2. Delete any files that remain in your TEMP directory, the directory that applications use to store temporary files. If you don't know which directory is set as your TEMP directory, look in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file for the **set temp=** command.
3. Delete any files that start with the characters ~WOA. These files are application swap files that were created in standard mode. Usually, Windows deletes application swap files when you quit the associated applications; however, these files might remain on your hard disk if Windows stops running unexpectedly. You can safely delete application swap files if Windows is not running.
4. Delete any file named WIN386.SWP. This file is a temporary swap file created in 386 enhanced mode. Usually, Windows deletes it when you quit Windows. However, a temporary swap file might be left on your hard disk if your computer stops running unexpectedly. You can safely delete WIN386.SWP if Windows is not running. (Do not delete swap files named 386SPART.PAR or SPART.PAR.)
5. If you want, delete any other unwanted files or documents.

Using SMARTDrive

SMARTDrive is a disk-caching program provided with Windows. SMARTDrive saves information read from your hard disk in a *disk cache* in your computer's extended memory. When an application tries to read that information from the hard disk, SMARTDrive supplies the information directly from memory instead.

SMARTDrive also temporarily stores information to be written to disk in the disk cache. SMARTDrive later writes this information to the hard disk, when system resources are in less demand.

Caution If you turn off your computer before the information in the disk cache is written to your hard disk, the information could be lost. To prevent this, type **smartdrv /c** at the command prompt to write any cached information to the hard disk. For more information, see “Command Reference” later in this chapter.

Windows runs much faster when using a disk cache. The Setup program adds the **smartdrv** command to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. It is recommended that you use SMARTDrive if your system has a hard disk and at least 2 MB of memory. The way you set up SMARTDrive depends on the applications you run and your system memory configuration, so there is no single “best setting” for SMARTDrive. By default, the size of the SMARTDrive disk cache is based on how much memory your system has. In most cases, this provides the best system performance; however, you can change the cache size and other SMARTDrive settings if needed. For more information, see “Command Reference” later in this chapter.

Setting Multitasking Options

386

When Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode, you may need to specify how applications share resources. You can do this by using Control Panel.

You use the Scheduling options in the 386 Enhanced dialog box to determine how Windows performs when running more than one application. These options are described in the Help for the 386 Enhanced dialog box. For information about running more than one MS-DOS-based application, see Chapter 11, “MS-DOS Applications.”

Command Reference

This section describes the command-line options for the memory managers and disk-caching program provided with Windows.

Using Memory Managers

Windows provides the following memory managers that provide access to a particular type of memory.

Memory manager	Description
HIMEM	A program that coordinates the use of your system's extended memory so that no two applications use the same memory at the same time.
RAMDrive	A memory-resident program that enables you to use part of your system memory as if it were a hard disk drive. This memory area is called a RAM drive because it exists in random access memory (RAM).
EMM386	A program Windows uses to emulate expanded memory when Windows is running in standard mode. If you use applications that require expanded memory and you don't have any expanded memory installed on your computer, you can use EMM386 to emulate expanded memory. (Windows running in 386 enhanced mode can emulate expanded memory and does not require EMM386.) When used with MS-DOS version 5.0 or later, EMM386 can also provide access to upper memory blocks (UMBs) between 640K and 1MB. For more information, see your MS-DOS documentation.

You install these memory managers by adding a command line to your CONFIG.SYS file. The following sections describe the command-line options you can set for each of the memory managers provided with Windows.

Using the HIMEM Command Line

The HIMEM command line has the following form:

```
device=[drive:][path]himem.sys [/hmamin=m] [/numhandles=n] [/int15=xxxx]  
[/shadowram:on|off] [/machine=name] [/a20control:on|off] [/cpuclock:on|off]  
[/eisa]
```

An explanation of each part of the command line follows. In most cases you won't need to specify command-line options—the default values are designed to work with most hardware.

Use	To
device=	Install a device driver—in this case, HIMEM. You must include this part of the command line.
[drive:][path]himem.sys	Specify the location of the HIMEM program file. For example, if HIMEM.SYS is in the WINDOWS directory on drive C, type c:\windows\himem.sys . If the file is in the root directory of your startup drive, you don't need to include a path. However, you must always include the filename (HIMEM.SYS).
/hmamin=m	<p>Specify how many kilobytes of memory an application requires for HIMEM to give that application use of the high memory area (HMA). Only one application can use the HMA at a time. HIMEM allocates the HMA to the first application that meets the memory-use requirements set by this option. You can specify a value from 0 to 63.</p> <p>The /hmamin option is not required; the default value is zero. Omitting this option (or setting it to zero) specifies that HIMEM allocate the HMA to the first application that requests it, regardless of how much of the HMA the application is going to use.</p> <p>Set /hmamin to the amount of memory required by the application that uses the most HMA memory.</p> <p>The /hmamin option has no effect when Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode.</p>
/numhandles=n	<p>Specify the maximum number of extended-memory block (EMB) handles that can be used simultaneously. You can specify a value from 1 to 128; the default value is 32. Each additional handle requires an additional 6 bytes of memory.</p> <p>The /numhandles option has no effect when Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode.</p>
/int15=xxxx	<p>Allocate the amount of extended memory (in kilobytes) to be reserved for the Interrupt 15h interface. Some older applications use this interface to allocate extended memory rather than using the XMS (extended-memory specification) method provided by HIMEM. If you use these applications, you can ensure enough memory is available to them by setting xxxx to 64K larger than the amount required by the application.</p> <p>You can specify a value from 64 to 65535; however, you cannot specify more memory than your system has available. If you specify a value less than 64, the value becomes 0. The default value is 0.</p>

Use	To
<code>/shadowram:on off</code>	<p>Specify whether to disable shadow RAM. Some computers make ROM (read-only memory) code run faster by “shadowing” it in RAM—that is, by copying the ROM code into faster RAM memory at startup. However, this uses some extended memory. Usually, on computers that use shadow RAM and have less than 2 MB of RAM, HIMEM attempts to disable shadow RAM to recover additional extended memory for Windows to use (the default value of this setting is off). HIMEM can disable shadow RAM only on certain types of systems. When HIMEM disables shadow RAM, the ROM code runs in the slower ROM instead of RAM; therefore, your computer might run slightly slower.</p> <p>To leave the ROM code running from RAM, even on systems with less than 2 MB of memory, include the value <code>/shadowram:on</code>. To have HIMEM disable shadow RAM, include the value <code>/shadowram:off</code>.</p>

<code>/machine:name</code>	<p>Specify what type of computer you are using. Usually, HIMEM can detect your system type successfully; however, there are a few computers that HIMEM cannot detect. On such systems, HIMEM uses the default system type (IBM AT or compatible). You might need to include the <code>/machine</code> option if your computer is a type that HIMEM cannot detect and if HIMEM does not work properly on your system by using the default system type.</p> <p>Currently, systems that require this option include Acer 1100, Wyse, and IBM 7552.</p> <p>The value for <i>name</i> can be any of the codes or their equivalent numbers listed in the following table.</p>
----------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Code	Number	Computer type
at	1	IBM AT or 100% compatible
ps2	2	IBM PS/2
ptlscascade	3	Phoenix Cascade BIOS
hpvectra	4	HP Vectra (A & A+)
att6300plus	5	AT&T 6300 Plus
acer1100	6	Acer 1100
toshiba	7	Toshiba 1600 & 1200XE
wyse	8	Wyse 12.5 Mhz 286

Use	To		
	Code	Number	Computer type
	tulip	9	Tulip SX
	zenith	10	Zenith ZBIOS
	at1	11	IBM PC/AT
	at2	12	IBM PC/AT (alternative delay)
	css	12	CSS Labs
	at3	13	IBM PC/AT (alternative delay)
	philips	13	Philips
	fasthp	14	HP Vectra
	ibm7552	15	IBM 7552 Industrial Computer
	bullmicral	16	Bull Micral 60
/a20control:on off	Specify whether HIMEM is to take control of the A20 line even if A20 was on when HIMEM was loaded. The A20 handler gives your computer access to the HMA. If you specify /a20control:off , HIMEM takes control of the A20 line only if A20 was off when HIMEM was loaded. The default setting is /a20control:on .		
/cpuclock:on off	Specify whether HIMEM is to affect the clock speed of your computer. If your computer's clock speed changes when you install HIMEM, specifying /cpuclock:on may correct the problem; however, enabling this option slows down HIMEM. The default setting is /cpuclock:off .		
/eisa	Enable HIMEM to use all the Extended Industry Standard Architecture (EISA) memory installed in the computer. This option has no effect on non-EISA computers.		

Using the RAMDrive Command Line

The RAMDrive command line has the following form:

```
device=[drive:][path]ramdrive.sys [DiskSize [SectorSize [NumEntries]]] [/e/a]
```

An explanation of each part of the command line follows. When you set up a RAM drive, it is assigned the next available drive letter.

Use	To
device=	Install a device driver—in this case, RAMDrive. You must include this part of the command line.
[drive:][path]ramdrive.sys	Specify the path of the RAMdrive program file. For example, if RAMDRIVE.SYS is in the WINDOWS directory on drive C, type <code>c:\windows\ramdrive.sys</code> . If the file is in the root directory of your startup drive, you don't need to include a path. However, you must always include the filename (RAMDRIVE.SYS).
DiskSize	Specify how many kilobytes of memory you want to use for the RAM drive. For example, to create a 640K RAM drive, specify 640 . If you don't specify an amount, RAMDrive will create a 64K RAM drive. You can specify a value from 4 to 32767. However, you cannot specify more memory than your system has available.
SectorSize	Specify the sector size in bytes. The size can be 128, 256, or 512 bytes. (If you include a <i>SectorSize</i> value, you must also include a value for <i>DiskSize</i> .) Generally, you should use the default sector size of 512 bytes.
NumEntries	Limit the number of files and directories you can create in the RAM drive root directory. The limit can be from 2 to 1024 entries; the limit you specify is rounded up to the nearest sector size boundary. If you do not specify a limit, you can create up to 64 entries in the RAM drive root directory. (If you include a value for <i>NumEntries</i> , you must also include values for <i>DiskSize</i> and <i>SectorSize</i> .) If there is not enough memory to create the RAM drive as specified, RAMDrive will try to create it with a limit of 16 directory entries. This may result in a RAM drive with a limit different from the one you specified.
/e	Create the RAM drive in extended memory. For RAMDrive to use extended memory, your system must be configured so that it provides extended memory. Also, the command line for the extended-memory manager (such as HIMEM.SYS) must appear in your CONFIG.SYS file <i>before</i> the RAMDrive command line. In general, it is best to create a RAM drive in extended memory if your system has extended memory.

Use	To
<code>/a</code>	Create the RAM drive in expanded memory. For RAMDrive to use expanded memory, your system must be configured so that it provides expanded memory. Also, the command line for the expanded-memory manager (such as EMM386, 386MAX, CEMM, or QEMM) must appear in your CONFIG.SYS file <i>before</i> the RAMDrive command line.

Although specifying a memory type is optional, it is highly recommended. If you omit both the `/a` and the `/e` options, RAMDrive uses your system's conventional memory. It is not a good idea to use conventional memory for a RAM drive, because doing so affects the performance of Windows.

Using the EMM386 Command Line

The EMM386 command line has the following form in the CONFIG.SYS file:

```
device=[drive:][path]emm386.exe [on|off|auto] [/nohigh] [memory]
[MemoryOptions]
```

An explanation of each part of the command line follows.

Use	To
<code>device=</code>	Install a device driver—in this case, EMM386. You must include this part of the command line.
<code>[drive:][path]emm386.exe</code>	Specify the location of the EMM386 program file. For example, if EMM386.EXE is in the WINDOWS directory on drive C, type <code>c:\windows\emm386.exe</code> . If the file is in the root directory of your startup drive, you don't need to include a path. However, you must always include the filename (EMM386.EXE).
<code>[on off auto]</code>	Activate EMM386 if set to on , suspend EMM386 if set to off , or place EMM386 in auto mode if set to auto . Auto mode enables expanded-memory support only when a program calls for it. The default value is on . Use the emm386 command at the command prompt to change this value after EMM386 has started.
<code>/nohigh</code>	Specify that no part of EMM386 is loaded into upper memory blocks (UMBs). By default, a portion of EMM386 is loaded into UMBs. If UMB space is at a premium, use this option to save approximately 3K of UMB space.

Use	To
<i>memory</i>	Specify how many kilobytes of memory you want EMM386 to use. For example, to give EMM386 640K of memory, specify 640 . You can specify a value from 64 to 32768. (EMM386 rounds the value down to the nearest multiple of 16.) However, you cannot specify more extended memory than your system has available. This value is optional; if you don't specify an amount, EMM386 uses 256K of memory.
<i>MemoryOptions</i>	Fine-tune the way EMM386 uses memory. You can use the EMM386 memory options to control the location of the EMS page frame, determine how EMM386 uses certain addresses, and so on. For more information, see the following table.

Under most circumstances, you don't need to specify memory options on the EMM386 command line, because EMM386 usually runs properly by using the default values.

However, in some cases, you may want to control how EMM386 uses memory—for example, where EMM386 puts the EMS page frame, or which addresses it can use for EMS pages. EMM386 provides several command-line options that you can use to fine-tune the way it uses memory. You can use as many of these options as you want, in any order, but they should follow the EMM386 path and memory amount (if any).

An explanation of each EMM386 memory option follows.

Use	To
w=on w=off	Enable or disable support for the Weitek Coprocessor. To enable support, include the value w=on in the EMM386 command line. To disable support, include the value w=off instead. By default, Weitek Coprocessor support is disabled.
frame=address	Specify the base address of the 64K EMS page frame. You can specify values in the ranges 8000h through 9000h and C000h through E000h, in increments of 400h. Usually, you do not need to specify a base address; by default, EMM386 uses a contiguous 64K region of memory, and it does not place the page frame below C000:0000. However, sometimes it is not possible to identify adapter memory absolutely. If a conflict occurs, you may need to ensure that EMM386 places the page frame at a particular location.

Use	To														
mx	<p>You can also use the frame option to specify a more specific base address. For example, to place the page frame at C800:0000, type frame=C800 on the EMM386 command line.</p> <p>If you use the frame option, you cannot use the m option or the /p option.</p> <p>Specify the address of the page frame. You can specify a value from 1 through 14. The following list shows each value and its associated base address in hexadecimal:</p> <table border="0"> <tr><td>1 => C000h</td><td>8 => DC00h</td></tr> <tr><td>2 => C400h</td><td>9 => E000h</td></tr> <tr><td>3 => C800h</td><td>10 => 8000h</td></tr> <tr><td>4 => CC00h</td><td>11 => 8400h</td></tr> <tr><td>5 => D000h</td><td>12 => 8800h</td></tr> <tr><td>6 => D400h</td><td>13 => 8C00h</td></tr> <tr><td>7 => D800h</td><td>14 => 9000h</td></tr> </table>	1 => C000h	8 => DC00h	2 => C400h	9 => E000h	3 => C800h	10 => 8000h	4 => CC00h	11 => 8400h	5 => D000h	12 => 8800h	6 => D400h	13 => 8C00h	7 => D800h	14 => 9000h
1 => C000h	8 => DC00h														
2 => C400h	9 => E000h														
3 => C800h	10 => 8000h														
4 => CC00h	11 => 8400h														
5 => D000h	12 => 8800h														
6 => D400h	13 => 8C00h														
7 => D800h	14 => 9000h														
/pmmmm	<p>Values ranging from 10 through 14 should be used only on computers with 512K of memory. If you use the m option, you cannot use the frame option or the /p option.</p> <p>Specify the address of the page frame. Valid values for <i>mmmm</i> are in the ranges 8000h through 9000h and C000h through E000h, in increments of 400h.</p> <p>If you use the /p option, you cannot use the frame option or the m option.</p>														
pn=address	<p>Define the segment address of a specific page.</p> <p>The p option has the form pn=address, in which <i>n</i> is the number of the page you are specifying and <i>address</i> is the segment address. For example, to place page 4 at the address CC00, type p4=CC00 on the EMM386 command line.</p> <p>Valid values for <i>n</i> are in the range 0 through 255. Valid values for <i>address</i> are in the ranges 8000h through 9C00h and C000h through EC00h, in increments of 400h. The addresses for pages 0 through 3 must be contiguous to maintain compatibility with version 3.2 of the LIM EMS.</p> <p>If you use the frame, m, or /p option, you cannot use the p option to specify addresses for pages 0 through 3.</p>														

Use	To
x=mmm-nnn	<p>Prevent EMM386 from using a particular range of addresses for an EMS page. To specify the range, include this option on the command line, followed by the range of addresses you want to exclude. Valid values for <i>mmm</i> and <i>nnn</i> are in the range A000h through FFFFh, and are rounded down to the nearest 4K boundary. For example, to prevent EMM386 from using segments A000:0000 through B000:0000, type the value x=A000-B000 on the EMM386 command line.</p> <p>The x option takes precedence over the i option if the two ranges overlap.</p>
i=mmm-nnn	<p>Specify a range of segment addresses to be used (included) for an EMS page or for RAM. Valid values for <i>mmm</i> and <i>nnn</i> range from A000h through FFFFh, and are rounded down to the nearest 4K boundary.</p> <p>The x option takes precedence over the i option if the two ranges overlap.</p>
b=address	<p>Specify the lowest address available for EMS “banking” (swapping of 16K pages). Valid values are in the range 1000h through 4000h. By default, 4000:0000 is the lowest address. To specify a different low address, include this option on the EMM386 command line, followed by the address you want. For example, to make 3000:0000 the lowest address, include the value b=3000.</p>
L=minXMS	<p>Ensure that the specified amount of extended memory will still be available after EMM386 is loaded. Specify the amount of memory in kilobytes. For example, to ensure that 640K of extended memory will be available after loading EMM386, type the value L=640 on the EMM386 command line.</p>
a=altregs	<p>Specify how many fast alternate register sets you want to allocate to EMM386. For example, to allocate 16 register sets to EMM386, type the value a=16 on the command line. You can specify a number from 0 to 254; the default setting is 7 sets. Every alternate register set adds about 200 bytes to the size in memory of EMM386.EXE.</p>
h=handles	<p>Specify how many handles EMM386 can use. For example, to let EMM386 use 127 handles, type the value h=127 on the EMM386 command line. You can specify from 1 to 255 handles; the default setting is 64.</p>
d=nm	<p>Specify how many kilobytes of memory should be reserved for buffered direct memory access (DMA). This value should reflect the largest DMA transfer that will occur while you use EMM386.EXE, not counting floppy disk DMA. You can specify from 16 to 256 kilobytes; the default setting is 16.</p>

Use	To
ram	Provide access to both expanded memory and the upper memory area. This option is valid only if you are running MS-DOS version 5.0 or later.
noems	Provide access to the upper memory area, but prevent access to expanded memory that conforms to the LIM specification version 3.2. This option is valid only if you are running MS-DOS version 5.0 or later.

Excluding Shared Memory Used by a Network Adapter

If you use EMM386.EXE and you have a network adapter installed that uses RAM, you should exclude the memory addresses that the network adapter uses, so that Windows won't use the same area of memory.

For example, if your network adapter uses memory in the address range D800h to D8FFh, you would exclude this range from Windows by specifying the following:

```
device=c:\windows\emm386.exe x=d800-d8ff
```

For information about which address space your network adapter uses, see the documentation for the adapter.

Using the SMARTDrive Command Line

If for some reason Setup did not install SMARTDrive on your system, or if you removed SMARTDrive, you can install it by adding the **smartdrv** command to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. For information about how to modify this file, see "Streamlining Your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files" earlier in this chapter.

The SMARTDrive command line has the following form:

```
[drive:][path]smartdrv.exe [[drive[+|-]]...] [/e:ElementSize] [InitCacheSize] [WinCacheSize] [/b:BufferSize] [/c] [/r] [/l] [/q] [/s] [/?]
```

An explanation of each part of the command line follows.

Use	To
[drive:][path] smartdrv.exe	Specify the location of the SMARTDrive program file. For example, if SMARTDRV.EXE is in the WINDOWS directory on drive C, type c:\windows\smartdrv.exe . If the file is in the root directory of your startup drive, you don't need to include a path. However, you must always include the filename (SMARTDRV.EXE).

Use	To
<i>drive</i>	Specify the letter of the disk drive for which you want to control caching. If you don't specify a drive letter, floppy disk drives are read-cached but not write-cached, hard disk drives are read- and write-cached, and CD-ROM and network drives are ignored.
+ -	Enable (+) or disable (-) caching. Use the plus (+) and minus (-) signs to override the default settings. If you specify a drive letter without a plus or minus sign, read-caching is enabled and write-caching is disabled. If you specify a drive letter followed by a plus sign (+), read- and write-caching are enabled. If you specify a drive letter followed by a minus sign (-), read- and write-caching are disabled.
...	You can specify multiple disk drives.
<i>je.ElementSize</i>	Specify in bytes the amount of the cache that SMARTDrive moves at a time. Valid values are 1024, 2048, 4096, and 8192. The default value is 8192.
<i>InitCacheSize</i>	Specify in kilobytes the size of the cache when SMARTDrive starts (before Windows is running). The size of the disk cache affects how efficiently SMARTDrive runs. In general, the larger the cache, the less often SMARTDrive needs to read information from the disk, which speeds up system performance. If you do not specify an <i>InitCacheSize</i> value, SMARTDrive sets the value according to how much memory your system has (see the table following this list).
<i>WinCacheSize</i>	Limit to what amount (in kilobytes) Windows can reduce the cache size. Windows reduces the size of the cache to recover memory for its own use. Windows and SMARTDrive then cooperate to provide optimum use of your system memory. When you quit Windows, it restores the cache to its normal size. The default value depends on how much available memory your system has (see the table following this list). If you specify a value for <i>InitCacheSize</i> that is smaller than the value specified for <i>WinCacheSize</i> , <i>InitCacheSize</i> is set to the same size as <i>WinCacheSize</i> .

Use	To
<i>/b:BufferSize</i>	Specify the size of the read-ahead buffer. A read-ahead buffer contains additional information that SMARTDrive reads when an application reads information from the hard disk. For example, if an application reads 512K of information from a file, SMARTDrive then reads the amount of information specified by <i>BufferSize</i> and saves it in memory. The next time the application needs to read information from that file, it can read it from memory instead. The default size of the read-ahead buffer is 16K. Its value can be any multiple of the <i>ElementSize</i> value.
<i>/c</i>	Write all cached information from memory to the hard disk. SMARTDrive writes information from memory to the hard disk at times when other disk activity has slowed. You might use this option if you are going to turn off your computer and want to make sure all cached information has been written to the hard disk.
<i>/r</i>	Clear the contents of the existing cache and restart SMARTDrive.
<i>/l</i>	Prevent SMARTDrive from loading into upper memory blocks (UMBs), even if there are UMBS available. You can use this option if you are using MS-DOS version 5.0 or later and UMBS are enabled.
<i>/q</i>	Prevent the display of SMARTDrive information on your screen.
<i>/s</i>	Display additional information about the status of SMARTDrive.
<i>/?</i>	Display Help about the SMARTDrive command and options.

The following table shows the default values for *InitCacheSize* and *WinCacheSize*, depending on the amount of available extended memory your computer has.

Extended memory	InitCacheSize	WinCacheSize
Up to 1 MB	All extended memory	Zero (no caching)
Up to 2 MB	1 MB	256K
Up to 4 MB	1 MB	512K
Up to 6 MB	2 MB	1 MB
6 MB or more	2 MB	2 MB

Caution Check that SMARTDrive has completed all write-caching before you turn off your computer. To make sure this has happened, type **smartdrv /c** at the command prompt. After all disk activity has stopped, you can safely turn off your computer.

Using Double Buffering

If you have a SCSI (Small Computer System Interface) hard disk, you may need to use the double-buffering feature of SMARTDrive. Double buffering provides compatibility for hard-disk controllers that cannot work with virtual memory. If necessary, Setup places a **smartdrv** command line in the CONFIG.SYS file in addition to the one in the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. The command line in the CONFIG.SYS file is required for you to use the double-buffering feature of SMARTDrive. The command line in the CONFIG.SYS file has the following form:

```
device=c:\windows\smartdrv.exe /double_buffer
```

Most hard-disk controllers do not need to use double buffering. Therefore, Setup does not add the command to the CONFIG.SYS file in most cases. When Setup is unable to determine whether double buffering is required, it adds the command line to the CONFIG.SYS file.

If your computer does not require double buffering, you can remove the command line from the CONFIG.SYS file.

- ▶ **To determine whether you can remove the SMARTDrive command line from CONFIG.SYS**
 1. Make sure that the SMARTDrive driver has been loaded using the CONFIG.SYS command line and that double buffering is enabled.
 2. In the Main group, choose the MS-DOS Prompt icon.
 3. At the command prompt, type **smartdrv** and then press ENTER. SMARTDrive displays information about your system.
 4. Look at the column labeled “Buffering.” If every line in this column reads “no,” you can remove the **device=c:\windows\smartdrv.exe /double_buffer** command line from your CONFIG.SYS file.

Appendixes

APPENDIX A

Keyboard Shortcuts

This appendix lists keyboard techniques you can use in Windows.

Use the keyboard shortcuts described in “Basic Windows Tasks” to do common Windows tasks, such as choosing commands on menus and moving around in dialog boxes and lists. You can use these basic techniques throughout Windows and in Windows-based applications.

To work with specific applications and accessories included with Windows, use the keyboard shortcuts described in the other sections of this appendix.

Basic Windows Tasks

Using Help

To	Press
Start Help	F1
Move among the jumps in a topic	TAB or SHIFT+TAB
Display all the jumps in a topic or cancel the selection of a jump	CTRL+TAB
Copy a Help screen or annotation onto the Clipboard	ALT+PRINT SCREEN
Quit Help	ALT+F4

Switching Between Applications

To switch	Do this
Between applications	Press and hold down ALT or SHIFT+ALT, and repeatedly press TAB.
To the next application	Press ALT+ESC.
To the previous application	Press SHIFT+ALT+ESC.
To Task List	Press CTRL+ESC.
An MS-DOS-based application from a full screen to a window and back	Press ALT+ENTER.

Using Menus

To	Press
Activate the menu bar	ALT or F10
Select a menu	ALT + the underlined character in the menu name
Choose a menu command	An arrow key, ENTER Or the underlined character in a command name

Note Although you can choose any menu command by using this method, many commands have faster keyboard equivalents, which are usually shown next to the command on the menu.

Open the Control menu for an application window	ALT+SPACEBAR
Open the Control menu for a document window or a group window	ALT+HYPHEN

Using Dialog Boxes

To	Do this
Move between items	See “Moving Around” later in this appendix.
Carry out a command	Press ENTER.
Choose a selected item	Press SPACEBAR.
Open or close a selected list	Press ALT+DOWN ARROW.
Move around and select items in a list	See “Moving Around” and “Selecting Items” later in this appendix.
Cancel the dialog box	Press ESC or ALT+F4. (Confirmation dialog boxes cannot be canceled by using these keys.)

Moving Around

To move	Press
Between menu commands, characters in a text box, or items in a list	An arrow key
To the next or previous dialog box item	TAB or SHIFT+TAB
To a dialog box item	ALT + the character underlined in the item name
Right or left one word in a text box	CTRL + an arrow key
To the beginning or end of a line, list, or screen	HOME or END
Up or down one screen	PAGE UP or PAGE DOWN

Selecting Items

In a Document Window

To select	Press
One line of text up or down	SHIFT+UP ARROW or SHIFT+DOWN ARROW
Text to the beginning or end of a document	SHIFT+CTRL+HOME or SHIFT+CTRL+END

In a Document Window, Text Box, or List

To select	Press
Text to the beginning or end of a line	SHIFT+HOME or SHIFT+END
The next or previous word	SHIFT+CTRL+RIGHT ARROW or SHIFT+CTRL+LEFT ARROW
One letter at a time to left or right	SHIFT+LEFT ARROW or SHIFT+RIGHT ARROW

In a Dialog Box

To	Press
Select nonconsecutive items in a list	SHIFT+F8, use the arrow keys to move to each item you want to select, press SPACEBAR to select each item, and press SHIFT+F8 again when done.
Select a list item or check box	SPACEBAR
Select all items in a list (where applicable)	CTRL+SLASH (/)
Cancel all selections in a list except the current one	CTRL+BACKSLASH (\)

Editing Text

In a Text Box or Window

To	Press
Delete the character to the left or right or delete selected text	BACKSPACE or DEL
Copy selected text onto the Clipboard	CTRL+C or CTRL+INS
Move selected text onto the Clipboard	CTRL+X or SHIFT+DEL
Paste text from the Clipboard	CTRL+V or SHIFT+INS
Undo the last editing action	CTRL+Z or ALT+BACKSPACE

Copying onto the Clipboard

To	Do this
Copy an image of the entire screen onto the Clipboard. (This also works for an MS-DOS-based application running in text mode.)	Press PRINT SCREEN.
Copy an image of the active window onto the Clipboard	Press ALT+PRINT SCREEN.
Copy or move selected text onto and from the Clipboard	See “Editing Text” earlier in this appendix.

Quitting an Application and Closing a Window

To	Press
Quit an application (or, in Program Manager, quit Windows)	ALT+F4
Close the active document window or group window	CTRL+F4

Program Manager

To	Press
Move between groups	CTRL+F6 or CTRL+TAB
Move between items in a group window	An arrow key
Start the selected application or restore the selected group icon	ENTER
Tile the group windows	SHIFT+F4
Cascade the group windows	SHIFT+F5
Close an active group window	CTRL+F4

File Manager

To	Do this
Move among the left and right sides of the directory window and the drive bar	Press TAB or F6.
Change the drive displayed in the directory window	Press CTRL + the letter representing the drive.
Move among and select directories or files	See "Moving Around" and "Selecting Items" earlier in this appendix.
Display or hide a selected directory's subdirectories, start a selected application, or open a selected file	Press ENTER.
Open a new window displaying only the contents of the selected directory	Press SHIFT+ENTER.
Select the next file or directory whose name begins with a certain character	Press the first character of the file or directory name.
Move the selected file or directory	Press F7.
Copy the selected file or directory	Press F8.
Update the information displayed	Press F5.
Display the properties of the selected file or directory	Press ALT+ENTER.

Print Manager

To	Press
Move between queues and between documents in each queue	UP ARROW or DOWN ARROW
Move the selected document up or down in a queue	CTRL+UP ARROW or CTRL+DOWN ARROW
Update the information displayed	F5

Control Panel

You can use the keyboard shortcuts described in “Basic Windows Tasks” earlier in this appendix to move among icons in Control Panel, select icons, and work with the dialog boxes displayed when you choose an icon.

Clipboard Viewer

To	Do this
Clear the Clipboard contents	Press DEL.
Copy or move items onto and from the Clipboard	See “Copying onto the Clipboard” and “Editing Text” earlier in this appendix.

PIF Editor

You can use the keyboard shortcuts described in “Basic Windows Tasks” earlier in this appendix to work with the PIF Editor dialog boxes.

Accessories

Calculator

In addition to the keyboard shortcuts described in “Basic Windows Tasks” earlier in this appendix, you can use techniques unique to Calculator. For more information, see Help for Calculator.

Calendar

Use the following keys in Calendar.

Month View Keys

Use the following keys in the Month view.

To	Press
Move to the previous week	UP ARROW
Move to the next week	DOWN ARROW
Move to the previous month	PAGE UP
Move to the next month	PAGE DOWN
Move between a date and the scratch pad	TAB
Change to the Day view	ENTER

Day View Keys

Use the following keys in the Day view.

To	Press
Move to the previous time	UP ARROW
Move to the next time	DOWN ARROW or ENTER
Move to the previous screen	PAGE UP
Move to the next screen	PAGE DOWN
Move to the starting time	CTRL+HOME
Move to 12 entries after the starting time	CTRL+END
Move between the appointment area and the scratch pad	TAB
Move the selection onto the Clipboard	SHIFT+DEL
Copy the selection onto the Clipboard	CTRL+INS
Paste the Clipboard contents into the appointment area or scratch pad	SHIFT+INS
Move to the previous day	CTRL+PAGE UP
Move to the next day	CTRL+PAGE DOWN

Cardfile

To	Press
Scroll forward or backward one card (or one page of index lines in List view)	PAGE DOWN or PAGE UP
Scroll forward or backward one card in List view	DOWN ARROW or UP ARROW
Display the first or last card	CTRL+HOME or CTRL+END
Display the first card whose name begins with a particular character	SHIFT+CTRL + the character

Notepad

You can use the keyboard shortcuts described in “Basic Windows Tasks” earlier in this appendix to work with Notepad.

Object Packager

To	Press
Move between the Content and Appearance windows	TAB

Paintbrush

To move	Press
The cursor	An arrow key
Among the Toolbox, Linesize box, Palette, and drawing area	TAB or SHIFT+TAB

To scroll	Press
To the left or right side of the drawing area	SHIFT+HOME or SHIFT+END
To the top or bottom of the drawing area	HOME or END
Left or right one screen	SHIFT+PAGE UP or SHIFT+PAGE DOWN
Up or down one screen	PAGE UP or PAGE DOWN
Left or right one space	SHIFT+LEFT ARROW or SHIFT+RIGHT ARROW
Up or down one line	SHIFT+UP ARROW or SHIFT+DOWN ARROW

To simulate	Press
Clicking the left mouse button	INS
Clicking the right mouse button	DEL
Double-clicking the left mouse button	F9+INS
Dragging the cursor	INS + an arrow key

To undo	Do this
Part of what you have drawn since selecting a tool	Press BACKSPACE, and then use INS + the arrow keys.
Everything you have drawn since selecting a tool	Press CTRL+Z.

Sound Recorder and Media Player

You can use the same keyboard shortcuts for both Sound Recorder and Media Player.

To	Do this
Move around and select items in the window	See "Moving Around" and "Selecting Items" earlier in this appendix.
Move backward or forward when the scroll bar is selected	Press LEFT ARROW or RIGHT ARROW.
Move backward or forward 1 second when the scroll bar is selected	Press PAGE UP or PAGE DOWN.
Move to the beginning or end of the sound when the scroll bar is selected	Press HOME or END.

Write

In the following table, 5 refers to the 5 key on the numeric keypad only, and will only work as described with the NUM LOCK key turned off.

To move to the	Press
Next or previous sentence	5+LEFT ARROW or 5+RIGHT ARROW
Next or previous paragraph	5+DOWN ARROW or 5+UP ARROW
Next or previous page (if the document has been paginated)	5+PAGE DOWN or 5+PAGE UP

To	Do this
Select text	See "Selecting Items" earlier in this appendix.
Copy or move text onto and from the Clipboard	See "Copying onto the Clipboard" and "Editing Text" earlier in this appendix.
Undo the last typing or editing action	Press CTRL+Z or ALT+BACKSPACE.
Insert a manual page break	Press CTRL+ENTER.
Select a picture or object when the cursor is above the upper-left corner of the picture or object	Press DOWN ARROW.

To	Do this
Move the Size Picture cursor or move a selected picture after choosing Move Picture from the Edit menu	Press an arrow key.
Insert an invisible hyphen (only to be used when a word is wrapped)	Press CTRL+SHIFT+HYPHEN.
Switch between the document and the Find or Replace dialog box, or between the Header and Footer window and the Page Header or Page Footer dialog box	Press ALT+F6.

Windows and Networks

Using Windows with Networks

The Microsoft Windows operating system provides many features that make it easier to work with a network's resources. Before you use these features, you should be aware of some basic guidelines for using networks. This appendix outlines Windows network features and lists guidelines for using networks.

For information about setting up Windows from a network, see Chapter 1, "Setting Up Windows."

Windows Network Features

The following list describes what you can do with Windows and networks and where to find information about the Windows network features.

You can do the following:

- Connect your system to a particular network directory. On some networks, you can browse through a list of directories to find the one you want. For information, see Chapter 7, "File Manager."
- Set up a network for use with Windows and set options that are specific to your network. For information, see Help for Windows Setup.
- Set up network printer connections. On some networks, you can browse through a list of printers to find the one you want. For information, see Chapter 8, "Print Manager."
- Take advantage of special features offered by Print Manager when you use a network printer. For information, see Chapter 8, "Print Manager."

Guidelines for Using Networks

You can avoid many problems when using Windows with a network by following these guidelines:

- Read the NETWORKS.WRI online document that is included with this version of Windows to make sure your network software is compatible with Windows. This document contains information about running Windows with your specific network.

- Always start the network before you start Windows.

You can connect to network directories and printers after you start Windows, but the network software must be running on your computer before you start Windows. If you try to start your network after you have started Windows, your system may not run correctly.

- Some networks fail if you log in or log out at the MS-DOS prompt while running Windows. Some networks support logging in or out by using the Network option in Control Panel. If your network does not support this feature, log in before you start Windows.
- If you are using a shared copy of Windows or a shared copy of another application, use the same letter to designate the network directory on your system every time you connect to that directory.

For example, if you use the drive letter W when you connect to the network directory to set up a shared copy of Windows, Windows records W as the path it should use in the future to look for the shared Windows files. If the next time you connect to the same network directory you use a letter other than W, you will not be able to start Windows correctly.

If you do need to specify a different drive letter when you connect to a network directory in order to use a shared application, be sure to change the path that Windows uses to find the application.

- Every time you connect to a network printer, use the same port for that particular printer.

Control Panel retains the printer settings for a particular port. If you change the port you are using for a printer, the settings for the new port may not be correct for that printer.

If you do need to change the port your printer is connected to, be sure to use Control Panel to change the printer settings.

Troubleshooting

This appendix is designed to help if you encounter problems when using the Microsoft Windows operating system. Each section suggests steps you can take to solve the most common problems.

This appendix has the following sections:

- Setting Up Windows
- Using a Mouse
- Running Applications
- Linking and Embedding Objects
- Printing
- Managing Memory
- Using Serial Communications
- Using Terminal
- Using Windows with a Network
- Using Two Versions of Windows
- Additional Troubleshooting Techniques

Setting Up Windows

The following sections describe solutions to problems you might have when setting up Windows.

Your system locks up during the MS-DOS part of Setup.

The first part of the Setup program runs with MS-DOS. (Later, Setup switches to Windows mode.) If the Setup program stops while still using MS-DOS, it may be because Setup was unable to correctly detect your hardware. To solve this

problem, type **setup /i** to run Setup again. This causes Setup to skip hardware detection and run Custom Setup, in which you specify your system settings. In the System Information screen, select descriptions that match the hardware on your system.

Setup stops when switching from MS-DOS to Windows.

The first part of the Setup program runs with MS-DOS. If Setup stops when switching from MS-DOS to Windows, it may be due to one of the following reasons:

- When you started Setup, your system had an application in memory sending output directly to your screen. An example is a network message service that notifies you when printing is complete. Be sure to close any such applications before starting Setup.
- Setup was unable to correctly detect your hardware or software. You need to quit Setup and run it again, choosing the Custom Setup option. If possible, Setup indicates which hardware or software is causing the problem. Make sure the descriptions of hardware and software in the System Information screen match what you have on your system. If not, correct the settings.
- You are running the wrong version of MS-DOS. Windows version 3.1 requires MS-DOS version 3.1 or later. To find out which version you are running, type **ver** at the command prompt. If necessary, install a newer version of MS-DOS, restart your computer, and then run Windows Setup again.
- Your system has a memory-resident program (also known as a terminate-and-stay-resident program, or TSR) that is incompatible with Setup. Setup detects and notifies you about using certain programs. Read the online document **SETUP.TXT** for information about using specific programs with Setup or Windows.

SETUP.TXT is a text-only file located on a Windows Setup disk. Programs are listed alphabetically in the file. To look at the file, use a text editor you have on your system, or use the following procedure.

► **To view the SETUP.TXT file**

1. Type the following at the command prompt:

more < setup.txt

The file is displayed, one screen at a time.

2. To see the next screen, press the **SPACEBAR**.
3. To quit viewing the file, press **CTRL+C**.

You might need to remove from your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files any command lines that specify memory-resident programs and then restart your computer. For more information, see “Additional Troubleshooting Techniques” later in this appendix.

The Setup program keeps prompting you for the same disk.

When you run the Setup program, you are prompted to insert disks one by one. If Setup doesn't recognize that you have inserted the disk you are being prompted for, it might be for one of the following reasons:

- A disk-caching program (such as SMARTDrive) is caching the floppy disk. To correct the problem, use a text editor to open the CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT file, and then disable or remove the command line that specifies the disk-caching program.
For this change to take effect, you must restart your computer (remove the Setup disk from the floppy disk drive first). Then run Setup again.
- The system did not recognize that you changed the floppy disk. To correct the problem, add a **drivparm** command to your CONFIG.SYS file, and then restart your computer. For example, if you are setting up Windows from a 5.25-inch, 1.2-MB floppy disk drive labeled A, you would add the following line to the CONFIG.SYS file:

drivparm = /d:0 /f:1

For this change to take effect, you must restart your computer (remove the Setup disk from the disk drive first). See your MS-DOS documentation for more information about the **drivparm** command.

You have special hardware to set up with Windows.

To use your hardware with Windows, you install a *device driver*. A device driver is a program that instructs Windows how to communicate with your hardware. Windows includes drivers for most popular types of display adapters, printers, and other devices.

Windows drivers for your hardware may be available from the following sources:

- Microsoft provides the Windows Driver Library (WDL), which contains device drivers made available after this version of Windows was released. If you have a modem, you can download the WDL from network services, including CompuServe, GENie, Microsoft OnLine, various user-group bulletin-board services (BBSs on the Association of PC User Groups, or

APCUG, network), and the electronic downloading service maintained by Microsoft (phone 206-936-6735). Users who do not have a modem and are located in the United States may obtain disks by contacting Microsoft Customer Support Services at 1-800-426-9400.

- If the WDL does not include a driver for your hardware, contact your hardware manufacturer to find out whether a device driver is available that is compatible with Windows version 3.1.

Note Color graphics adapter (CGA) display drivers are no longer included with Windows. You can, however, obtain a CGA display driver from the WDL, as previously described in this section. CGA monitors are not fully supported in Windows 3.1 and higher. An enhanced graphics adapter (EGA) or better is recommended.

You receive a message about memory-resident programs.

The Windows Setup program detects and warns you about some memory-resident (TSR) programs that might not be compatible with Windows. For information about setting up and using specific memory-resident programs, see the SETUP.TXT online document. SETUP.TXT is a text-only file located on a Windows Setup disk. The programs are listed alphabetically in the file. To look at the file, use a text editor you have on your system, or use the procedure described in the section "Setup Stops When Switching from MS-DOS to Windows" earlier in this appendix.

Windows won't start after a successful Setup.

If you completed Setup but cannot start Windows, one of the following might be the cause:

- The wrong hardware is specified for your system. This might occur because you ran Express Setup and Setup was unable to correctly detect your hardware; or because during Custom Setup, you specified the wrong hardware settings. In the Windows directory, type **setup** at the command prompt. Make sure the hardware information is correct in the System Information Screen.

- Your system may be running memory-resident (TSR) programs that are incompatible with Windows. Setup detects and warns you about most of these programs; however, your system may have a program that Setup cannot detect. For more information about troubleshooting problems with memory-resident programs, see “Streamline the CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files” later in this appendix.

If Windows still won't start, run Setup again from the Windows disks, using the following guidelines:

- Type **setup /i**, which causes Setup to skip hardware detection. This also runs Custom Setup, in which you specify your system settings. In the System Information screen, be sure to choose descriptions that match the hardware on your system. Then restart your system, and type **win** to start Windows.
- Type **win /s** (for standard mode) or **win /3** (for 386 enhanced mode). If you can start Windows in standard mode, see the next section.

Windows runs in standard mode but not in 386 enhanced mode.

If you have an 80386 or 80486 computer and Windows can run only in standard mode, you may be able to correct the problem in one of the following ways:

- Make sure that your computer has at least an 80386 processor and enough memory to run in 386 enhanced mode. You should have at least 200K of free conventional memory, 1024K (1 MB) of free extended memory, and at least 2 MB of free disk space.

If your system meets these requirements, try to start Windows in 386 enhanced mode by typing **win /3** at the command prompt. Although you can force Windows into 386 enhanced mode if it has less than 1024K of extended memory, it is not recommended, because Windows may run very slowly.

- Use the **EMMExclude** option when you start Windows, by typing **win /d:x** at the command prompt. This excludes the adapter area from areas that Windows searches for unused address space. Typically, this is the area A000-FFFF. The search can cause conflicts with adapters that use this area.

If using this command successfully starts Windows in 386 enhanced mode, you might want to add the **EMMExclude** command to your SYSTEM.INI file, as described in the procedure following this list.

- Use the **VirtualHDirq** option when you start Windows, by typing **win /d:v** at the command prompt. This gives your hard disk—rather than Windows 386 enhanced mode—control over how hard-disk interrupts are processed.

If using this command successfully starts Windows in 386 enhanced mode, you might want to add the **VirtualHDirq=False** command to your SYSTEM.INI file, as described in the following procedure.

► **To add an EMMExclude or VirtualHDirq command to SYSTEM.INI**

1. Using a text editor, open the SYSTEM.INI file, which is located in your Windows directory.
2. Find the [386Enh] section of the file, and type one of the following lines:
EMMExclude=A000-FFFF
VirtualHDirq=FALSE
3. Save your changes to the SYSTEM.INI file.
4. At the command prompt, type **win** to start Windows.

Note When you add the **EMMExclude** command to your SYSTEM.INI file, you are probably excluding more address space than is necessary. To find out a more precise amount of address space to exclude, you can use the Microsoft Diagnostics (MSD) program. To start MSD, type **msd** at the command prompt. From the first screen, choose Memory. You should exclude any address space identified as “RAM” or “ROM.” You might also be able to exclude address space identified as “Possibly Available.”

You need to copy Windows files directly to your computer.

The files on the Windows Setup disks are compressed and are not usable until expanded. Usually, Setup and Control Panel expand the compressed files as they are copied to your hard disk. In some cases, you may need to copy files directly from a Windows Setup disk without using Setup or Control Panel.

The EXPAND.EXE file is copied to your Windows directory during the setup process.

► **To copy Windows files to your system and expand them**

1. Insert in drive A (or another floppy disk drive) the disk containing the file you want to expand.
2. Type the following command at the command prompt, and then press ENTER:

```
expand x:\filename1 y:\windirectory\filename2
```

where *x* is the floppy disk you are copying from, *filename1* is the name of the compressed file you want to copy, *y* is the hard disk you are copying to, *windirectory* is the name of your Windows directory, and *filename2* is the file you want to appear on your hard disk. The compressed file is expanded as it is copied to your hard disk.

When files are compressed, their extensions are renamed to end with an underscore. System files (.SYS) have the extension .SY_ as compressed files. For example, MOUSE.SYS is named MOUSE.SY_, and HIMEM.SYS is named HIMEM.SY_. When you use the Setup program to install these files, they are expanded and renamed with .SYS extensions.

If you use the **expand** command to copy .SY_ files to your hard disk, you must change their filename extensions to .SYS. You can use the MS-DOS **rename** command, or you can rename each file as you copy it from the Windows Setup disk by using the **expand** command. For more information about the **expand** command, see your MS-DOS documentation.

Using a Mouse

The following sections describe solutions to problems you might have when using a mouse with Windows. If you cannot use your mouse and need to use your keyboard with Windows, see Chapter 4, “Windows Basics.”

The mouse won't work with Windows.

If your mouse is not working with Windows, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- If you are using a serial mouse, make sure you are using either the COM1 or COM2 serial port. You cannot use serial port COM3 or COM4 with a mouse in Windows. Examine your hardware to see which port the mouse cable is attached to. Then make sure Windows is set up correctly by using the Ports option in Control Panel.
- Determine which hardware interrupt (IRQ) the mouse port is set to use and whether there is another device set to use the same IRQ. If there is an IRQ conflict with the serial or bus port that the mouse is connected to, the mouse won't work. For information about changing IRQ settings and determining which IRQs the mouse port and other hardware are using, see your mouse and hardware documentation.

The mouse pointer won't move.

If your mouse pointer won't move, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- If the mouse pointer appears on your screen but won't move, choose the Windows Setup icon in the Main group to display a list of settings. Make sure the mouse you are using is listed here. For information about keyboard techniques you can use in Windows, see Appendix A, “Keyboard Shortcuts.”

- If you are certain you are using the appropriate mouse driver and the mouse pointer still won't move, see whether there is an interrupt (IRQ) conflict between the mouse port and another device. For information about determining which IRQ your mouse or other hardware is using, see the documentation supplied with your hardware.

The mouse pointer jumps around on the Windows screen.

If the mouse pointer jumps around rather than moving smoothly, you might have one of the following problems:

- There might be a system-hardware interrupt (IRQ) conflict. You need to set up the mouse so that it isn't using an IRQ that is being used by another device. For information about changing mouse IRQ settings, see the documentation supplied with your mouse.
- Your mouse needs to be cleaned. For instructions, see the documentation supplied with your mouse.

The mouse won't work with an MS-DOS application running in a window.

If your mouse works with an MS-DOS-based application running in a full screen but not with an MS-DOS-based application running in a window, you could have one of the following problems:

- To use a mouse with an MS-DOS-based application running in a window, you must set up the mouse driver before starting Windows. For a Microsoft mouse, you need to use either the MOUSE.SYS or MOUSE.COM driver. You set up MOUSE.SYS in the CONFIG.SYS file, or you set up MOUSE.COM in the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. For example, to specify the MOUSE.SYS device driver located in the WINDOWS directory on drive C, add the following command line to your CONFIG.SYS file:

device = c:\windows\mouse.sys

The MS-DOS mouse driver you are using might not support the use of a mouse pointer for an MS-DOS-based application running in a window. The MS-DOS mouse drivers MOUSE.SYS and MOUSE.COM do support this.

If you are copying these files from the Windows disks, you need to use the **expand** command. For more information, see "You Need to Copy Windows Files Directly to Your Computer" earlier in this appendix.

- You might be using a display driver that does not support the use of a mouse pointer for an MS-DOS-based application running in a window.

If you are using a 16-color, 800×600-resolution display adapter with a display driver that was provided with a Windows version earlier than 3.1, you need to update the driver. Display drivers provided with the Windows version 3.0 Supplemental Driver Library should be updated as well. You need to use the standard Super VGA display driver provided with Windows version 3.1. You can install this driver, even after Windows is installed, by using the Setup program.

If you are using a display driver that was provided with your display adapter, you might need to update the driver to one designed to work with MS-DOS–based applications running in a window. Contact your display-adapter manufacturer for an updated display driver. For more information about using specific display adapters, view the README.WRI online document by using Write (in the Accessories group).

- If you are using an IBM mouse with the IBM mouse driver version 1.0, you need to replace this driver. Version 1.0 of this driver was not designed to support MS-DOS–based applications running in a window. Contact your dealer for an updated version of the mouse driver.

Running Applications

Applications usually run without problems. However, you might occasionally receive an error message when starting or running an application, or a key or function might not work properly. The following recommendations cover the most common problems.

You press a key, and the unexpected happens.

If a key combination doesn't work, it is usually because Windows or another running application is using the key combination for another purpose.

The following are some common problems and solutions:

- You use a key combination that should perform a function in an application, but it instead performs a Windows function (for example, you unexpectedly switch to another application).

You are probably using a Windows shortcut key. You assign a Windows shortcut key to an application by using the Properties command on the File menu in Program Manager or by specifying a key combination in the application's program information file (PIF). Use the Properties command or check the application's PIF to find out whether you have assigned a Windows shortcut key to your application. For more information, see Chapter 5, "Application Basics," and Help for PIF Editor.

- You press a Windows shortcut-key combination, such as ALT+TAB, but the Windows function is not performed.

The key combination probably is reserved for an MS-DOS-based application and no longer performs the Windows function. Check the PIF of the foreground application to determine whether a Windows key combination is reserved for that application.

386

- If Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode and you hear a beep whenever you press a key while using a particular application, Windows might have suspended that application. This might happen, for example, if you try to run the application in a window but it cannot run in a window. If that is the case, press ALT+ENTER to return the application to a full screen. If the application does not respond to ALT+ENTER, you might be able to press CTRL+ALT+DEL to quit the application without having to restart Windows or your computer.

386

- If Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode and you have chosen the Select or Mark command from the Control menu (the application's title bar will contain the word "Select" or "Mark"), Windows is waiting for you to select information to copy onto the Clipboard. To cancel the command, press the ESC key. To copy selected information onto the Clipboard, choose the Copy command from the application's Edit menu, or click using the right mouse button.

386

- If Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode and you have chosen the Scroll command from the Control menu (the application's title bar will contain the word "Scroll"), Windows is waiting for you to use the arrow keys to scroll through the information in the application's window. To cancel the Scroll command, press the ESC key.
- If you are using a language that has accented characters, you might not be able to use those characters when naming files. Before MS-DOS reads a filename, it shifts all the letters in the filename to uppercase. Some accented characters do not have valid uppercase characters.

Your application stops responding to the system.

If an application stops responding to the system, use the following checklist:

386

- You can press CTRL+ALT+DEL to quit an application that has stopped responding to the system. Windows displays a message confirming your action. To continue, follow the instructions in the message.

When you are using MS-DOS (not MS-DOS Prompt within Windows) and you press CTRL+ALT+DEL, your computer restarts. When you press CTRL+ALT+DEL while using Windows, you can quit the application that has stopped responding without having to restart your computer or Windows.

- You are running an earlier version of a Windows application that is incompatible with Windows version 3.0 or later. Contact the manufacturer for an updated version of the application.

Your application runs too slowly.

If your application runs too slowly, try one of the following solutions:

- Your system might be low on memory. If your hard-disk light blinks frequently, Windows is swapping information to disk to make room in memory for other information or is rereading information from the disk into memory. For information about making more memory available, see Chapter 14, “Managing Memory and Performance.”
- **386** You might need to set up a permanent swap file. If Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode and you run more than one application at a time or applications that use very large files, you should set up a permanent swap file. Do this by choosing the 386 Enhanced icon in Control Panel and then choosing the Virtual Memory button. For more information, press the F1 key while using the dialog box, or see Chapter 14, “Managing Memory and Performance.”

Your Super VGA screen contents are not restored correctly.

If you use a Super VGA and the screen contents aren't restored correctly when you switch between Windows and an MS-DOS-based application, you probably need to update your display driver. The Super VGA display driver provided with Windows version 3.1 supports most 16-color, 800×600-resolution display adapters. If it doesn't work correctly, contact the display-adaptor manufacturer to find out whether there is a Windows version 3.1 display driver available for your display adapter.

You cannot take a snapshot of the screen.

If you cannot take a “snapshot” of an application screen, one of the following might be the cause:

- If Windows is running in standard mode and you are trying to take a snapshot of an MS-DOS-based application, open the application's program information file (PIF) by using PIF Editor, and see whether the No Screen Exchange check box is selected in the application's PIF. This option prevents you from copying information onto the Clipboard by using PRINT SCREEN or the ALT+PRINT SCREEN key combination. This option might be set to give the application enough memory to run. Try clearing this check box.
- If you are trying to take a snapshot of an MS-DOS-based application by using the PRINT SCREEN or ALT+PRINT SCREEN key combination (usually Windows shortcut keys), these combinations might be reserved for the active application. Try clearing the corresponding Reserve Shortcut Key check boxes in the active application's PIF.

- If Windows is running in standard mode, the wrong Video Mode option button might be selected in the application's PIF. Try selecting a higher-resolution video mode.
- 386 ▪ If Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode, more memory might be required. Quit some applications to free memory. For more information, see "Managing Memory" later in this appendix.

You cannot paste information into an MS-DOS-based application.

If you cannot paste information from the Clipboard into an MS-DOS-based application, one of the following could be the cause:

- The information might not be in text format. Windows cannot paste graphics into an MS-DOS-based application. Try saving the information you want to paste as a separate file and then opening the file by using the application.
- 386 ▪ An MS-DOS-based application might not be able to accommodate the fastest pasting method. If Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode, the Allow Fast Paste check box in the application's PIF is usually selected because most applications can accommodate the fastest pasting method. However, if the application cannot use the fastest method, it might not respond when you try to paste into it. Try clearing the Allow Fast Paste check box in the application's PIF. You must restart the application for the changes to a PIF to take effect.

You cannot change the font size for an MS-DOS-based application.

If you cannot change the font size for an MS-DOS-based application running in a window, one of the following could be the cause:

- The application is probably running in graphics mode. You can change font sizes only when the application is running in text mode. With some MS-DOS-based applications, you can choose which mode the application runs in. To find out whether your application can run in text mode, see the documentation included with the application.
- You might be using a display driver that doesn't provide the capability of changing fonts for an MS-DOS-based application running in a window. If you are using a 16-color, 800×600-resolution video graphics adapter (Super VGA), make sure you are using the Super VGA display driver provided with Windows version 3.1. This driver supports most Super VGA display adapters. If this driver doesn't work, contact the display-adapter manufacturer to find out whether a Windows version 3.1 display driver is available.

- If you are using a display driver that doesn't provide the capability of changing fonts for an MS-DOS-based application running in a window, try including the following line in the [NonWindowsApp] section of the SYSTEM.INI file:

FontChangeEnable=1

For more information about modifying the SYSTEM.INI file, view the SYSINI.WRI online document by using Write (in the Accessories group).

Note This setting does not work for all display drivers. In some cases, specifying this setting causes the mouse pointer to be displayed incorrectly.

Your system stops responding or quits unexpectedly.

If Windows or your computer stops responding, an application or Windows closes unexpectedly, or your computer restarts unexpectedly, one of the following might be the cause:

- You are running an earlier version of a Windows-based application that is incompatible with Windows version 3.0 or later. Contact the manufacturer for an updated version of the application.
- You are using hardware that is incompatible with Windows. Sometimes you can resolve hardware incompatibility by adjusting settings in your SYSTEM.INI file. For more information about SYSTEM.INI, use Write to view the SYSINI.WRI online document.

You receive a message that the registration database is corrupted.

If you have problems such as the following, your registration database may be corrupted:

- You try to open or print a file that is associated with an application and you receive a message that the association information is incomplete.
- While working with linked or embedded objects, you receive a message that the server is not registering properly.
- In File Manager, you choose the Associate command and there are no entries in the list of files in the Associate dialog box.

If your registration database is corrupted, you must delete the registration database and then recreate it.

► **To restore your registration database**

1. Quit Windows.
2. Delete the REG.DAT file (located in your Windows directory).
3. Restart Windows.
4. Start Registration Info Editor by opening File Manager and then choosing the REGEDIT.EXE file (located in your Windows directory).
5. From the File menu, choose Merge Registration File. The Merge Registration dialog box appears.
6. In the File Name List, select the SETUP.REG file, and then choose the OK button. (The SETUP.REG file is located in the Windows SYSTEM subdirectory.)
7. Search for *.REG files on drive C by using the Search command on the File menu in File Manager.
8. Double-click each .REG file (or select it, and then press ENTER).
9. Repeat steps 6 through 8 for each drive on your system.

Note You may need to contact your software manufacturer if problems still persist when running a Windows-based application.

Linking and Embedding Objects

The following sections describe solutions to problems you might encounter when linking and embedding objects by using Windows-based applications that support object linking and embedding.

You receive a message that the server is unavailable.

The application used to create the object (sometimes referred to as a *server application*) must be available when you try to create, edit, play, or update an object in a destination document. A server application cannot respond if it is performing an action such as printing or making calculations, if the cursor is in a field waiting for information, or if a dialog box is open.

Use the following guidelines to solve the problem:

- Wait a short while to determine whether the server is going to become available to respond to your request. If it becomes available, the message closes and your request is processed.

If the server application does not become available, you may be able to choose the Cancel button in the dialog box to cancel the request. If you do not want to or cannot cancel the request, determine which server application is unavailable. Then switch to the server application, and complete or cancel the action that is causing the application to be unavailable.

- Your registration database may be corrupted. For information about restoring your registration database, see “You Receive a Message That the Registration Database is Corrupted” earlier in this appendix.

You choose an object type from the Insert Object dialog box, but the application doesn't open.

If you choose an object type from the Insert Object dialog box and the application doesn't open, it means Windows cannot find the application.

Use the following checklist to solve the problem:

- Make sure the application that creates this object type has not been deleted from the computer. For example, Paintbrush (PBRUSH.EXE) needs to be on your computer before you can open a Paintbrush Picture object type.
- If the application has been moved from the location specified in the registration database, make sure the directory containing the application is included in the path in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file.
- Try reinstalling the application.

You get different results each time you use the Paste command.

When you use the Paste command, the contents of the Clipboard are either inserted or embedded into the document. The result is determined by the type of application you used to create the information on the Clipboard.

If you used a server application—one that can supply objects for object linking and embedding—the information may be embedded when you choose the Paste command. When the information is embedded, you can activate the information or edit it from within the document.

If the application used to create the information on the Clipboard does not support object linking and embedding, the information is simply inserted when you choose the Paste command and cannot be edited or activated from within the document.

A linked sound object updates automatically even though it is set to update manually.

When you create a link, you are inserting into the destination document a reference to the source document that contains the linked object. When the object is placed in the destination document, you see either the same information that is in the source document or a representation of that data, such as an icon. When an object is represented by an icon, as it always is for a sound object, you always get the latest information when you choose the object.

The Picture option in the Content window of Object Packager is unavailable.

The Picture option in the Content window displays a snapshot view of the object. Picture View is available only when the object was created with a server application and when the Clipboard is used to transfer the object into Object Packager.

If you use the Import command on the File menu to load a document into Object Packager, or you copy onto the Clipboard information created by using an application that is not a server, the Picture option is not available.

A linked object is not updating.

Under certain circumstances, a linked object must be manually updated in the source document before the linked object in the destination document is updated, regardless of whether it is an automatic or manual link. This is true for links to documents that contain text, spreadsheets, and pictures because these linked objects are represented in the destination document by images that reproduce the information in the source file. This is not true for links to sound and animation files because these types of links are represented by icons and not by the contents of the linked document.

For example, suppose you have a destination document open that contains a link to a Paintbrush document, and you have the source document open in Paintbrush. When you make changes to the source document in Paintbrush, the visual presentation of the Paintbrush object in the destination document is not updated with the changes you are making. You must save the document in Paintbrush and then update the linked object in the destination document to see the updated object.

► **To update a link**

1. Select the linked object in the destination document.
2. From the Edit menu, choose Links.
3. Choose the Update Now button.
4. Choose the OK button.

The Paste command in Cardfile is not available, yet there is information on the Clipboard.

You must first choose the Picture command from the Edit menu before you can use the Paste, Paste Link, and Paste Special commands in Cardfile.

A check mark appears next to the Picture command when it is in effect.

The Paste Link command appears dimmed, yet there is information on the Clipboard.

If the Paste Link command appears dimmed in your application and you know there is information on the Clipboard, one of the following may be the cause:

- You can only create a link to information in a saved file, so the Paste Link command is available in the destination document's application only when you copy information from a saved file onto the Clipboard.

Save the file before copying information onto the Clipboard. Then you have the choice of using the Paste command to embed the information or the Paste Link command to create a link to it.

- If you have chosen the Paste Special command in a destination document and are selecting from a list of file formats, the Paste Link command will be available only when the format you have selected is supported by the application used to create the destination document.

Printing

The following sections describe common printer problems and offer suggestions for correcting the problems. When there are suggested steps to follow, you should try to print after you complete one of the steps. If you can print from Windows, you've solved the problem. If not, try the next step.

Your printer does not print.

When a printer cannot print, the cause is often mechanical. For example, the printer could be offline, turned off, or disconnected. Use the following checklist:

- Is the printer plugged in, turned on, and online?
- Do you have the correct cable for your printer, and is it properly connected? For example, if you are using a Hewlett-Packard plotter, you need to use a Hewlett-Packard plotter cable. If you suspect the cable is the problem, you may want to borrow a cable that is working with another computer and printer.
- Does the currently selected printer in the application you are printing from match the printer you are printing to?
- Are the printing options set correctly, and have you chosen the correct port for the selected printer? For more information, see Chapter 8, "Print Manager."
- When you are using a serial printer and you choose the Ports icon in Control Panel, does the information in the Settings dialog box match those required by your printer? For more information, see Chapter 13, "Configuring Hardware."
- Do you need to change the ribbon, install a print wheel or cartridge, or add paper? Choose the Print Manager icon in the Main group. Depending on the printer you are using and the commands you have chosen from the Options menu, a message might appear that describes the problem.
- If you are printing to a network printer, have you connected to the network printer?
- Can you print from Notepad and Write? If so, the problem is likely with the application you are using. Consult the application's documentation or contact the software manufacturer.
- If you are using a switchbox to switch between different printers, try clearing the Fast Printing Direct To Port check box in the Connect dialog box. (Choose the Printer icon in Control Panel, and then choose the Connect button.) If this doesn't work, try printing directly to the printer without using the switchbox.

If you still cannot print, try copying a small text file from MS-DOS directly to the port your printer is connected to. For printers that accept ASCII codes (such as dot-matrix printers) and PCL printers (Hewlett-Packard DeskJet, LaserJet, or compatible printers), you could type the following at the command prompt, specifying the directory where your Windows files are located, and the port you are using:

```
copy c:\windows\setup.txt lpt1:
```

The output from the **copy** command (in this example, the contents of your SETUP.TXT file) is sent to the printer that is using LPT1 instead of to the screen. If the file doesn't print, the problem is not with Windows. For more information, see the documentation supplied with your printer.

For PostScript printers, try copying the file TESTPS.TXT to the port you are using. This file was copied to your hard disk when you installed the PostScript printer driver. For example, if your Windows system files are stored in a directory named C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM (the default directory name), you would type the following:

```
copy c:\windows\system\testps.txt com1
```

This command line prints a list of communications settings. Make sure your settings match the list.

You can print from MS-DOS but not from Windows.

If you can print from MS-DOS but not from Windows, there may not be enough space for Windows to store temporary files. (Windows creates temporary files when printing, even if you are not using Print Manager.)

► To see how much space exists for temporary files

1. At the command prompt, type **set** to see what directory the TEMP environment variable is set to use.
2. If there is a TEMP variable listed, make sure the specified directory exists. If it doesn't exist, you need to create it or reset the value of TEMP to specify an existing directory. If there is no TEMP variable listed, define one. For example, to set the TEMP variable to use a directory named TMP located on drive C, add the following line to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

```
set temp=c:\tmp
```

You need to restart your computer after making changes to the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Windows uses the root directory of your startup drive to store temporary files if no other location is defined.

3. Change to the directory specified by the TEMP variable.
4. Type **dir** to see how much space is available. Windows needs at least 2 MB of free disk space in which to store temporary files.
5. If you had to change any of these settings, try printing again.

If you still cannot print, step through the following checklist:

- Check the printer cable. Windows-based applications require that all pin connectors are functioning, whereas some MS-DOS-based applications do not. Try using a cable that you know is functioning.
- If you are using a serial printer, make sure you do not have an interrupt (IRQ) conflict. A mouse might be on the same IRQ as the serial port being used for printing.

- Make sure you are not using a serial port to connect to a network printer. Windows supports network-printer connections on parallel (LPT) ports only.
- If you are using a printer that isn't listed during Windows Setup (or in the Printers dialog box in Print Manager or Control Panel) and are trying to emulate a standard printer, make sure you have chosen the correct printer to emulate. See your printer documentation.
- Try printing without using Print Manager. To turn off (deactivate) Print Manager, choose the Printers icon in Control Panel, and then clear the Use Print Manager check box.
- If you are printing to LPT1, try printing to the LPT1.DOS file instead. To specify the LPT1.DOS file, choose the Printers icon in Control Panel. When the Printers dialog box appears, choose the Connect button. Choose LPT1.DOS from the Ports list. If LPT1.DOS does not appear in the list, you need to add it to the list of ports in the [ports] section of the WIN.INI file. For more information, view the WININI.WRI online document by using Write (in the Accessories group).

The page prints but is formatted incorrectly.

If the pages of a document are formatted incorrectly, the margins are incorrect, the document contains extra lines, or the document is paginated incorrectly, use this checklist:

- If you haven't already read the PRINTERS.WRI online document provided with Windows, you should determine whether it contains information specific to your printer. You can view this file by using Write (in the Accessories group).
- Make sure your printer is capable of printing the formats you specified in your application. Pay special attention to your printer's capabilities when selecting fonts and point sizes. For more information about the font you specified in Windows, start Write, and then choose Fonts from the Character menu. The Font dialog box appears, providing information about the fonts that are available with Windows.
- Make sure you specified the correct settings when you configured your printer. When configuring a printer, you can control settings such as margin size, number of lines per printed page, paper orientation, and number of dots per inch. Choose the Printers icon in Control Panel. In the Printers dialog box, select the printer you are using, and then choose the Setup button.
- If your printer has hardware switches that set page length or line length, make sure you've chosen the correct settings. (For information, see your printer documentation.) For example, on a Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer, you would set the number of lines per printed page to a maximum of 66.

- If your printer has a hardware switch that inserts an automatic linefeed at each carriage return, it should be set for carriage returns only. For more information, see your printer documentation.
- Determine whether the formatting problems are consistent by printing the same file twice. If the two printouts look different, you may be having problems sending printing information through the port.

Your printer output is garbled.

If you can print your document, but it is unreadable or contains extra characters, use this checklist:

- Make sure the correct printer is selected as the default printer. For more information, see Chapter 8, “Print Manager.”
- If your printer accepts font cartridges, make sure you select the correct cartridge when you set the printing options. If the wrong font cartridge is selected, the printer may insert stray characters at the beginning of lines. For more information, see Chapter 12, “Customizing Windows.”
- If you have a serial printer, make sure the settings for the printer port match those required by your printer. Choose the Ports icon in Control Panel, and then choose the Settings button. Lowering the baud rate might solve the problem.
- You may be using a printer that isn’t listed during Windows Setup (or in the Printers dialog box in Print Manager or Control Panel). If so, you are probably trying to use your printer to emulate a standard printer. Few printers are 100-percent accurate when emulating industry-standard printers. Often, fonts are not printed accurately. Try emulating a different type of printer. You could also contact the printer manufacturer to find out whether a Windows printer driver is available for your printer.
- The printer buffer may be retaining garbled information. Try turning the printer off, waiting a few seconds, and then turning it on again.
- The printer cable may be faulty. Verify that you have the correct cable and that it is functioning.

As a last resort, try installing the Windows Generic/Text Only printer-driver file to see how it works with your printer. You could also contact your printer manufacturer or dealer to determine whether there is a problem with your printer. For information about installing printer drivers, see Chapter 8, “Print Manager.”

The last page of a document is left in the printer.

Some MS-DOS-based applications leave the last page of a document in the printer instead of ejecting it when printing is completed. When this happens, the next document to be printed starts printing on the last page of the previous document.

If your printer has a form-feed or continue button, you can press the button to get the last page out of the printer.

If you are printing multiple documents, using separator pages can also solve this problem. If the last page of a document is still in the printer, it is ejected when the separator page that precedes the next document is fed in.

The fonts on your screen and the fonts that print are different.

A font set is a group of letters, numbers, symbols, and punctuation marks having the same design. Screen fonts display information in windows and dialog boxes. Printer fonts are part of the printer driver or are in the form of cartridge fonts and soft fonts. Many printer drivers, cartridge fonts, and soft fonts have matching screen fonts so that the fonts on your screen look the same as those that print. If matching fonts are not available, Windows uses a font that looks the most like the printer font being used. Sometimes there isn't a font that looks the same.

If you use TrueType fonts, Windows and Windows-based applications use the same fonts, and fonts appear the same on the screen as they do when printed. TrueType fonts are installed when you set up Windows.

► To find out whether TrueType fonts are available

1. In the Control Panel window, choose the Fonts icon.
2. Choose the TrueType button.
3. Note whether the Enable TrueType Fonts check box is selected. If it is, TrueType fonts are available and can be used in your documents.

To view available fonts, choose the Write icon in the Accessories group, and then choose the Fonts command from the Character menu. The Font dialog box appears, displaying samples of various fonts. The TrueType fonts have a TrueType icon next to them, and printer fonts have a printer icon. Plotter and screen fonts have no icon next to them.

You cannot print TrueType fonts on your laser printer.

When you are using a laser printer, TrueType fonts are listed in your application as a selectable font only if you are using a Windows version 3.1 printer driver. Windows version 3.1 printer drivers provide the necessary information for

printing TrueType fonts. If you cannot print TrueType fonts, the printer driver you are using may not be the correct version. Contact your printer manufacturer to find out whether a Windows version 3.1 printer driver is available for your printer or whether one of the printer drivers supplied with Windows can work with your printer.

Your laser printer does not print your cartridge or soft fonts.

If you install a font cartridge or soft fonts for your laser printer, but the printer doesn't print these fonts, use this checklist:

- Make sure the printing-option settings for your printer are correct and that you have selected the correct cartridge from the Cartridges list in the Setup dialog box. To select a cartridge, choose the Printers icon in Control Panel, and then choose the Setup button.
- If you are using a font cartridge, turn off the printer and make sure the cartridge is all the way in its slot. You may need to press firmly on the cartridge until it pops into the slot.
- If you are using soft fonts, make sure they are properly installed. (For information, see the installation kit provided with your soft fonts.)
- If your soft fonts are installed as permanent, perhaps the printer was turned off or reset. Try sending the soft fonts to the printer again.
- You may be using too many soft fonts. Printer drivers can support a limited number of soft fonts. Generally, PostScript printer drivers have a limit of about 170 soft fonts. PCL printer drivers generally have a limit of 250 soft fonts.

The number of soft fonts you can use is also limited by the maximum size of the WIN.INI file. The WIN.INI file can be no larger than 64K. If the file is full, you cannot specify any additional soft fonts. One way to minimize the size of the WIN.INI file is to move the soft-font files closer to the root of the directory structure and then specify these shorter paths in the WIN.INI file.

You can also try installing fewer fonts or installing them as temporary fonts, if appropriate. For more information, see your printer documentation or contact your printer manufacturer.

- If you have changed port connections since you installed soft fonts, you need to reinstall the soft fonts for the new port. If you are using the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet and DeskJet family of printers, choose the Printers icon in Control Panel, and then choose the Setup button in the Printers dialog box. Then use the Fonts button in the Print Setup dialog box to copy soft fonts from one port to another.

The printer loses text.

- If you are using a parallel printer and an LPT port, and the printer loses text, the cable could be faulty. Try using a new cable of the same type.

If you have a serial printer and it prints the document but loses blocks of text, you might have a flow-control (also called *handshake*) problem with your serial port.

To check for a flow-control problem:

- Try lowering the baud rate.
- Make sure all communications settings (baud rate, data bits, parity, stop bits, and flow control) are set the same in Windows, in MS-DOS, and on the printer. The most common values for these settings are 9600 baud, 8 data bits, no parity, 1 stop bit, and Xon/Xoff flow control.

You can change these settings in Windows by choosing the Ports icon in Control Panel and then choosing the Settings button. You can also change these settings in MS-DOS by using the **mode** command. For information about **mode** command-line options, see your MS-DOS documentation. For information about settings on the printer, see your printer documentation.

If the printer is still losing text, make sure all the manual switches on your printer are set as described in your printer documentation. If you are using a network printer, make sure you are using network software that works with Windows. For more information, see the NETWORKS.WRI online document provided with Windows. You can view this file by using Write (in the Accessories group).

Only part of a page prints.

If your printer prints only part of your document, use the following checklist:

- The most common cause of this problem is insufficient memory in the printer. It is recommended that you add more memory to the printer. If you are printing graphics, try using a lower print resolution. You can try printing a page of text to confirm that you are running out of memory because you are printing graphics.
- Make sure the paper size you chose when configuring the printer matches the paper size loaded in the printer.
- Make sure you have selected the appropriate memory setting in the printer-driver dialog box. Make sure you haven't specified more memory than your printer actually has.

To view this dialog box, choose the Printer Setup command from the Options menu in Print Manager.

Paintbrush graphics are too small when printed.

If you are using Paintbrush and the printed image is much smaller than you expected, use the following checklist:

- From the File menu in Paintbrush, choose Print. Make sure the Use Printer Resolution check box is cleared in the Print dialog box. Also, check the scaling factor. If a small scaling factor is specified, the printer output is small.
- From the View menu, choose View Picture to see how the image appears on the page. You may need to adjust the position.

Your PostScript printer runs out of memory.

Occasionally when you try to print a file, you might see a message indicating that the printer is out of memory.

If you are using a PostScript printer, and the document you are trying to print includes soft fonts, try using TrueType or printer fonts instead. (For more information, see Chapter 12, “Customizing Windows.”)

You can also try changing some of the options in the Advanced Options dialog box.

- ▶ **To change a PostScript printer’s options**
 1. In the Main group, choose the Print Manager icon.
 2. From the Options menu, choose Printer Setup.
 3. From the list of installed printers, select the printer you are using.
 4. Choose the Setup button.
 5. Choose the Options button.
 6. Choose the Advanced button.
 7. In the Send To Printer As list, make sure Adobe Type 1 is selected. This option causes the driver to use outline fonts for large point sizes and bitmaps for small point sizes.
 8. Make sure the Clear Memory Per Page check box is selected. This option causes the driver to clear the printer’s memory after printing each page.
 9. Make sure the Use Substitution Table check box is selected. This option causes the driver to use a built-in printer font already in the printer’s memory instead of using a new font. Make sure you select a printer font

to use in place of the TrueType fonts in your document. To do this, choose the Edit Substitution Table button, and then supply the necessary information in the Substitution dialog box.

If you need help working with the Advanced Options or the Substitution dialog box, choose the Help button or press F1 while using the dialog box.

If a problem still exists after completing this procedure, consider adding more memory to your printer. If your printer still runs out of memory when printing, there is a problem with the driver or printer. For more information, contact your printer manufacturer.

You receive a message that the printer is not responding.

When printing files, you may receive the following message from Print Manager: "The printer on LPT1 is not responding. Check the printer or increase the Transmission Retry value in the Printer Connect dialog box, and then resume the print queue."

Check whether there is a problem with the printer, such as jammed paper, and make sure the printer is online.

You might also receive this message if you are using PostScript printer cartridges; it is most common when printing graphics with these cartridges. When the printing process takes too long, it appears to Windows that a printer is not responding. If you receive this message, go through the following procedure to increase the value (in seconds) of the Transmission Retry setting.

- ▶ **To change the Transmission Retry setting**
 1. In the Main group, choose the Print Manager icon.
 2. From the Options menu, choose Printer Setup.
 3. Select the printer you are using.
 4. Choose the Connect button.
 5. In the Transmission Retry box, type a larger value (start by doubling the current value).

Managing Memory

The following sections describe solutions to problems you might encounter when managing memory in Windows. For more information about managing memory, see Chapter 14, "Managing Memory and Performance."

You receive an out-of-memory message.

If you receive an out-of-memory message when you try to start an application, you can free memory in a number of ways, including the following:

- Free some memory before starting Windows. You may be able to do this by modifying your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files to eliminate any memory-resident software that isn't needed by all applications. For information about how to do this, see Chapter 14, "Managing Memory and Performance."
- Close any applications you aren't using.
- 386** ▪ Run MS-DOS-based applications in a full screen instead of a window (possible in 386 enhanced mode only). If an MS-DOS-based application is running in a window, you can switch it to a full screen by pressing ALT+ENTER while it is the active application.
- Reduce Windows-based applications to icons. Many applications use less memory when minimized than when running in a window. To reduce an application to an icon, click the Minimize button in the upper-right corner of the window. Or bring the application to the foreground, press ALT+SPACEBAR to open the Control menu, and then choose Minimize.
- Clear or save the Clipboard contents. For information about using the Clipboard, see Chapter 5, "Application Basics."
- If you are using a desktop wallpaper, set the wallpaper to None or use a pattern (a pattern uses less memory than wallpaper). For more information, see Chapter 12, "Customizing Windows."
- If you are trying to run an MS-DOS-based application, change its PIF options. Descriptions of PIF Editor options follow this section. For more information about PIF options, see Help for PIF Editor.
- 386** ▪ If you are trying to run more than one MS-DOS-based application at a time (in 386 enhanced mode), use PIF Editor to change the multitasking options, Background Priority and Foreground Priority. For more information about these options, see Chapter 11, "MS-DOS Applications."
- 386** ▪ If Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode, set the PIF for each MS-DOS-based application so that the application does not run when it is in the background. When the Execution Background setting is not selected, the MS-DOS-based application does not run when it is in the background. This may temporarily free memory.
- Make sure Windows has enough available hard-disk space to create and use swap files. For information about how Windows uses swap files, see Chapter 14, "Managing Memory and Performance."

386

- If possible, set up a permanent swap file. If Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode, you can do this by choosing the 386 Enhanced icon in Control Panel and then choosing the Virtual Memory option button. For help with this dialog box, press F1 while using it, or see Chapter 14, "Managing Memory and Performance."

Freeing Memory by Using PIF Editor: Standard Mode

If Windows is running in standard mode and you receive an out-of-memory message when trying to run an MS-DOS-based application, first try the techniques listed in the preceding section. If you still get an out-of-memory message, consider changing the following PIF options. Choose the PIF Editor icon in the Main group to open PIF Editor. (If you upgraded from Windows version 3.0, PIF Editor remains in the Accessories group.)

Option	Suggested change
Video Mode	Under Video Mode, select the Text option button to reduce the amount of memory Windows sets aside to display the application. This makes more memory available to the application. However, if you change modes while using the application, you might not be able to switch from the application.
Memory Requirements	If Windows displays an out-of-memory message when you try to start the application, reduce the amount specified in the Memory Requirements: KB Required box. If the application starts but subsequently displays an out-of-memory message, you might need to free more memory before starting Windows. For information, see Chapter 14, "Managing Memory and Performance."
XMS Memory	If the application does not need extended memory, make sure that XMS Memory: KB Required and XMS Memory: KB Limit are set to 0. This prevents the application from taking up memory that another application could use.
No Screen Exchange	Select this check box to prevent Windows from allocating memory when you copy information onto the Clipboard by using PRINT SCREEN or ALT+PRINT SCREEN. This makes more memory available to the application. However, you cannot take a "snapshot" of the MS-DOS-based application screen.
Prevent Program Switch	Select this option to make more memory available to the application. Windows makes more memory available by preventing you from switching from the application. When this option is selected, you have to quit the application to return to Windows.

Freeing Memory by Using PIF Editor: 386 Enhanced Mode

386

When Windows is running in 386 enhanced mode, Windows-based applications and MS-DOS-based applications share memory resources. The more memory that is allocated to one application, the less memory there is available to others. If you receive an out-of-memory message when trying to start an application, first try the techniques described earlier in the “You Receive an Out-of-Memory Message” section.

If you still receive an out-of-memory message, try changing the PIF for the MS-DOS-based application. You can free memory for an application by changing the following PIF settings. Choose the PIF Editor icon in the Main group to open PIF Editor. (If you upgraded from Windows version 3.0, PIF Editor remains in the Accessories group.)

Option	Suggested change
Video Memory	Under Video Memory, select the Text option button if you plan to use only text mode while running the application. Text mode requires less memory than graphics mode. Clear the Retain Video Memory check box in the Advanced Options dialog box to free memory.
Memory Requirements	If Windows displays an out-of-memory message when you try to start the application, reduce the amount specified in the KB Required box. If the application starts but subsequently displays an out-of-memory message, increase the amount specified in the KB Required and KB Desired boxes. (An application might also run out of memory if it doesn't have enough extended or expanded memory. If you suspect this is the case, try increasing the amounts in the XMS Memory and EMS Memory boxes.)
Display Usage	Select the Full Screen instead of the Windowed option button. Running an application in a window requires more memory.
Execution	Select the Exclusive check box to suspend other applications while this application is in the foreground. This might make more memory available to the application, but it prevents other applications from running in the background.

If you still receive an out-of-memory message after changing the application's PIF, try changing the PIFs for other applications you plan to run at the same time. You can free additional memory for an MS-DOS-based application by changing the following PIF settings for other applications.

Option	Suggested change
Memory Requirements	Reduce the amount specified in each application's KB Desired box. (Do not reduce it so much that the applications cannot run effectively.)
Display Usage Execution	<p>Select each application's Full Screen option button.</p> <p>Clear other applications' Background check boxes to prevent them from running in the background. This makes more memory available to the application you want to run but prevents the other applications from running at the same time.</p> <p>You might want to do this to prevent particular applications from running in the background. If you want to prevent all applications from running in the background, it is easier to select the foreground application's Exclusive check box.</p>
Lock Application Memory	Clear each application's Lock check boxes (Lock Application Memory, XMS Memory: Locked, and EMS Memory: Locked) to free memory. This might make more memory available to the application you want to run but also might slow down the applications for which you clear the Lock check boxes.

For more information about freeing memory, see Chapter 14, "Managing Memory and Performance."

Using Serial Communications

With Windows, you can have serial communications on serial ports COM1 through COM4. The following sections describe solutions to problems you might have when using serial communications.

You cannot access a serial port.

If Terminal or another Windows-based communications application cannot access a modem or other device connected to a serial port, use the following checklist to determine the problem.

- Determine whether another application is preventing access to the port even though it is not actively using it. If so, close the application so that other applications can gain access to the serial port.

- Make sure Windows is using correct base port address and hardware interrupt (IRQ) settings for the serial port you are trying to use. For instructions on how to specify these settings, see Chapter 13, “Configuring Hardware.”

The computer locks up when you try to access a serial port.

When a serial device attempts to use a hardware interrupt (IRQ) or memory address that is being used by another device, your computer can lock up. If you encounter this problem, determine whether one of the following is the cause:

- Serial ports COM1 and COM3 are often set to use IRQ4, and serial ports COM2 and COM4 are often set to use IRQ3. If you are using these ports and your computer locks up, try including the following setting in the [386Enh] section of the SYSTEM.INI file:

COMIrqSharing=true

Note This setting works only for some systems. Many serial-communications adapters do not allow these ports to be used simultaneously, regardless of the setting in the SYSTEM.INI file.

- Some 8514/A display adapters and some network adapters conflict because they use the common address for serial port COM4 (2E8). If you are using either of these two devices, determine whether they are conflicting with your serial port.

For information about which IRQ your device uses and how to change IRQ settings, see the documentation supplied with the device. For more information about specifying IRQ and address settings for your serial devices and ports in Windows, see Chapter 13, “Configuring Hardware.”

Errors occur during high-speed communications.

The fastest communications speed possible in Windows is dependent on many factors, including your serial device, computer speed, communications software, and other programs (or applications) running on your system. If you have problems during communications transmissions at high speeds (9600 baud and higher), use the following checklist:

- Close or adjust the background-execution priority for any MS-DOS-based applications running in the background. Such an application could prevent the active communications application from receiving information fast enough. For information about adjusting settings for MS-DOS-based applications, see Chapter 11, “MS-DOS Applications.”

- Make sure the computer is running at its fastest possible speed. Some computers may run at slower speeds to prolong battery life. See the documentation supplied with your computer.
- Use a serial port that contains a 16550A Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter chip (UART). Windows uses the buffering capabilities of such ports so that Windows-based communications applications can achieve high speeds even on slow computers. For more information, see your serial-port documentation.

Note Using the buffering capabilities of Windows causes problems with some versions of the UART. In this case, you need to disable the buffer of the UART by using the **comxiffo** setting in the SYSTEM.INI file. For more information about this setting, view the SYSINI.WRI online document by using Write (in the Accessories group).

Errors occur when you use MS-DOS communications applications.

If you are running an MS-DOS-based application that uses the Xon/Xoff protocol for serial-port communications, you might lose characters or receive protection violations when other running applications are slowing down the system. If this happens, include the following setting in your SYSTEM.INI file:

COMxProtocol = XOFF

where *x* is the number of the COM port. For information about this setting and how to change it, view the SYSINI.WRI online document by using Write (in the Accessories group).

Using Terminal

If you have trouble using Terminal and a modem to connect to a remote computer, a number of factors could be the cause. The following sections describe solutions for a few common problems.

The modem does not dial the number.

Your hardware may be connected improperly, or the incorrect COM port is specified. Use this checklist:

- Make sure the correct cables are attached to the modem and phone jack, and between the two computers.

- Make sure the proper COM port is specified in the Communications dialog box. Choose the Communications command from the Settings menu in Terminal to see how the Connector option is set.

You cannot establish a connection.

If the modem dials and you get an answer, but no connection is established, you might not have the correct settings for the remote computer. Communicating systems must use the same baud rate, although some modems can drop back to the rate of the remote modem and notify Terminal of the change. (For information about this feature, see your hardware documentation.) If you want to transfer data, both systems must also use the same settings for data bits, parity type (none, odd, even, mark, and space), stop bits, and flow control.

If you do not know what settings the remote system is using, refer to its documentation by calling the remote system's information number (not the data-transmission number). Request the information, and then set Terminal to match the remote-system settings by using the Communications command on the Settings menu.

You cannot send or receive a text file.

Communicating systems must use the same flow-control (or *handshake*) method.

To determine whether the systems use the same handshake method, you need to know the following information:

- What software-handshake method, if any, the remote system uses.
The standard method is Xon/Xoff. However, another method may be used.
- Whether the remote system is using the hardware-handshake method.

If it is, choose the Communications command from the Settings menu in Terminal, and then select the Hardware option button.

Using Windows with a Network

The following sections provide solutions for problems you might encounter when running Windows with a network. Be sure to also read the NETWORKS.WRI online document; you can do so by using Write (in the Accessories group).

You cannot connect to a network drive.

- If you cannot connect to a network drive or network printer from Windows, try making the network connection before starting Windows. If you cannot, it is probably not a Windows problem.
- If you cannot connect to a network, make sure you are using the correct network drivers. You can find out what network driver you are using by choosing the Windows Setup icon in the Main group.

You have trouble when running a shared copy of Windows.

- If you receive a message about sharing violations while running a shared copy of Windows or a shared copy of another application, make sure the application's file attributes are set to read-only. You can view or change a file's attributes by using the Properties command on the File menu in File Manager.
- If you have trouble running a shared copy of Windows, make sure your personal Windows directory and the shared Windows directory are both specified in your path. Your personal Windows directory must be specified first.
- Make sure you are using the same letter to designate the network drive every time you connect to that drive. For example, if you use the drive letter W when you connect to the network drive to set up a shared copy of Windows, Windows records W as the path it should use in the future to look for the shared Windows files. If the next time you connect to the same network drive you use a letter other than W, you will not be able to start Windows correctly.

If you do need to specify a different drive letter when you connect to a network drive in order to use a shared application, be sure to change the path that Windows uses to find the application.

You have trouble with network software when running Windows.

- If you cannot run Windows or other applications while your network software is loaded into the high memory area (HMA), the first 64K of extended memory, try disabling the network software's HMA options. For more information, see the documentation provided with the network software.
- If you cannot run Windows while your network software is loaded into the upper memory area between 640K and 1 MB, try loading the network software into conventional memory. Some network software does not work when loaded into the upper memory area.

- If your system locks up when you receive a network pop-up message, you might need to either disable such messages or run a Windows-based application that properly displays them. For example, WinPopup, supplied with Windows, is such an application.

Using Two Versions of Windows

The following list describes solutions for problems you might encounter when you have two versions of Windows installed on your computer:

- Make sure the PATH setting in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file specifies the directory that contains the version of Windows that you are currently using. Remove the directory of the older version from the PATH setting before you install the newer version. You can check the dates of files by using the All File Details command on the View menu in File Manager.
- When you want to run an application, print a file, install a printer, or install a driver, make sure the current directory is the directory that contains the version of Windows that you are currently using. Windows searches the current directory for the application's files before searching other directories specified by the PATH setting.
- Always use the device drivers for the version of Windows that you are currently using.
- If you want to use applications that are set up in the same directory as the earlier version of Windows (not a subdirectory of it), you probably need to set up those applications in the directory where the later version of Windows is located. In some cases, you can simply copy the files to the new directory; in other cases, you must set up the application again.
- If you set up an application in Windows version 3.0, and you want to run the application in Windows version 3.1, you need to set up the application again from version 3.1.

Additional Troubleshooting Techniques

If you still have difficulties with Windows, you should read the following guidelines for additional troubleshooting techniques.

Read the Windows text files.

During Windows Setup, several online documents are copied to your hard disk and are placed in the directory where you set up your Windows files. The filenames end with the .TXT and .WRI extensions. The files contain information that was received too late to be printed in this book. They also contain information about the initialization files SYSTEM.INI and WIN.INI.

► **To open and read the README.WRI document**

- In the Main group, choose the Read Me icon.

Write starts and opens the README.WRI document, which contains information about locating and opening other Windows online documents. For information about using Write, press the F1 key, or choose Contents from the Help menu in Write.

If you chose not to install the initialization files when you set up Windows, you can run the Setup program again to install them now. For more information about using Setup, see Chapter 1, "Setting Up Windows."

Know your system.

When troubleshooting your computer system, it is helpful to note anything unique about your system—for example:

- The contents of your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. (For more information about the role these files play in troubleshooting, see the following section, "Streamline the CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT Files.")
- The drive and directory where Windows is installed.
- The type (brand and processor) of computer you are using (for example, COMPAQ 386).
- The version and type of BIOS (basic input/output system) in your computer.
- The amount of RAM (random access memory) your computer has.
- The size of your hard disk.
- The type of display adapter you are using (for example, EGA or VGA).
- The type of mouse you are using (brand, model, and whether it is a serial or bus type).
- The type and layout of the keyboard you have (for example, enhanced).
- If you are running Windows on a network; and if so, the name and version number of the network software you are using.
- The printer and printer port you are using.
- The amount of memory your printer has.
- The names and version numbers of applications you are running with Windows.

It may also be helpful if you know the type of hard-disk controller in your computer.

Microsoft Diagnostics

If you are uncertain about your computer configuration, you can use the Microsoft Diagnostics (MSD) program to find out. This program, provided with Windows, provides information about your system memory and the device drivers installed on your system. During the setup process, this file is placed in your Windows directory.

► **To start Microsoft Diagnostics**

- Type the following at the command prompt, and then press ENTER:

```
msd
```

Then follow the instructions on the screen.

Note If Windows was not successfully set up on your hard disk, you can run MSD from the Windows Setup disks.

Streamline the CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files.

If you want to troubleshoot a problem yourself, it's best to start with a "minimum" Windows configuration. This means that as a test, you should try removing unused applications, memory-resident programs (TSRs), and unnecessary device drivers from your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files. You can use a text editor, such as Notepad (in the Accessories group), to open and edit these files. When just a few applications are running with Windows, it's easier to isolate your problem.

Before you make any changes, create a system disk that includes a backup copy of both the CONFIG.SYS file and the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. You can restore these files when you are finished with the troubleshooting tests. You also can use this disk to start your system, if necessary.

You can make a system disk by starting File Manager (in the Main group), and then choosing Make System Disk from the Disk menu. Then copy your current CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files to the disk. These files are usually located in the root directory of your first hard disk drive, which is usually drive C. If you start your system by using a floppy disk, these files are located in the root directory of that disk.

When removing command lines from your CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files, make one change at a time. After making one change, test it. This will help you isolate the problem. As a general rule, if you don't know what a particular command line does in the CONFIG.SYS or AUTOEXEC.BAT file, do not remove it. If you are using disk-partitioning software, such as DMDVR.BIN, do not remove the command lines that specify it.

The following are examples of CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT files at a minimum configuration.

A streamlined CONFIG.SYS file:

```
files=30
buffers=20
device=c:\windows\himem.sys
```

The **files** command sets the number of files MS-DOS can access at one time. The **buffers** command allocates memory for buffers when your system starts. The **device** command in this example sets up the HIMEM.SYS device driver.

A streamlined AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

```
prompt $p$g
path c:\;c:\windows;c:\msdos
set temp=c:\windows\temp
```

The **prompt** command determines the appearance of the command prompt. The **path** command specifies the search path for MS-DOS and Windows. (Some versions of MS-DOS might name this directory something other than \MSDOS.) The **set temp** command specifies the directory where temporary files are stored. You may need to create the specified directory if it does not exist. The directory for temporary swap files should be a location that has at least 2 MB of available disk space. For more information about temporary swap files, see Chapter 14, "Managing Memory and Performance."

Comprehensive Index

Key

- V1 Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for Windows User's Guide
 V2 Microsoft Windows User's Guide

- 32-bit disk access V2 197
 checking disk-drive controller compatibility V1 82
 setting up V1 81
 using on battery-powered computers V1 81
- 32-bit file access
 improving performance with V1 83
 listing disk drives using V1 83
 setting up V1 82
 SMARTDrive cache size, reducing V1 83
- 386 Enhanced icon in Control Panel
 32-bit disk access
 checking disk-drive controller compatibility V1 82
 setting up V1 81
 32-bit file access
 listing disk drives using V1 83
 setting up V1 82
- 386 enhanced mode
 About command, checking Windows mode V2 61
 Control menu, opening V2 61
 copying a window (window snapshot) V2 95
 improvements, described V2 19
 memory required for running Windows V2 12
 MS-DOS Prompt, running in a window V2 83
 MS-DOS-based applications
 accessing printer ports V2 128
 copying and pasting information V2 160–161
 exclusive use of resources V2 161–162
 font size, changing V2 160
 running in a window V2 157–158
 running in the background V2 162
 Settings command options V2 158–160
 switching between a window and a full screen V2 158
- network drives, disconnecting from V2 114
 running two or more applications 84
 Scheduling options V2 202
 starting Windows in V2 13
 system requirements for using V2 xvi
 troubleshooting
 386 enhanced mode not available V2 237–238
 application stops responding V2 242
 memory, freeing by using PIF Editor V2 261–262
 virtual-memory settings, changing V2 196–197
 WINSTART.BAT batch file V2 195

- 386 symbol in margin, meaning of V2 xviii
 386MAX line, modified by Setup V2 11
 386SPART.PAR file V2 196
 3Com 3+Open V1 85
 3Com network adapter V1 135

A

- About command
 checking Windows mode V2 61
 Help menu V2 101
- Accented characters, trouble using in filenames V2 242
- Access Pack for Microsoft Windows V1 102
- Accessibility for individuals with disabilities V1 101–106
- Accessories
 See also Network applications
 Calculator V2 129–130
 Calendar V2 131
 Cardfile V2 131–132
 Character Map V2 133
 Clock V2 133
 Media Player V2 134
 Notepad V2 135
 Paintbrush V2 135–136
 Recorder V2 137
 Sound Recorder V2 137
 Terminal V2 138
 Write V2 138
- Accessories group, described V2 74
- Accounts, Mail
 administrator account
 creating V1 90–92
 restriction against removing V1 96
 creating V1 35, 95
 modifying V1 95
 removing V1 96
- Active window, defined V2 85
- Ad Lib MIDI setups V2 180
- Adapter card, network *See* Network adapter
- Adapter Media Type setting V1 146
- Adding applications
 creating program items
 by using File Manager V2 78
 by using Program Manager V2 75–78
 by using Setup V2 79
 setting up applications V2 79, 153–154
 using program information files (PIFs)
 default PIF V2 156
 manufacturer-supplied PIFs V2 155

Adding applications (*continued*)
 using program information files (PIFs) (*continued*)
 modifying PIFs V2 155
 multiple PIFs per application V2 156

Adding directories V2 114

Adding fonts V2 174–176

Adding groups V2 75

Adding program items V2 75–79

Address Book, Mail
 See also online Help for Mail
 modifying accounts V1 95
 MSMAIL.MMF file, described V1 98

Addresses, filing in Cardfile V2 131–132

Addressing a fax V1 49

Administrator account, Mail
 creating V1 90–92
 restriction against removing V1 96

Advanced options for network adapters V1 135

Advanced Security command, Mail
 disabling security V1 56
 exporting a public key V1 57
 importing a public key V1 57
 reading key-encrypted faxes V1 59
 sending digitally signed or key-encrypted faxes V1 58
 setting up and starting security V1 55–56

Advanced settings for serial ports V2 189

All File Details command, File Manager V2 108

Alphabetic order, sorting files in V1 25

ALT+PRINT SCREEN key combination
 copying a window (window snapshot) V2 95
 troubleshooting V2 243

Always On Top command
 Control menu V2 62
 Help menu V2 101

Animation
 files, playing V2 134
 linked objects, updating V2 149

Answer Now! command, Mail V1 52

Application swap files V2 197–198

Application windows
 arranging V2 87
 closing V2 67
 Control menu, opening V2 60
 described V2 53–54
 document window, described V2 53–54
 illustrated V2 50

Applications
 See also MS-DOS-based applications
 About command V2 101
 background, running in V2 162
 Clipboard, transferring information V2 94–97
 exclusive use of resources V2 161–162

Applications (*continued*)
 icons for
 described V2 55
 illustrated V2 50
 program items for, creating
 by using File Manager V2 78
 by using Program Manager V2 75–78
 by using Setup V2 79
 quitting
 MS-DOS-based applications V2 89
 Windows-based applications V2 88
 reducing to icons when starting V2 77, 83
 running simultaneously V2 84
 setting up V2 79, 153–154
 settings, changing
 by using PIF Editor V2 155–156, 161–162
 by using the Settings command V2 158–160
 starting
 by using MS-DOS Prompt V2 83, 157
 by using the Run command V2 82–83
 from a directory window V2 82
 from a group V2 81
 from the StartUp group V2 81
 “out-of-memory” message V2 259
 switching between V2 85, 220
 troubleshooting
 application quits unexpectedly V2 245
 application stops responding V2 242
 capturing a screen 243 image (snapshot)
 font size, changing V2 244
 key or key combination doesn't work V2 241–242
 pasting into MS-DOS-based applications V2 244
 slow-running application V2 243
 Super VGA display driver V2 243
 types of, described
 MS-DOS-based applications V2 73
 older Windows-based applications V2 73
 Windows-based applications V2 73

Applications group, described V2 74

Appointments, scheduling *See* Schedule+

Arrange Icons command, Task List V2 87

Arranging application windows or icons V2 87

ASCII files, creating or editing V2 135

At Work PC Fax *See* PC Fax

Attachments to faxes
 sending V1 49
 viewing V1 53

Audio cassettes of Microsoft documentation V1 103

Audio compact-disc players
 playing by using Media Player V2 134
 setting up device drivers for V2 185–186

- AUTOEXEC.BAT file
 changes Setup makes V2 11
 editing to free memory V2 193–195
 memory-resident programs, running V2 162
 minimum configuration V1 154
 MOUSE.COM mouse driver, setting up V2 240
 MSCDEX command line V1 144
 rem command, using to disable command lines
 V2 193–194
 removing ROUTE.COM V1 146
 SMARTDrive command line V2 212–215
 streamlining when troubleshooting V1 153–154
 system disk, creating V2 269
 TEMP environment variable V2 195
 testing V2 269
 two versions of Windows, using V2 267
 win command V2 12
- .AWP filename extension V1 57
 .AWR filename extension V1 58
 .AWS filename extension V1 57
- ## B
- Background
 of the desktop
 displaying patterns V2 169–170
 displaying wallpaper V2 170–171
 running applications in V2 162
- Background option
 PIF Editor V2 162
 Settings command V2 159
- Backing up private security keys V1 58
 Backing up the MSMAIL.MMF file V1 98
 Backup command, Mail V1 98
 Banyan VINES network V1 85
 Barrel connector, thin-Ethernet cable V1 124
 Base I/O port
 common setting for network adapters V1 110
 displaying information about V1 147
 specifying base port address V2 189–190
 table of port numbers for network adapters V1 114–115
- Base memory address for network adapters
 common setting V1 110
 determining V1 115
 excluding V1 115
- .BAT filename extension V2 82
- Batch files
 creating or editing V2 135
 starting applications from File Manager V2 82
 WINSTART.BAT file V2 195
- Battery-powered computers, using 32-bit disk access V1 81
- Baud rate
 changing V2 189
 common setting V2 256
 lowering to fix printing problems V2 253, 256
 new support for printing at a baud rate of 19200 V2 17
- BBS *See* Bulletin-board services
- Bitmaps for wallpaper V2 170–171
- Blindness and low vision, products and services supporting
 V1 103
- .BMP filename extension V2 170
- BNC T-connector, illustrated V1 123
- Bold type, usage in this guide V2 xviii
- BOOTLOG.TXT file V1 140
- Braille displays, obtaining V1 103
- Branches of the directory tree, viewing V2 111
- Breaking a link to an object V2 150
- Broken links, restoring V2 150
- Browsing
 for network directories V2 113
 for network printers V2 125
- buffers command, CONFIG.SYS file V1 154, V2 194, 270
- Bulletin-board services for obtaining device drivers V2 7
- Bus expansion slots for network adapters V1 109
- Buttons
 command buttons V2 68–69
 for sizing windows (illustrated) V2 51
 Help buttons V2 103
- By File Type command, File Manager V2 108
- ## C
- Cables, connecting computers to networks
 overview V1 122
 thick-Ethernet system V1 125–127
 thin-Ethernet system V1 123–125
 token-ring network V1 130–131
 twisted-pair Ethernet system V1 128–129
- Cache, disk
 default size V1 82
 SMARTDrive cache V1 83
- Calculator
See also online Help for Calculator
 described V2 129–130
 keyboard shortcuts V2 225
- Calendar
See also online Help for Calendar; Schedule+
 described V2 131
 keyboard shortcuts V2 225

Canceling

- check boxes V2 72
- commands V2 72
- links V2 150
- menus V2 59
- outgoing faxes V1 51
- printing V1 30
- printing of documents V2 122
- selections
 - in application windows V2 92
 - in dialog boxes V2 57–58

Capturing screen images

- copying onto the Clipboard V2 94–95
- troubleshooting V2 243

Cardfile

- See also* online Help for Cardfile
- described V2 131–132
- keyboard shortcuts V2 226
- trouble with the Paste command V2 249

Cartridge fonts

- printing problems V2 253, 255
- using V2 173

CAS modems V1 44

Cascade command, Task List V2 87

Cascading menu, defined V2 59

CD players *See* Audio compact-disc players

CD-ROM drive, sharing directories V1 144

Central processing unit (CPU), monitoring resource usage V1 73

CGA (color graphics adapter) V2 236

Change Network Settings command, Windows Setup

- network adapter settings, changing V1 148
- protocols, checking V1 143

Change Password command, Mail V1 37

Change System Settings command, Windows Setup V2 187

Channel maps for MIDI setups, editing V2 178–179

Character Map

- See also* online Help for Character Map
- described V2 133

Character set (code page), changing V2 181

Characters used with a font, displaying V2 133

Chat

- See also* online Help for Chat
- described V1 70

Check box, in dialog boxes V2 72

Check mark on menus, meaning of V2 59

chkdsk command

- recovering lost disk space V2 199
- restriction on using while Windows is running V2 84

Choosing vs. selecting, defined V2 57

Chronological order, sorting files in V1 25

Class 1 or Class 2 modems V1 44

Clearing check boxes V2 72

Clicking with the mouse, described V2 56

Clipboard

See also Clipboard Viewer; ClipBook Viewer

clearing contents V2 97

copying information

- from MS-DOS–based applications V2 160
- from Windows-based applications V2 94–95
- screen image (screen snapshot) V2 94
- window contents (window snapshot) V2 95

copying Local ClipBook pages V1 64

files, retrieving V2 97

format of stored information, changing V2 150–151

keyboard shortcuts V2 223

memory management V2 259

pasting information

- into MS-DOS–based applications V2 161
- into Windows-based applications V2 96

saving the contents of V1 63, V2 97

troubleshooting

- Paste command gives varied results V2 247
- Paste command unavailable V2 249
- Paste Link command unavailable V2 249
- pasting into MS-DOS–based applications V2 244
- Picture option unavailable in Object Packager V2 248
- viewing the contents of V1 62, V2 96

Clipboard Viewer

See also ClipBook Viewer

keyboard shortcuts V2 225

viewing Clipboard contents V2 96

ClipBook

See also ClipBook Viewer

connecting to ClipBooks on other computers V1 65

copying pages to the Clipboard V1 64

defined V1 61

disconnecting from ClipBooks on other computers V1 66

Local Clipbook, defined V1 61

page, defined V1 61

saving Clipboard contents V1 63

sharing Local ClipBook pages V1 64–65

viewing Local ClipBook pages V1 62

ClipBook Viewer

See also online Help for ClipBook Viewer

connecting to ClipBooks on other computers V1 65

copying pages to the Clipboard V1 64

disconnecting from another ClipBook V1 66

embedding or linking objects from another computer V1 66

formats V1 67

illustrated V1 62

length of lines in pasted information V1 63

password, assigning to Local ClipBook pages V1 65

sharing Local ClipBook pages V1 64–65

toolbar V1 62–63

viewing Clipboard contents V1 62

viewing Local ClipBook pages V1 62

- Clock speed of computer V2 206
 Clock, displaying analog or digital V2 133
 Close command, on the Control menu
 closing dialog boxes V2 72
 closing documents or windows V2 67
 described V2 61
 quitting Windows-based applications V2 88
 Closing
 applications
 MS-DOS-based applications V2 89
 Windows-based applications V2 88
 dialog boxes V2 72
 files V2 61
 files in shared directories V1 24
 Help V2 104
 menus V2 59
 windows V2 67
 .CLP filename extension V1 63, V2 97
 CO-NET CD V1 106
 Code page (character set), changing V2 181
 Collapse Branch command, File Manager V2 112
 Collapsing a directory V2 112
 Color graphics adapter (CGA) V2 236
 Color schemes for the desktop
 changing V2 167
 choosing V2 165–167
 creating custom colors V2 168
 Colors, adjusting for improved visibility V1 104, 105
 .COM filename extension V2 82
 COM ports *See* Serial ports
 COMIrqSharing setting, SYSTEM.INI file V2 263
 Command buttons, in dialog boxes V2 68–69
 Command line, Windows V2 13
 Command lines in startup files
 See also AUTOEXEC.BAT file; CONFIG.SYS file
 disabling V2 193–194
 Command prompt, MS-DOS V2 83
 Commands
 canceling V2 72
 choosing from menus V2 58–59
 command buttons V2 68–69
 dimmed commands, meaning of V2 59
 Help for dialog boxes V2 102
 Communication Application Specification (CAS) modem
 V1 44
 Communications
 remote (using Terminal)
 described V2 138
 troubleshooting V2 264–265
 Communications (*continued*)
 serial
 changing settings V2 188–189
 common settings V2 256
 troubleshooting V2 262–264
 Compatible networks V1 85
 Compose Note command, Mail V1 37
 Composing Mail messages V1 37
 Compressed files on Setup disks, expanding V2 238
 COMxProtocol = XOFF setting, SYSTEM.INI file V2 264
 Concentrator (hub), illustrated V1 129
 CONFIG.SYS file
 buffers command line V2 194, 270
 changes Setup makes V2 11
 device command lines
 disabling V2 193–194
 EMM386.EXE V2 208–212
 HIMEM.SYS V2 203–206
 MOUSE.SYS V2 240
 RAMDRIVE.SYS V2 206–208
 double buffering V2 215
 drvparm command, adding V2 235
 editing to free memory V2 193–194
 memory-resident programs, running V2 162
 minimum configuration V1 154
 rem command, using to disable command lines
 V2 193–194
 shell command line V2 194
 streamlining when troubleshooting V1 153–154
 system disk, creating V2 269
 testing V2 269
 Configuration disk for network-adapter installation V1 109
 Configuring
 fax modems V1 44–45
 hardware *See* Device drivers
 memory *See* Managing memory and performance
 multimedia device drivers V2 185–186
 network-adapter drivers
 changing settings V1 136–137
 installing a driver V1 133–135
 removing a driver V1 136
 network adapters
 See also online Help for Windows Setup
 base I/O port V1 114–115
 base memory address V1 115
 connector, specifying V1 116
 default settings V1 110
 DIP-switch settings V1 112
 interrupt request level (IRQ) setting V1 113–114

Key

V1

Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for
Windows User's Guide

V2

Microsoft Windows User's
Guide

Configuring (*continued*)

- network adapters (*continued*)
 - jumper settings V1 111
 - settings, recording V1 113
 - software configuration V1 121–122
 - troubleshooting V1 146–149
 - when to configure the adapter V1 111
- ports V2 188–189
- printers V2 126–127
- Connect command, ClipBook Viewer V1 65, 66
- Connect Network Drive command, File Manager
 - connecting to directories on network servers V1 86, V2 112
 - connecting to shared directories V1 22
- Connect Network Printer command, Print Manager V1 28, 87
- Connecting
 - cables
 - overview V1 122
 - thick-Ethernet system V1 125–127
 - thin-Ethernet system V1 123–125
 - token-ring network V1 130–131
 - twisted-pair Ethernet system V1 128–129
 - to a post office V1 33–34
 - to ClipBooks on other computers V1 65
 - to directories on network servers V1 86–87
 - to network directories V2 112–113
 - to network printers V1 27–28, 87, V2 124–125
 - to other networks V1 85–88
 - to remote computers via modem V2 138
 - to shared directories V1 21–22
 - to shared fax modems V1 45–46
 - to Windows NT or LAN Manager servers, troubleshooting V1 145
 - to workgroup computers, troubleshooting V1 143–144
- Connector jack, illustrated V1 123
- Connector plug, illustrated V1 123
- Contents feature in Help V2 101
- Context-sensitive Help V2 20
- Control menu
 - commands, described V2 61–62
 - Control-menu box (illustrated) V2 51
 - opening V2 60–61
- Control Panel
 - See also* online Help for Control Panel
 - adjustments for impaired motion or vision V1 104–105
 - 32-bit disk access V1 81–82
 - 32-bit file access V1 82–83
 - color schemes for the desktop
 - changing V2 167
 - choosing V2 165–167
 - creating custom colors V2 168

Control Panel (*continued*)

- desktop settings
 - patterns V2 169–170
 - screen savers V2 171–172
 - wallpaper V2 170–171
 - device drivers, installing V2 184
 - fax modems
 - configuring V1 44–45
 - setting up to share a modem V1 47
 - setting up to use a shared modem V1 45–46
 - stop sharing V1 48
 - fonts
 - adding V2 174–176
 - described V2 172–173
 - removing V2 176–177
 - TrueType V2 174–176
 - viewing on the screen V2 173
 - keyboard shortcuts V2 225
 - LAN Manager options, setting V1 88
 - logon options, changing V1 76
 - logon password, changing V1 79–80
 - MIDI Mapper V2 179–180
 - multimedia drivers
 - installing V2 185–186
 - removing V2 186
 - multitasking options V2 202
 - network events, recording V1 80
 - network options, setting V2 180–181
 - networking enhancements, described V1 xv
 - ports, configuring V2 188–189
 - sound options V2 177–180
 - startup settings, changing V1 78–79
 - virtual-memory settings, changing V2 196
 - Windows NT options, setting V1 88
 - workgroup settings, changing V1 78
- Conventional memory
 - avoiding for a RAM drive V2 208
 - described V2 191
 - disk buffers V2 194
 - Conventions, typographic V2 xviii
 - Conversing by using Chat V1 70
 - Copy command
 - File Manager V2 114
 - MS-DOS–based applications V2 160
 - Windows-based applications V2 94, 95
 - Copy Disk command, File Manager V2 117
 - Copying
 - See also* Object linking and embedding (OLE)
 - compressed files on Setup disks V2 238
 - directly to a printer port V2 250
 - directories V2 114
 - files V2 114

Copying (continued)

- floppy disks V2 117
- from MS-DOS-based applications V2 160
- from Windows-based applications V2 94–97
- keyboard shortcuts for V2 223
- linked objects V2 149
- Local ClipBook pages to the Clipboard V1 64
- objects from another computer V1 66
- screen image (screen snapshot) V2 94
- vs. object linking and embedding V2 143
- window contents (window snapshot) V2 95
- Copyright of active application, checking V2 101
- Correcting typing mistakes V2 92
- Create Directory command, File Manager V2 114
- Creating
 - directories V2 114
 - groups V2 75
 - program items
 - by using File Manager V2 78
 - by using Program Manager V2 75–78
 - by using Setup V2 79
- Current directory, changing V2 110
- Cursor
 - adjusting for improved visibility V1 105
 - cursor-movement keys V2 221
 - selection cursor, defined V2 68
- Custom colors, creating V2 168
- Custom Setup V1 15, V2 4
- Customer Support Services, obtaining device drivers V2 7
- Customizing network settings
 - Control Panel, using V1 76
 - described V1 75
 - enabling and disabling sharing V1 80–81
 - logon options, changing V1 76
 - logon password, changing V1 79–80
 - recording network events V1 80
 - startup settings, changing V1 78–79
 - workgroup settings, changing V1 77–78
- Customizing Windows
 - character set, changing V2 181
 - color schemes
 - changing V2 167
 - choosing V2 165–167
 - creating custom colors V2 168
 - fonts
 - adding V2 174–176
 - described V2 172–173
 - removing V2 176–177
 - TrueType V2 174–176
 - viewing on the screen V2 173

Customizing Windows (continued)

- MIDI settings V2 178–180
- patterns V2 169–170
- screen savers V2 171–172
- sound V2 177–180
- wallpaper V2 170–171
- Customizing Windows for Workgroups for improved accessibility V1 104–105
- Cut command, Windows-based applications V2 94
- Cutting
 - See also* Copying; Pasting
 - text or graphics from Windows-based applications V2 94

D

- Data bits
 - changing the setting V2 189
 - common setting V2 256
- Data transfer
 - between applications
 - MS-DOS-based applications V2 160–161
 - Windows-based applications V2 94–95
 - between computers, using Terminal V2 138
- .DCX filename extension V1 53
- DEC Pathworks V1 85
- Default color scheme V2 166
- Default printer, choosing V1 30, V2 123
- Default settings for network adapters V1 110
- _DEFAULT.PIF file V2 156
- Definitions of terms in online Help, displaying V2 103
- Delete command
 - File Manager V2 115
 - Mail V1 40
 - Program Manager V2 75
- Delete Document command, Print Manager V1 30
- Deleted Mail folder
 - retrieving messages from V1 40
 - saving deleted messages when quitting Mail V1 41
- Deleting
 - Clipboard contents V2 97
 - commands in startup files V2 193–195
 - directories V2 115
 - documents from the print queue V2 122
 - documents waiting to print V1 30
 - faxes, outgoing V1 51
 - files V2 115
 - fonts V2 176–177
 - groups V2 75
 - links V2 150
 - Mail accounts V1 96

Key

V1

Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for
Windows User's Guide

V2

Microsoft Windows User's
Guide

- Deleting (*continued*)
 Mail messages V1 40, 41
 network-adapter drivers V1 136
- DeskJet printers, Hewlett-Packard V2 255
- Desktop
 color schemes
 changing V2 167
 creating custom colors V2 168
 selecting V2 165–167
 copying (capturing the screen image) V2 94
 defined V2 50, 165
 patterns V2 169–170
 screen savers V2 171–172
 wallpaper V2 170–171
- Destination directory or drive, moving or copying files V2 114
- Destination document, object linking and embedding V2 142
- device command lines
 disabling unnecessary device drivers V2 193–194
 EMM386.EXE V2 208–212
 HIMEM.SYS V2 203–206
 mouse driver V2 240
 RAMDRIVE.SYS V2 206–208
 SMARTDrive command for double buffering V2 215
 streamlined CONFIG.SYS file V2 270
- device commands, CONFIG.SYS file V1 154
- Device drivers
 See also Display drivers; Keyboard drivers; Mouse drivers
 bulletin-board services V2 7
 configuring V2 184
 defined V2 183
 downloading from network services V2 7
 EMM386.EXE V2 208–212
 HIMEM.SYS V2 203–206
 installing V2 184
 Microsoft Diagnostics (MSD) program, using to get
 information about installed device drivers V2 269
 multimedia drivers V2 185–186
 network-adapter drivers V1 133–137
 preserved when upgrading Windows V2 6
 purchasing on disks V2 7
 RAMDRIVE.SYS V2 206–208
 SMARTDRV.EXE V2 212–215
 third-party drivers, installing V2 184
 upgraded by the Setup program V2 6
 Windows Driver Library (WDL) V1 102, V2 7, 183
- devicehigh command, CONFIG.SYS file V2 6
- Diagnosing network problems V1 149–150
- Diagnostics *See* Microsoft Diagnostics (MSD) program
- Dialog boxes (*continued*)
 check boxes V2 72
 closing V2 72
 command buttons V2 68–69
 Control menu, opening V2 60
- Dialog boxes (*continued*)
 described V2 67–72
 Help, online V2 102
 keyboard shortcuts V2 221
 keys for selecting items in V2 222
 list boxes
 described V2 70
 drop-down list boxes V2 70–71
 selecting items in V2 57–58
 moving V2 67
 moving within V2 68
 option buttons V2 71
 scrolling through information in V2 66
 selecting options in V2 68–69
 text boxes V2 69
- Digitally signed faxes
 digital signature, defined V1 58
 purpose of V1 54
 sending V1 58
 using in a nonsecure environment V1 55
- Dimmed command buttons V2 69
- Dimmed commands V2 59
- DIP-switch settings for network adapters
 changing by using Windows Setup V1 148
 changing manually V1 112
- dir command, checking free disk space V2 200
- Directories
 CD-ROM drive, trouble sharing directories on V1 144
 changing directory levels V2 111–112
 changing the current directory V2 110
 copying V2 114
 creating V2 114
 deleting V2 115
 icon representing, illustrated V2 106
 moving V2 114
 network directories
 connecting to V2 112–113
 disconnecting from V2 114
 network servers, connecting to directories on V1 86–87
 renaming V2 115
 searching for V2 115
 selecting V2 109
 sharing
 closing shared files V1 24
 connecting to shared directories V1 21–22
 described V1 xii
 disconnecting from network drives V1 22
 displaying names of people sharing files V1 24
 how to share directories V1 23
 how to stop sharing directories V1 24
 passwords, assigning to shared directories V1 23
 start-up directory for applications V2 77
 viewing in the File Manager window V1 21

- Directory tree
 - branches, changing the display of V2 111–112
 - current directory, changing V2 110
 - described V2 106
- Directory windows
 - current directory, changing V2 110
 - customizing V2 107–108
 - directory levels, changing V2 111–112
 - drive, changing V1 21, V2 110
 - icons in, illustrated V2 106
 - opening V2 107
 - selecting files or directories V2 109–110
 - sorting files in V1 25
 - sorting the contents of V2 108
 - split bar V2 106
 - starting applications from V2 82
 - updating V2 108
- Disabilities, products and services supporting V1 101–106
- Disabling commands in startup files V2 193–195
- Disconnect command, ClipBook Viewer V1 66
- Disconnect Network Drive command, File Manager V1 22, V2 112
- Disconnect Network Printer command, Print Manager V1 28
- Disconnecting
 - from ClipBooks on other computers V1 66
 - from network directories V2 114
 - from network drives V1 22
 - from network printers V1 28, V2 125
 - workgroup connections, by using Net Watcher V1 71
- Disk access, 32-bit V2 197
 - checking disk-drive controller compatibility V1 82
 - setting up V1 81
 - using on battery-powered computers V1 81
- Disk buffers V2 194
- Disk cache
 - default size V1 82
 - SMARTDrive cache V1 83
- Disk caching
 - described V2 201–202
 - disabling if interfering with Setup V2 235
 - SMARTDrive command line V2 212–215
- Disk drives
 - 32-bit disk access V1 81–82
 - changing the current drive V1 21, V2 110
 - floppy disk drives, SMARTDrive cache for V1 83
 - icons for V2 106, 107
- Disk space
 - amount of, determining V2 200
 - conserving by preventing swapping V2 197
 - Custom Setup V1 15
- Disk space (*continued*)
 - disk caching V2 201–202
 - freeing
 - by removing unnecessary files V2 200–201
 - by using the chkdsk command V2 199
 - Mail messages, user accounts, and post office V1 90
 - Mail, maintaining
 - checking status of shared folders V1 96–97
 - compressing shared folders V1 97
 - PC Fax V1 43
 - recommended amount of free space V2 199
 - swap files
 - described V2 192
 - enhanced mode V2 196–197
 - standard mode V2 197–198
 - system requirements for Windows for Workgroups V1 x, xi
- Disk-compactation programs V2 199
- Diskless workstation V2 8
- Disks
 - See also* System disk
 - copying V2 117
 - formatting V2 116
 - labeling V2 116
 - network-adaptor installation V1 109
- Display drivers
 - CGA, obtaining V2 236
 - EGA, updated by Setup V2 11
 - installing or updating V2 186–188
 - Super VGA V2 243, 244
- Display options, Settings command (MS-DOS-based applications) V2 159
- Display Usage option, PIF Editor V2 261, 262
- Document conventions V2 xviii
- Document windows
 - closing V2 67
 - Control menu, opening V2 60
 - described V2 53–54
 - keys for selecting items in V2 221
- Documents
 - closing V2 61
 - destination document, object linking and embedding V2 142
 - icon for
 - in application windows V2 55
 - in directory windows V2 106
 - opening V2 89
 - opening when starting applications V2 82–83
 - program items for, creating V2 78
 - saving V2 90

Documents (*continued*)
 source document, object linking and embedding V2 142
 switching between V2 86
 text, working with V2 91–93

Domains
 defined V1 11
 logging on automatically when you start Windows V1 79
 passwords V1 79, 88

DOS prompt *See* Command prompt; MS-DOS Prompt
DOSPRMPT.PIF file V2 84, 157

Double-buffering feature of SMARTDrive V2 11, 215

Double-clicking with the mouse, described V2 56

Download Service, Microsoft (MSDL) V1 102

Downloading device drivers V2 7

Dragging and dropping file icons V2 87–88

Dragging with the mouse, described V2 56

Drawings
 creating *See* online Help for Paintbrush
 embedding in documents V2 145
 linking to documents V2 148

Drive bar in File Manager windows
 changing the current drive V2 110
 described V2 107
 illustrated V2 106

Drive icons, described V2 107

Drive, changing the current drive V1 21, V2 110

Driver Library, Windows (WDL) V1 102, V2 7, 183

Drivers *See* Device drivers

drvparm command, adding to the CONFIG.SYS file V2 235

Drop-down list box, in dialog boxes V2 70–71

Dvorak keyboard layouts V1 102–103

E

Edit commands, MS-DOS-based applications V2 61–62

Editing

See also Word processing

 ASCII (text) files V2 135

 embedded objects V2 145

 linked objects V2 148

 sound files V2 137

 text
 basic techniques V2 92–93
 keys for editing text V2 222

EFAXPUMP.INI file V1 153

EGA.SYS device driver, updated by Setup V2 11

EISA bus expansion slot V1 109

EISA memory V2 206

EISA network adapters, software configuration V1 121–122

Electronic conversations, using Chat V1 70

Electronic downloading service V2 7

Electronic mail *See* Mail

Ellipsis
 in command buttons V2 68
 in commands on menus V2 59

EMB handles V2 204

Embedding
 See also Object linking and embedding (OLE)
 by using Object Packager V2 151–152
 described V2 15, 142–145
 format of objects, changing V2 150–151
 objects from another computer V1 66
 Paintbrush drawings V2 145

EMM386 memory manager
 command line V2 208–212
 described V2 203
 excluding shared memory used by network adapter V2 212
 memory options V2 209
 updated by Setup V2 11

EMM386 memory manager or provider V1 115, 141

EMMExclude option, starting Windows with V2 237–238

EMMExclude setting, SYSTEM.INI file V1 115, 141

Encrypted faxes
 described V1 54, 58
 reading password-encrypted faxes V1 55
 sending key-encrypted faxes V1 58
 sending password-encrypted faxes V1 54

Enhanced features in Windows version 3.1 V2 15

Enhanced graphics adapter (EGA) device driver V2 11

Enhanced mode *See* 386 enhanced mode

Entering text V2 91

Environment space, modifying V2 194

Environment variables
 effect of environment space on V2 194
 TEMP, setting to a RAM drive V2 195

EPT ports V2 127

Erasing *See* Deleting

Ethernet
 thick-Ethernet system V1 125–127
 thin-Ethernet system V1 123–125
 twisted-pair Ethernet system V1 128–129

Event log
 recording network events V1 80
 viewing *See* Net Watcher

Exchanging information
 See also Chat; Mail; PC Fax; Sharing directories; Sharing printers
 overview of V1 5

Exclusive option
 PIF Editor V2 162
 Settings command V2 159

.EXE filename extension V2 82

Execution option, PIF Editor V2 261, 262

- Exit And Sign Out command, Mail V1 41
- Exit command
- applications, quitting V2 88
 - Mail V1 41
 - MS-DOS Prompt, quitting V2 84
 - Print Manager V1 30
 - printing, canceling V2 122
 - windows, closing V2 67
- Expand All command, File Manager V2 111
- Expand Branch command, File Manager V2 111
- expand command, MS-DOS V2 238
- Expand One Level command, File Manager V2 111
- EXPAND.EXE program V2 238
- Expanded memory
- described V2 192
 - EMM386 memory manager, described V2 203
- Expanded-memory managers, troubleshooting V1 141
- Expanding a directory V2 111
- Expanding and copying files on Setup disks V2 238
- Express Setup V1 15, V2 3-4
- Extended characters
- character set, changing V2 181
 - displaying by using Character Map V2 133
- Extended Industry Standard Architecture (EISA) V1 109, V2 206
- Extended memory
- described V2 191
 - HIMEM memory manager V2 203-206
- Extended MIDI setup V2 180
- Extended-memory block (EMB) handles V2 204
- Extending selections V2 93
- ## F
- Fast application-switching V2 41
- Fast Printing Direct To Port option, Control Panel V2 250
- Fax application *See* PC Fax
- Fax modems
- active fax modem, specifying V1 46
 - CAS modems V1 44
 - Class 1 or Class 2 modems V1 44
 - configuring V1 44-45
 - driver for CAS modems, installing V1 44
 - hardware, installing on a serial port V1 44
 - shared directory for, creating V1 47-48
 - sharing
 - setting up to share a modem V1 46-48
 - setting up to use a shared modem V1 45-46
 - stop sharing V1 48
 - telephone line vs. separate line, using V1 44
- Fax modems (*continued*)
- troubleshooting
 - adding a shared modem V1 152
 - configuring a shared modem V1 151
 - fax suspended in queue V1 152
 - modem speed V1 152
- Fax numbers
- See also* Personal Address Book
 - National Information System V1 106
 - Recording for the Blind, Inc. V1 103
 - Trace R&D Center V1 106
- Fax Viewer
- See also* online Help for PC Fax
 - viewing documents attached to faxes V1 53
- Faxes *See* PC Fax
- File access, 32-bit
- improving performance with V1 83
 - listing disk drives using V1 83
 - setting up V1 82
 - SMARTDrive cache size, reducing V1 83
- FILE as printer port, printing to a file V2 123
- File Manager
- See also* Directories; Directory windows; Files; online Help for File Manager
 - changing the current directory V2 110
 - changing the drive V2 110
 - copying files or directories V2 114
 - copying floppy disks V2 117
 - creating a directory V2 114
 - customizing the File Manager window V2 107-108
 - deleting files or directories V2 115
 - described V2 16-17, 105-107
 - directory levels, changing V2 111-112
 - directory windows
 - opening V2 107
 - updating V2 108
 - disk space, checking the amount of V2 200
 - dragging and dropping files V2 87-88
 - drive bar V2 106, 107
 - drive, changing V1 21
 - formatting floppy disks V2 116
 - icons in directory windows V2 106
 - keyboard shortcuts V2 224
 - mail, sending V1 25
 - menu bar V2 106, 107
 - moving files or directories V2 114
 - new features, described V1 xii
 - new items in File Manager window, illustrated V1 20
 - printing files V2 116
 - renaming files or directories V2 115

File Manager (*continued*)

- searching for files or directories V2 115
- selecting files or directories V2 109–110
- sharing directories
 - closing files in shared directories V1 24
 - connecting to shared directories V1 21–22
 - disconnecting from network drives V1 22
 - displaying names of people sharing files V1 24
 - how to share directories V1 23
 - how to stop sharing directories V1 24
 - passwords, assigning V1 23
- sorting files in directory windows V1 25
- starting applications V2 82
- status bar V2 106, 107
- system disk, creating V1 153
- toolbar
 - buttons for displaying files V1 25
 - buttons for sharing directories V1 21
 - viewing different drives and directories V1 21

File transfer, using Terminal V2 138**Filename extensions**

- .BAT (batch file) V2 82
- .BMP (bitmap file) V2 170
- .CLP (Clipboard file) V2 97
- .COM (program file) V2 82
- .EXE (program file) V2 82
- .INI (initialization file) V2 115
- .PIF (program information file) V2 155
- .REG (registration file)
- .SYS (system file) V2 239
- .TMP (temporary file) V2 200
- .TXT (text file) V2 267
- using to rename files V2 115
- using to search for files V2 115
- using to select files V2 110
- .WAV (sound file) V2 177
- .WRI (Write file) V2 267

Filenames

- See also* Filename extensions
- accented characters, trouble using V2 242
- changing V2 115

Files

- See also* Filename extensions
- closing V2 61
- copying V2 114
- deleting V2 115
- dragging and dropping V2 87–88
- fragmented V2 199
- icons representing, illustrated V2 106
- moving V2 114
- opening V2 89
- opening when starting applications V2 82–83
- printing *See* Printing
- renaming V2 115

Files (*continued*)

- saving V2 90
- searching for V2 115
- security V1 23
- selecting in directory windows V2 109–110
- sharing
 - access to shared files V1 23
 - connecting to shared directories V1 21–22
 - sorting in directory windows V1 25, V2 108
- files command, CONFIG.SYS file V1 154, V2 270
- Finding computers on the network, troubleshooting V1 143–144
- Finding information in online Help V2 101–102
- Floppy disk drives, reducing the SMARTDrive cache size V1 83
- Floppy disks
 - copying V2 117
 - formatting V2 116
 - labeling V2 116
- Flow control
 - changing the setting V2 189
 - common setting V2 256
 - remote communications, troubleshooting V2 265
 - serial port, troubleshooting V2 256
- Folders, Mail
 - See also* online Help for Mail
 - checking status of shared folders V1 96–97
 - compressing shared folders V1 97
- FontChangeEnable setting, SYSTEM.INI file V2 245
- Fonts
 - adding V2 174–176
 - adjusting for improved visibility V1 104, 105
 - cartridge fonts V2 173
 - characters used with, displaying V2 133
 - copying soft fonts from port to port V2 255
 - printer fonts V2 173
 - printing problems
 - cartridge fonts V2 253, 255
 - printer capabilities, checking V2 252
 - soft fonts V2 255
 - TrueType fonts V2 254–255
 - removing V2 176–177
 - screen fonts V2 173
 - size, changing
 - MS-DOS–based applications V2 160
 - troubleshooting V2 244
 - soft fonts V2 173
 - TrueType
 - adding V2 174–176
 - described V2 15, 174
 - using exclusively V2 176
 - Windows fonts V2 172–173
- Fonts command, on the Control menu V2 62, 160
- Foreground option, Settings command V2 159

Format Disk command, File Manager V2 116
 Format of objects stored on the Clipboard, changing V2 150–151
 Formatting disks V2 116
 Forwarding faxes V1 53
 Fragmented files V2 199
 Full Screen option, Settings command V2 159

G

Games group, described V2 74
 Gateways
 See also MAIL.WRI online document
 described V1 99
 General MIDI setup V2 180
 Glossary terms in Help, displaying definitions of V2 103
 Graphics mode
 printing in V1 30
 vs. text mode V2 244
 Graphics, printing problems
 insufficient printer memory V2 256
 Paintbrush graphics V2 257
 Grounded terminator
 thick-Ethernet system V1 127
 thin-Ethernet system V1 124
 Group icons
 adding a program item to a group V2 78
 described V2 55
 Groups
 adding program items to V2 78
 creating V2 75
 deleting V2 75
 group icons, described V2 55
 predefined, described V2 74
 preserved when upgrading Windows V2 6
 size limitation of V2 75
 starting applications from V2 81
 Guided tour of Windows operating system V2 23–44

H

Handicaps, products and services supporting V1 101–106
 Handles, extended-memory block (EMB) V2 204
 Handshake
 remote communications, troubleshooting V2 265
 serial port, troubleshooting V2 256
 Hardware
 configuring *See* Device drivers
 detection by Setup, skipping V1 139, 141, V2 233–234, 237

Hardware (*continued*)
 setting up to use with Windows V2 235–236
 settings
 correcting after running Setup V1 140, V2 236
 table for recording V1 113
 system requirements V1 x, xi, V2 xvi
 Hayes modem, using Terminal with V2 138
 Help, online V1 xv
 closing V2 104
 context-sensitive V2 20
 dialog boxes, getting Help with V2 102
 finding information V2 101–102
 glossary definitions, displaying V2 103
 Help buttons, described V2 103
 Help menu commands, described V2 100–101
 keyboard shortcuts V2 219
 starting V2 99–100
 Hewlett-Packard
 DeskJet and LaserJet printers V2 255
 mouse driver, updated by Setup V2 11
 Hidden files
 defined V2 115
 icon representing, illustrated V2 106
 High memory area (HMA)
 described V2 192
 HIMEM command line V2 204
 network software, troubleshooting V2 266
 High-speed communications errors V2 263–264
 Highlighting text or options *See* Selecting
 HIMEM memory manager
 command line V2 11, 203–206
 described V2 203
 HMA *See* High memory area
 Hub (concentrator), illustrated V1 129

I

IBM LANServer V1 85
 IBM mouse V2 241
 Icons
 application icons
 described V2 55
 illustrated V2 50
 arranging V2 87
 changing V2 80
 choosing V2 81
 Control menu for, opening V2 60
 directory-window icons, illustrated V2 106
 document icons V2 55
 dragging and dropping files V2 87–88

Icons (*continued*)

- drive icons V2 106, 107
 - flashing to signal a message V2 88
 - group icons V2 55
 - label for, changing V2 76
 - MORICONS.DLL file V2 80
 - moving V2 65
 - PROGMAN.EXE file V2 80
 - program-item icons V2 55
 - reducing windows to V2 63–64
 - restoring to windows V2 65
 - Up icon in directory windows
 - illustrated V2 106
 - using to change directories V2 110
- Impaired hearing, motion, or vision V1 101–106
- Improving performance
 - 32-bit disk access V1 81–82
 - 32-bit file access V1 82–83
- Inbox in Mail, illustrated V1 36
- Industry Standard Architecture (ISA) V1 109
- .INI filename extension V2 115
- Insert Object command
 - troubleshooting V2 247
 - Write V2 145
- Inserting files. *See* Object linking and embedding (OLE)
- Insertion point
 - adjusting for improved visibility V1 105
 - illustrated V2 51
 - in text boxes V2 69
- Installing device drivers
 - methods for installing, described V2 184
 - mouse, keyboard, or display drivers V2 186–188
 - multimedia drivers V2 185–186
 - third-party drivers V2 184
- Installing fonts V2 174–176
- Installing network adapters
 - configuring the adapter
 - base I/O port V1 114–115
 - base memory address V1 115
 - connector, specifying V1 116
 - DIP-switch settings V1 112
 - hardware settings, recording V1 113
 - interrupt request level (IRQ) setting V1 113–114
 - jumper settings V1 111
 - software configuration V1 121–122
 - when to configure the adapter V1 111

connecting cables
 - overview V1 122
 - thick-Ethernet system V1 125–127
 - thin-Ethernet system V1 123–125
 - token-ring network V1 130–131
 - twisted-pair Ethernet system V1 128–129

drivers for, installing V1 133–135

overview V1 107

Installing network adapters (*continued*)

- placing the adapter in your computer V1 116, 118–121
 - required items V1 108–109
 - second adapter, installing V1 107
 - troubleshooting V1 146–149
- Installing printers V2 126–128
- International format for fax numbers V1 59
- Interrupt 15h interface V2 204
- Interrupt request level (IRQ) setting
 - common setting for network adapters V1 110
 - determining for network adapters V1 113–114
 - obtaining information about V1 147
 - specifying V2 189–190
 - troubleshooting
 - mouse problems V2 239, 240
 - printing problems V2 251
 - trouble accessing a port V2 263
- Interrupting printing V1 30, V2 121–122
- Introduction to the Windows operating system V2 23–44
- IPX protocol V1 137
- IRQ. *See* Interrupt request level (IRQ) setting
- ISA bus expansion slot V1 109
- ISA network adapters, software configuration V1 122
- Italic type, usage in this guide V2 xviii

J

- Jumper settings for network adapters
 - changing by using Windows Setup V1 148
 - changing manually V1 111

K

- Key assignments for MIDI setups, editing V2 178–179
- Key combinations
 - format in this guide V2 xviii
 - troubleshooting V2 241–242
- Key encryption
 - described V1 54, 58
 - sending key-encrypted faxes V1 58
- Keyboard adjustments for impaired motion V1 105
- Keyboard driver, installing or updating V2 186–188
- Keyboard layout
 - changing the character set V2 181
 - Dvorak layouts for individuals with impaired motion V1 102–103
- Keyboard shortcuts
 - Calculator keys V2 225
 - Calendar keys V2 225
 - Cardfile keys V2 226
 - Clipboard Viewer keys V2 225
 - closing windows V2 223
 - Control Panel keys V2 225

Keyboard shortcuts (*continued*)

- copying to the Clipboard V2 223
- cursor-movement keys V2 221
- dialog-box keys V2 221
- editing keys V2 222
- File Manager keys V2 224
- Help keys V2 219
- Media Player keys V2 228
- menu keys V2 220
- Notepad keys V2 226
- Object Packager keys V2 227
- Paintbrush keys V2 227
- PIF Editor keys V2 225
- Print Manager keys V2 224
- Program Manager keys V2 223
- quitting applications V2 223
- scrolling keys V2 221
- selection keys V2 93, 221
- Sound Recorder keys V2 228
- switching between applications V2 220
- Write keys V2 228

Keys, security

- defined V1 54
- private keys, backing up or restoring V1 58
- public keys
 - exchanging V1 56
 - exporting to floppy disk V1 57
 - importing from floppy disk V1 57
- setting up V1 55

L

Labeling disks V2 116

LAN Manager

- connecting to servers, troubleshooting V1 145
- logging on automatically when you start Windows V1 79
- passwords V1 79, 88
- server not listed in Connect dialog boxes V1 144
- setting options in Control Panel V1 88
- WinPopUp, sending and receiving messages V1 73–74

LAPC1 MIDI setup V2 180

Laser printers, troubleshooting V2 254, 255

LaserJet printers, Hewlett-Packard V2 255

LCD color schemes V2 166

Linking

- See also* Object linking and embedding (OLE)
- by using Object Packager V2 151–152
- canceled or deleting links V2 150
- copying linked objects V2 149
- described V2 15, 142–143, 146–148

Linking (*continued*)

- editing linked objects V2 148
- format of objects, changing V2 150–151
- multiple links to an object, creating V2 149
- objects from another computer V1 66
- Paintbrush drawings to documents V2 148
- restoring broken links V2 150
- updating linked objects V2 149, 248–249
- Links command, updating linked objects V2 249
- List box, in dialog boxes
 - described V2 70
 - drop-down V2 70–71
 - selecting items in V2 57–58
- loadhigh command, AUTOEXEC.BAT file V2 6
- Local ClipBook *See* ClipBook
- Lock Application Memory option, PIF Editor V2 262
- Log On/Off icon, using V1 70–71
- Logging network events V1 80
- Logging on to or off of the Microsoft Windows Network V1 70, 77
- Logging on to Windows for Workgroups
 - how to log on V1 16–17
 - startup settings, changing V1 78–79
 - without a password V1 79
- Logon name V1 16, 17
- Logon options, changing V1 76
- Logon password
 - changing V1 79–80
 - logging on to Windows for Workgroups V1 17
 - what to do if you forget your password V1 143
- Low vision, products and services supporting V1 103
- LPT ports V1 15, V2 127
- LPT1.DOS file V2 252

M

Macros, creating by using Recorder V2 137

Mail

- See also* Maintaining Mail; online Help for Mail
- account, creating V1 35, 95
- adding yourself to the post office V1 35
- administrator *See* Maintaining Mail
- connecting to a post office V1 33–34
- deleting messages V1 40, 41
- described V1 xiii
- disk space requirements V1 90
- faxes
 - See also* PC Fax
 - addressing V1 49
 - sending V1 48–49

Key

V1

Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for
Windows User's Guide

V2

Microsoft Windows User's
Guide

Mail (*continued*)

- File Manager, sending mail from V1 25
- fonts, adjusting V1 104
- gateways for other message systems V1 99
- Inbox, illustrated V1 36
- mailbox name, assigning V1 35
- managing *See* Maintaining Mail
- message file V1 41, 151
- options for deleting messages V1 41
- password
 - assigning V1 35
 - changing V1 37
 - supplying automatically V1 36
- preparing to use V1 33–34
- quitting V1 41
- reading messages V1 38–39
- replying to messages V1 39–40
- security V1 37
- sending messages V1 37–38
- signing in V1 36
- starting V1 34
- using with other message systems V1 99
- MAIL.WRI online document V1 xvi
- Mailbox, assigning a name for V1 35
- Main group, described V2 74
- Maintaining Mail
 - See also* MAIL.WRI online document
 - accounts
 - creating V1 35, 95
 - modifying V1 95
 - removing V1 96
 - administrator account
 - creating V1 90–92
 - restriction against removing V1 96
 - backing up the MSMAIL.MMF file V1 98
 - disk space
 - checking status of shared folders V1 96–97
 - compressing shared folders V1 97
 - managing, described V1 96
 - requirements V1 90
 - MSMAIL.INI file, described V1 98
 - MSMAIL.MMF file
 - backing up V1 98
 - described V1 98
 - restoring V1 98
 - post office
 - adding a person's name to V1 94–95
 - creating V1 90–92
 - post office computer, leaving on at all times V1 91
 - sharing the post office directory V1 93
 - Postoffice Manager
 - described V1 89
 - starting V1 94

Maintaining Mail (*continued*)

- PostOffice Upgrade for Microsoft Windows for Workgroups V1 89
- system files, described V1 97–98
- troubleshooting
 - corrupted message file V1 151
 - Mail locks up when you send a fax V1 152
 - passwords V1 151
 - post office, creating V1 150
- Make System Disk command, File Manager V1 153, V2 269
- Managing memory and performance
 - disk caching, described V2 201–202
 - disk space, freeing
 - removing unnecessary files V2 200–201
 - using the chkdisk command V2 199
 - double buffering, using V2 215
 - memory configuration, identifying V2 191–192
 - memory managers
 - described V2 203
 - EMM386 V2 208–212
 - HIMEM V2 203–206
 - RAMDrive V2 206–208
 - memory, freeing
 - AUTOEXEC.BAT file, streamlining V2 193, 195
 - CONFIG.SYS file, streamlining V2 193–194
 - conserving memory when starting programs V2 195
 - swap files, working with V2 196–198
 - virtual-memory settings, changing V2 196–197
 - multitasking options V2 202
 - “out-of-memory” message V2 259
 - speed, increasing
 - compacting your hard disk V2 199
 - multitasking options, setting V2 202
 - SMARTDrive, using V2 201–202, 212–215
 - TEMP variable, setting to a RAM drive V2 195
 - swap files
 - enhanced mode V2 196–198
 - standard mode V2 197–198
- Mark command, MS-DOS-based applications V2 62, 160, 242
- MAU (multistation access unit) V1 131
- Maximize button
 - enlarging windows to maximum size V2 64
 - illustrated V2 51
- Maximize command, on the Control menu V2 61
- MCA bus expansion slot V1 109
- MCA network adapters, software configuration V1 121–122
- Media Player
 - See also* online Help in Media Player
 - described V2 134
 - keyboard shortcuts V2 228
- Meetings, scheduling *See* Schedule+
- mem command, displaying memory information V2 192

Memory

See also Managing memory and performance; Memory managers

386 enhanced mode, amount required for V2 12

available, checking the amount of V2 101

configuration, identifying V2 191–192

conventional memory, described V2 191

expanded memory

described V2 192

EMM386 memory manager V2 203, 208–212

extended memory

described V2 191

HIMEM memory manager V2 203–206

freeing

by changing virtual-memory settings V2 196–197

by streamlining the AUTOEXEC.BAT file V2 193, 195

by streamlining the CONFIG.SYS file V2 193–194

by using swap files V2 196–198

conserving memory when starting programs V2 195

high memory area, described V2 192

Microsoft Diagnostics (MSD) program, using to get

information about your system configuration V2 269

net start basic command V1 145

“out-of-memory” message V2 259

printer memory, insufficient V2 256

RAM drive V2 203

system requirements V1 x, xi, V2 xvi

upper memory area, described V2 192

virtual memory, described V2 192

Memory managers

described V2 191–192, 203

EMM386 V2 208–212

HIMEM V2 203–206

RAMDrive V2 206–208

Memory Requirements option, PIF Editor V2 260, 261, 262

Memory-resident programs (TSRs)

See also MS-DOS–based applications

compatibility with Windows V2 236

conflicting with the Setup program V1 140

pop-up programs, running V2 163

removing when troubleshooting V1 153

running with other applications

starting from WINSTART.BAT V2 195

Menu bar, illustrated V2 51

Menus

cascading menu, defined V2 59

check marks, meaning of V2 59

closing V2 59

commands, choosing V2 58–59

Menus (*continued*)

Control menu

commands, described V2 61–62

Control-menu box (illustrated) V2 51

opening V2 60

dimmed items, meaning of V2 59

ellipsis, meaning of V2 59

illustrated V2 58

keyboard shortcuts V2 220

menu bar (illustrated) V2 51

selecting (opening) V2 59

shortcut-key combinations V2 59

triangles, meaning of V2 59

Merge Registration File command, File Manager V2 246

Message file, Mail V1 41, 151

Message systems and gateways See MAIL.WRI online document

Messages

Chat V1 70

fax See PC Fax

Mail messages

See also online Help for Mail

deleting V1 40, 41

reading V1 38–39

replying to V1 39–40

sending V1 37–38

“out of memory” V2 259

received from inactive applications V2 88

“server unavailable” V2 246

“sharing violation” V2 266

startup messages, recording V1 140

WinPopup V1 73–74

Microsoft At Work PC Fax See PC Fax

Microsoft Customer Support Services V2 7

Microsoft Diagnostics (MSD) program

determining address space to exclude V1 141, V2 238

getting information about your system configuration

V2 269

running V1 148

starting V2 269

Microsoft Download Service (MSDL) V1 102, V2 7

Microsoft Driver Library V1 102

Microsoft LAN Manager See LAN Manager

Microsoft Mail PostOffice Upgrade for Microsoft Windows for Workgroups V1 89

Microsoft Network Diagnostics, running V1 149–150

Microsoft Windows for Workgroups version 3.1, upgrading from V1 xi

Microsoft Windows for Workgroups version 3.11

See Windows for Workgroups version 3.11

Key

V1

Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for Windows User's Guide

V2

Microsoft Windows User's Guide

- Microsoft Windows Network
 - compatible networks V1 85
 - logging on or off V1 70-71, 77
 - sharing resources on computers running other networks V1 85-88
 - troubleshooting V1 143-145
- Microsoft Windows NT Advanced Server V1 85
- Microsoft Windows NT operating system *See* Windows NT operating system
- Microsoft Windows Tutorial V2 5, 18, 45
- Microsoft Windows version 3.1, upgrading from V1 x-xi
- Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for Windows
 - See also* Windows for Workgroups version 3.11 features, described V1 ix, xii-xv
 - requirements, hardware and software V1 x, xi
- MIDI Mapper V2 179-180
- MIDI settings
 - changing V2 178-180
 - requirements for MIDI sound capabilities V2 177
- Minimize button
 - illustrated V2 51
 - reducing windows to icons V2 64
- Minimize command, on the Control menu V2 61
- Minimize On Use command, File Manager V2 82
- Minimizing applications, running minimized V2 77, 83
- Minimum Windows configuration V2 269-270
- Modem
 - See also* Fax modems
 - troubleshooting V2 264-265
 - using Terminal with V2 138
- Modes
 - See also* 386 enhanced mode; Standard mode
 - checking the current mode V2 101
- Monitoring CPU or printer use V1 73
- MORICONS.DLL file, selecting icons from V2 80
- Motion impairment, products and services supporting V1 102-103
- Mouse
 - adjusting for impaired motion or vision V1 105
 - basic techniques for using V2 56
 - driver
 - installing or updating V2 186-188
 - updated by Setup V2 11
 - pointer, illustrated V2 51
 - support for MS-DOS-based applications V2 19
 - troubleshooting
 - mouse doesn't work with MS-DOS-based applications V2 240
 - mouse doesn't work with Windows V2 239
 - pointer doesn't move V2 239
 - pointer jumps around V2 240
- Mouse Systems mouse V2 11
- MOUSE.COM mouse driver V2 240
- MOUSE.SYS mouse driver V2 240
- Move command
 - File Manager V2 114
 - on the Control menu, described V2 61
- Moving
 - around the screen, keys for V2 221
 - dialog boxes V2 67
 - files or directories V2 114
 - icons V2 65
 - windows V2 62
- MPC specifications V2 177
- MS-DOS-based applications
 - See also* Troubleshooting
 - About command, checking Windows mode V2 157
 - background, running in V2 162
 - character set, changing V2 181
 - Control menu, opening V2 60-61
 - copying and pasting information V2 160-161
 - defined V2 73
 - 386 enhanced mode V2 157-162
 - exclusive use of resources V2 161-162
 - font size, changing V2 160
 - improved support for, described V2 19
 - memory management
 - conserving memory V2 195
 - "out-of-memory" message V2 259
 - memory-resident programs
 - pop-up programs, running V2 163
 - running with other applications V2 162
 - mouse support for V2 19
 - program information files (PIFs)
 - created by the Setup program V2 10
 - default PIF V2 156
 - manufacturer-supplied V2 155
 - modifying V2 155
 - multiple versions per application V2 156
 - quitting V2 89
 - running in 386 enhanced mode V2 157-162
 - running in a window V2 157-158
 - running in the background V2 162
 - setting up V2 153-154
 - settings, changing V2 158-160
 - starting V2 157
 - swap files V2 197-198
 - switching between a window and a full screen V2 158
 - troubleshooting
 - capturing a screen image (snapshot) V2 243
 - font size, changing V2 244
 - Mark or Select command, on Control menu V2 242
 - mouse problems V2 240
 - pastings from the Clipboard V2 244
 - reserved key combinations V2 242
 - Scroll command, on Control menu V2 242
 - serial communications V2 264
- MS-DOS interrupts, printing by using V2 123

- MS-DOS operating system, required version V1 x, xi, V2 xvi
- MS-DOS Prompt
- quitting V2 84
 - restrictions with MS-DOS commands V2 84
 - starting applications V2 83, 157
- MSCDEX.EXE version 2.22 V1 144
- MSD (Microsoft Diagnostics) program
- determining address space to exclude V1 141
 - running V1 148
- msd command *See* Microsoft Diagnostics program
- MSD *See* Microsoft Diagnostics program
- MSMAIL.INI file
- See also* MAIL.WRI online document
 - adjustments for impaired vision V1 104
 - described V1 98
- MSMAIL.MMF file
- backing up V1 98
 - described V1 98
 - restoring V1 98
- MT32 MIDI setup V2 180
- Multimedia
- features, described V2 18
 - playing files or devices V2 134
 - removing device drivers V2 186
 - setting up device drivers for V2 185–186
- Multimedia Personal Computer (MPC) specifications V2 177
- Multistation access unit (MAU) V1 131
- Multitasking options, 386 enhanced mode V2 202
- Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI)
- changing MIDI settings V2 178–180
 - MIDI sound capabilities V2 177
 - playing sound files V2 134
- ## N
- N-series terminator, illustrated V1 127
- Name command, File Manager V2 108
- National Information System V1 106
- net diag command (Microsoft Network Diagnostics) V1 149, 150
- net start basic command V1 145
- net start full command V1 145
- Net Watcher
- See also* online Help for Net Watcher
 - described V1 71
 - displaying names of people sharing files V1 24
 - displaying names of people sharing printers V1 29
- NetBEUI protocol V1 137
- Network-adaptor drivers
- changing settings V1 136–137
 - installing V1 133–135
 - removing V1 136
- Network adapters, installing
- See also* Network-adaptor drivers; online Help for Windows Setup
 - compatibility, checking V1 109
 - configuring the adapter
 - base I/O port V1 114–115
 - base memory address V1 115
 - connector, specifying V1 116
 - DIP-switch settings V1 112
 - hardware settings, recording V1 113
 - interrupt request level (IRQ) setting V1 113–114
 - jumper settings V1 111
 - software configuration V1 121–122
 - when to configure the adapter V1 111
 - connecting cables
 - overview V1 122
 - thick-Ethernet system V1 125–127
 - thin-Ethernet system V1 123–125
 - token-ring network V1 130–131
 - twisted-pair Ethernet system V1 128–129
 - detecting a network adapter V1 147
 - excluding the base memory address V1 115
 - overview V1 107
 - placing the adapter in your computer V1 116, 118–121
 - required items V1 108–109
 - second adapter, installing V1 107
 - troubleshooting V1 146–149
- Network applications
- Chat V1 70
 - Log On/Off V1 70
 - Net Watcher V1 71
 - overview of V1 xiv
 - Schedule+ V1 72
 - startup settings, changing V1 79
 - WinMeter V1 73
 - WinPopup V1 73–74
- Network card *See* Network adapters, installing
- Network Connections command
- File Manager V2 113
 - Print Manager V2 125
- Network directories
- connecting to V2 112–113
 - disconnecting from V2 114
 - drive letter for connections V2 232
- Network Drivers dialog box, illustrated V1 134

Key

V1	Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for Windows User's Guide	V2	Microsoft Windows User's Guide
----	--------------------------------------------------------	----	-----------------------------------

Network drives

- automatically reconnecting to V1 22
- connecting to V2 112–113
- connecting to shared directories V1 21–22
- defined V1 21, V2 112
- disconnecting from V1 22, V2 114
- troubleshooting V2 266

Network group V1 69

Network printers

- automatically reconnecting to V1 28
- connecting to V1 27–28, 87, V2 124–125
- disconnecting from V1 28, V2 125
- passwords, assigning V1 29
- port, selecting V1 28
- troubleshooting

- can't connect to a network printer V2 266
- can't print from Windows V2 252
- printer doesn't print V2 250

Network servers, connecting to directories on V1 86–87

Network settings

- Adapter Media Type setting, checking V1 146
- changing networks V1 86
- customizing
 - Control Panel, using V1 76
 - described V1 75
 - enabling and disabling sharing V1 80–81
 - logon options, changing V1 76
 - logon password, changing V1 79–80
 - network events, recording V1 80
 - startup settings, changing V1 78–79
 - Windows Setup, using V1 80–81
 - workgroup settings, changing V1 78

LAN Manager V1 88

Novell NetWare, checking setup for V1 146

Windows NT V1 88

Network Setup icon

- Adapter Media Type setting, checking V1 146
- changing networks V1 86
- enabling and disabling sharing V1 81
- network adapters
 - changing driver settings V1 136–137
 - detecting V1 147
 - installing drivers for V1 133–135

Novell NetWare, checking setup for V1 146

sharing resources, setting options for V1 20

Networks

- See also* NETWORKS.WRI online document
- changing networks V1 86
- compatible with Microsoft Windows Network V1 85
- connecting to directories on network servers V1 86–87
- connecting to network printers V1 87
- Control Panel features, described V1 xv
- defined V1 1
- event log, recording network events V1 80

Networks (*continued*)

- guidelines for using V2 232
- hardware requirements V1 x, xi
- new networking features, described V1 xii
- options in Control Panel, setting V1 88
- overview of networking V1 1–11
- port for printing V2 232
- post office, creating on a network V1 91
- setting network options V2 180–181
- setting up V1 85–86
- setting up to share resources V1 20
- setting up Windows from a network V2 8–9
- supported by Windows for Workgroups V1 14
- troubleshooting
 - can't connect to a network drive V2 266
 - connecting to Novell NetWare servers V1 145–146
 - connecting to Windows NT or LAN Manager servers V1 145
 - diagnosing connection problems V1 149–150
 - high memory area, running network software in V2 266
 - LAN Manager server not listed V1 144
 - Microsoft Network Diagnostics, running V1 149–150
 - network adapter settings, changing V1 148
 - network features not available V1 142
 - Novell NetWare server not listed V1 146
 - other computers not listed V1 143–144
 - protocols, checking V1 143
 - “sharing violation” message V2 266
 - starting the network before Windows V1 145
 - upper memory area, running network software in V2 266
 - Windows network features V2 231
- NETWORKS.WRI online document V1 xvi, V2 xvii, 232
- New command, on File menu
 - groups, creating V2 75
 - program items, creating V2 75–78
- New directories, creating V2 114
- New features in Windows version 3.1 V2 15–21
- New Window command, File Manager V2 107
- Next command, on the Control menu V2 61
- NIS (National Information System) V1 106
- No Screen Exchange option, PIF Editor V2 260
- Non-Windows applications *See* MS-DOS–based applications
- Notepad
 - See also* online Help for Notepad
 - described V2 135
 - keyboard shortcuts V2 226
- Novell NetWare
 - checking network settings in Windows V1 146
 - compatibility with Microsoft Windows Network V1 85
 - troubleshooting
 - connecting to servers V1 145–146
 - server not listed in Connect dialog box V1 146

O

- Object linking and embedding (OLE)
 - applications supporting OLE V2 141
 - canceling or deleting links V2 150
 - copying linked objects V2 149
 - described V2 15, 141–143
 - destination document, defined V2 142
 - editing
 - embedded objects V2 145
 - linked objects V2 148
 - embedding
 - described V2 143–145
 - Paintbrush drawings in documents V2 145
 - format limitations V1 67
 - format of objects, changing V2 150
 - linking
 - described V2 146–148
 - Paintbrush drawings to documents 148
 - multiple links to an object, creating V2 149
 - Object Packager, using V2 151–152
 - restoring broken links V2 150
 - source document, defined V2 142
 - troubleshooting
 - Cardfile V2 249
 - Insert Object dialog box V2 247
 - Object Packager, Picture option unavailable V2 248
 - Paste command gives varied results V2 247
 - Paste Link command is unavailable V2 249
 - registration database V2 245–246
 - server application unavailable V2 246
 - sound object, Manual Update setting V2 248
 - updating linked objects V2 248–249
 - updating linked objects V2 149
 - using ClipBook Viewer V1 66
 - vs. copying and pasting V2 143
- Object Packager
 - See also* online Help for Object Packager
 - embedding packages in documents V2 151–152
 - keyboard shortcuts V2 227
 - troubleshooting V2 248
- OEMSETUP.INF file V2 184
- Online documents
 - described V1 xv–xvi, V2 xvii
 - opening and reading V2 268
- Online Help V1 xv
 - closing V2 104
 - context-sensitive V2 20
 - dialog boxes, getting Help with V2 102
 - finding information V2 101–102

- Online Help (*continued*)
 - glossary definitions, displaying V2 103
 - Help buttons, described V2 103
 - Help menu commands, described V2 100–101
 - keyboard shortcuts V2 219
 - starting V2 99–100
- Online information services, connecting to V2 138
- Online Windows Tutorial
 - described V2 5, 18
 - running from within Windows V2 45
- Open command, on the File menu V2 89
- Open New Window On Connect command, File Manager V1 22
- Opening
 - See also* Starting
 - Control menu V2 60–61
 - documents when starting applications V2 82–83
 - files V2 89
 - menus V2 59
- Optimizing *See* Managing memory and performance
- Option buttons, in dialog boxes V2 71
- Options command, Mail
 - deleting mail, options for V1 41
 - sending digitally signed or key-encrypted faxes V1 58
 - setting global fax options V1 50
- Order of files in directory windows, changing V1 25
- “Out-of-memory” message V2 259
- Overlapping windows, switching between V2 85, 220

P

- Packages
 - See also* Object Packager
 - embedding in documents V2 151–152
- Paintbrush
 - See also* online Help for Paintbrush
 - described V2 135–136
 - editing embedded drawings V2 145
 - editing linked drawings V2 148
 - embedding drawings in documents V2 145
 - keyboard shortcuts V2 227
 - linking drawings to documents V2 148
 - printing problem V2 257
 - window, illustrated V2 136
- Parallel ports V1 15, V2 127
- Parallel printers, troubleshooting V2 256
- Parity
 - changing the setting V2 189
 - common setting V2 256
- Partial Details command, File Manager V2 108

Key

v1	Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for Windows User's Guide	v2	Microsoft Windows User's Guide
----	--------------------------------------------------------	----	-----------------------------------

- Password-list file V1 17
- Passwords
 - Depends On Password option V1 23
 - domain passwords V1 80, 88
 - fax security password V1 56
 - faxes, password-encrypted
 - reading V1 55
 - sending V1 54
 - files, protecting V1 23
 - Local ClipBook pages V1 65
 - logon password
 - changing V1 79–80
 - logging on to Windows for Workgroups V1 17
 - logging on without using a password V1 79
 - what to do if you forget your password V1 143
 - Mail password
 - assigning V1 35
 - changing V1 37
 - supplying automatically V1 36
 - what to do if you forget your password V1 151
 - printer passwords, assigning V1 29
 - screen saver password V2 172
 - shared directories, assigning passwords to V1 23
 - troubleshooting
 - logon passwords V1 143
 - Mail passwords V1 151
- Paste command
 - embedding or linking objects V1 66
 - MS-DOS–based applications V2 161
 - saving Clipboard contents V1 63
 - troubleshooting V2 247, 249
 - Windows-based applications V2 96
- Paste Link command V1 66, V2 249
- Paste Special command V1 67, V2 151
- Pasting information
 - into MS-DOS–based applications V2 161
 - into Windows-based applications V2 96
 - troubleshooting V2 244
 - vs. object linking and embedding V2 143
- Patch maps for MIDI setups, editing V2 178–179
- Path for a shared directory, format of V1 21
- PATH setting, AUTOEXEC.BAT file
 - minimum search path V1 154, V2 270
 - modified by Setup V2 11
 - using two versions of Windows V2 267
- Patterns for the desktop V2 169–170
- Pausing printers or documents V1 30, V2 121–122
- PC Fax
 - See also* online Help for PC Fax
 - addressing a fax V1 49
 - advanced dialing feature V1 59
 - attachments to faxes
 - sending V1 49
 - viewing V1 53
 - PC Fax (*continued*)
 - deleting outgoing faxes V1 51
 - described V1 xiii
 - digital signatures
 - purpose of V1 54
 - using in a nonsecure environment V1 55
 - fax numbers, entering V1 50
 - forwarding faxes V1 53
 - international dialing V1 59
 - options for sending faxes, setting
 - global options V1 50
 - individual fax V1 51
 - queue of faxes, using V1 51
 - reading faxes V1 52–53
 - receiving faxes V1 52
 - rescheduling outgoing faxes V1 51
 - security
 - backing up or restoring private keys V1 58
 - described V1 54
 - disabling V1 56
 - exchanging security keys V1 56
 - fax security password V1 56
 - reading key-encrypted faxes V1 59
 - reading password-encrypted faxes V1 55
 - sending digitally signed faxes V1 58
 - sending key-encrypted faxes V1 58
 - sending password-encrypted faxes V1 54
 - setting up and starting security V1 55–56
 - sending faxes
 - described V1 48
 - formatting in attached documents V1 49
 - from Mail V1 48–49
 - using the Print command V1 49
 - using the Send command V1 49
 - setting up
 - active fax modem, specifying V1 46
 - configuring fax modems V1 44–45
 - disk space required V1 43
 - driver for CAS modems, installing V1 44
 - fax modem hardware, installing V1 44
 - sharing fax modems V1 45–48
 - telephone line vs. separate line for fax transmissions V1 44
 - troubleshooting
 - attaching documents to faxes V1 152
 - fax addresses, trouble adding to the Personal Address Book V1 152
 - fax suspended in queue V1 152
 - Mail locks up V1 152
 - modem speed V1 152
 - shared modem, adding V1 152
 - shared modem, configuring V1 151
 - system locks up when you send a fax V1 151
 - TrueType fonts, using V1 49

PCL printers, number of soft fonts supported V2 255

Performance

See also Managing memory and performance

32-bit disk access V1 81–82

32-bit file access V1 82–83

improvements, described V2 21

Permanent swap file V2 196

Personal Address Book

See also online Help for PC Fax

fax numbers, entering V1 50

international format for fax numbers V1 59

storing names of people you send messages to V1 38

trouble adding fax addresses to V1 152

Phone numbers *See* Telephone numbers

Pictures

creating *See* online Help for Paintbrush

embedding in documents V2 145

linking to documents V2 148

PIF Editor

See also Program information files

default PIF V2 156

freeing memory by using V2 260–262

keyboard shortcuts V2 225

modifying PIFs V2 155–156

.PIF filename extension V2 155

PIF *See* Program information files

Plasma Power Saver color scheme V2 166

Playing animation files V2 134

Playing back macros V2 137

Playing sound files

by using Media Player V2 134

by using Sound Recorder V2 137

Plotter fonts V2 173

Pointer (mouse)

illustrated V2 51

troubleshooting V2 239, 240

Pointing with the mouse, described V2 56

Pop-up programs, running V2 163

Portable computers, using 32-bit disk access V1 81

Ports

See also Base I/O port

configuring V2 188–189

copying soft fonts from port to port V2 255

described V1 27, V2 127

enhancements for serial ports V2 21

FILE, specifying as printer port V2 123

LPT1.DOS file V2 252

network printing V2 232

parallel, defined V1 15

physical vs. virtual, defined V2 4

Ports (*continued*)

selecting for network printers V1 28

serial, defined V1 15

setting up printers V2 127

troubleshooting

changing settings V2 256

flow-control problem V2 256

inaccessible port V2 262

interrupt (IRQ) conflict V2 251, 263

port settings conflict with printer V2 250

Xon/Xoff protocol V2 264

Post office

See also MAIL.WRI online document

adding a person's name to V1 94–95

connecting to V1 33–34

creating V1 90–92

disk space requirements V1 90

MSMAIL.INI file V1 98

post office computer, leaving on at all times V1 91

sharing the post office directory V1 93

troubleshooting V1 150

users connected to different post offices V1 89

Postoffice Manager

adding a person's name to the post office V1 95

compressing shared folders V1 97

described V1 89

location of the Postoffice Manager command V1 93

modifying accounts V1 95

removing accounts V1 96

starting V1 94

PostOffice Upgrade for Microsoft Windows for Workgroups

V1 89

PostScript printers

changing setup options V2 257

memory V2 257

number of soft fonts supported V2 255

setting up V2 126–127

TESTPS.TXT file V2 251

Transmission Retry setting V2 258

Prevent Program Switch option, PIF Editor V2 260

Print command

File Manager V2 116

sending a fax V1 49

Print file, defined V2 119

Print Manager

See also online Help for Print Manager

canceled the printing of documents V2 122

default printer, choosing V1 30, V2 123

deleting documents waiting to print V1 30

described V1 26, V2 17, 119

Key

V1

Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for
Windows User's Guide

V2

Microsoft Windows User's
Guide

Print Manager (*continued*)

- dragging file icons to print files V2 116
- FILE option, printing to a file V2 123
- keyboard shortcuts V2 224
- MS-DOS interrupts, printing with V2 123–124
- network printers
 - connecting to V1 27–28, V2 124–125
 - defined V1 26, V2 120
 - disconnecting from V1 28, V2 125
 - how to share printers V1 29
 - how to stop sharing printers V1 29
 - passwords, assigning V1 29
 - reconnecting to automatically V1 28
- new features, described V1 xii
- pausing and resuming printing V1 30, V2 121–122
- quitting V1 30, V2 122
- removing printers V2 128
- setting up printers V2 126–128
- toolbar
 - buttons for controlling documents and printers V1 31
 - buttons for sharing printers V1 26–27
- Transmission Retry setting V2 258

PRINT SCREEN key

- capturing a window image V2 95
- capturing the screen image V2 94
- troubleshooting V2 243

Print servers *See* Network printers**Printer driver**, defined V2 119**Printer Setup** command, Print Manager

- choosing the default printer V2 123
- removing a printer V2 128
- setting up a printer V2 126–127

Printers

- See also* PRINTERS.WRI online document; Printing
- connecting to network printers V1 27–28, 87, V2 124–125
- default printer, choosing V1 30, V2 123
- disconnecting from network printers V1 28, V2 125
- fonts V2 173
- installing and configuring V2 126–127
- monitoring the use of V1 73
- network printer, defined V2 120
- passwords, assigning V1 29
- pausing V1 30, V2 121–122
- port, selecting for a network printer V1 28
- PostScript
 - changing setup options V2 257
 - memory V2 257
 - number of soft fonts supported V2 255
 - setting up V2 126–127
 - TESTPS.TXT file V2 251
- print queue V1 26, V2 120–121
- printer driver, defined V2 119
- PRINTERS.WRI online document V2 xvii, 126

Printers (*continued*)

- reconnecting to automatically V1 28
- removing installed printers V2 128
- resetting V2 122
- setting up V2 126–128
- sharing V1 29
- Transmission Retry setting V2 258
- troubleshooting *See* Printing
- Windows Driver Library (WDL) V2 127
- PRINTERS.WRI online document V1 xvi, V2 xvii, 126
- Printing
 - canceling printing V2 122
 - copying files directly to a port V2 250
 - deleting documents from the print queue V1 30, V2 122
 - described V1 xii
 - dragging and dropping files V2 87, 116
 - File Manager, using to print files V2 116
 - FILE option, printing to a file V2 123
 - fonts
 - printer fonts V2 173
 - screen fonts V2 173
 - TrueType fonts V2 174
 - MS-DOS interrupts, using V2 123–124
 - notification messages, receiving from WinPopup V1 73–74
 - pausing printers or documents V1 30, V2 121–122
 - print queue V1 26, V2 120–121
 - speed, new features that increase V2 17
 - troubleshooting
 - can't connect to a network printer V2 266
 - can't print from Windows V2 251
 - cartridge or soft fonts don't print V2 255
 - format of printed page is incorrect V2 252
 - page only prints partially V2 256
 - Paintbrush graphics are too small when printed V2 257
 - printer doesn't print V2 250, 258
 - printer fonts differ from screen fonts V2 254
 - printer loses text V2 256
 - printer output is garbled V2 253
 - printer runs out of memory V2 257
 - TrueType fonts don't print V2 254–255
- Priority options, Settings command (MS-DOS-based applications) V2 159
- Private security keys
 - backing up or restoring V1 58
 - defined V1 54
 - setting up V1 55
- PROGMAN.EXE file, selecting icons from V2 80
- Program Group Properties dialog box V2 75
- Program information files (PIFs)
 - created by the Setup program V2 10, 154
 - default PIF V2 156
 - described V2 153

Program information files (PIFs) (*continued*)
 exclusive use of resources V2 161–162
 manufacturer-supplied PIFs V2 155
 modifying V2 155
 multiple PIFs per application V2 156
 running applications in the background V2 162

Program Item Properties dialog box V2 76

Program items
 creating for applications
 by using File Manager V2 78
 by using Program Manager V2 75–78
 by using Setup V2 79
 creating for documents
 by using File Manager V2 78
 by using Program Manager V2 78
 icons, changing V2 80
 label, changing V2 76
 maximum number per group V2 75
 working (start-up) directories for V2 77

Program Manager
See also online Help for Program Manager
 groups
 creating V2 75
 deleting V2 75
 preserved when Windows is upgraded V2 6
 keyboard shortcuts V2 223
 program items, creating V2 75–78
 returning to V2 81
 shortcut-key combinations, reserving V2 77
 starting applications
 from a group V2 81
 when you start Windows V2 81

Program-item icons
 changing V2 80
 described V2 55

Programs
See also Applications; MS-DOS-based applications;
 Program items
 filename extensions for program files V2 82
 prompt command, AUTOEXEC.BAT file V1 154, V2 270

Properties command
 File Manager
 closing files in shared directories V1 24
 listing users of files in shared directories V1 24
 Program Manager V2 76

Protecting files by using passwords V1 23

Proteus MIDI setups V2 180

PROTOCOL.INI file V1 144

Protocols
 checking V1 143
 network adapters V1 136–137

Public security keys
 defined V1 54
 exchanging V1 56
 exporting to disk V1 57
 importing from disk V1 57
 setting up V1 55

Publications on audio cassettes and floppy disks V1 103

.PWL filename extension V1 143

Q

Queue command, Mail V1 51

Queues
 fax V1 51
 print V1 26, V2 120–121

Quick format, defined V2 116

Quitting
 applications
 keyboard shortcuts V2 223
 MS-DOS-based applications V2 89
 Windows-based applications V2 88
 Help V2 104
 Mail V1 41
 Print Manager V1 30, V2 122
 Windows operating system V2 44

R

RAM *See also* Random-access memory

RAM address space, excluding V1 141, V2 238

RAM drive
 avoiding conventional memory V2 208
 creating in extended memory V2 207
 setting the TEMP variable to V2 195
 size of V2 207
 using for swap files V2 198

RAM start address for network adapters V1 115

RAMDrive program
 command line V2 206–208
 described V2 203
 updated by Setup V2 11

Random-access memory (RAM), excluding address space
 V1 141, V2 238

Read-only memory (ROM), excluding address space V1 141,
 V2 238

Reading faxes V1 52–53
 Reading Mail messages V1 38–39
 README.WRI online document V1 xvi, V2 xvii, 268
 Rearranging application windows or icons V2 87
 Receiving faxes V1 52
 Receiving messages
 See also Receiving faxes
 Chat V1 70
 Mail V1 38–39
 WinPopup V1 73–74
 Recorder
 See also online Help for Recorder
 described V2 137
 Recording for the Blind, Inc. V1 103
 Recording sound files V2 137
 Reference disk for network-adaptor installation V1 109
 Refresh command, File Manager V2 108
 .REG filename extension V2 246
 REG.DAT file V2 246
 REGEDIT.EXE file V2 246
 Registration database, restoring V2 245–246
 Registration Info Editor V2 246
 rem command, using to disable commands in startup files
 V2 193–194
 Remote communications *See* Terminal
 Removing
 Clipboard contents V2 97
 commands in startup files V2 193–194
 directories V2 115
 documents from the print queue V1 30, V2 122
 faxes, outgoing V1 51
 files V2 115
 fonts V2 176–177
 groups V2 75
 links V2 150
 Mail accounts V1 96
 Mail messages V1 40, 41
 multimedia device drivers V2 186
 network-adaptor drivers V1 136
 printers V2 128
 Rename command, File Manager V2 115
 Renaming files or directories V2 115
 Replacing text, basic techniques V2 93
 Reply command, Mail V1 40
 Replying to Mail messages V1 39–40
 Requirements, hardware and software V1 x, xi, V2 xvi
 Rescheduling outgoing faxes V1 51
 Reserve Shortcut Key option, PIF Editor V2 243
 Resetting your printer V1 30
 Resources, sharing
 See also Sharing directories; Sharing printers
 connecting to resources, described V1 8–10
 overview of V1 6–7

Restore button
 illustrated V2 51
 restoring windows to previous size V2 65
 Restore command, on the Control menu V2 61
 Restoring
 broken links V2 150
 MSMAIL.MMF file V1 98
 private security keys V1 58
 Reverse video with LCD monitors V2 166, 167
 RFB (Recording for the Blind, Inc.) V1 103
 RJ-45 connector, illustrated V1 128
 ROM
 See also Read-only memory
 address space, excluding V1 141, V 238
 ROUTE.COM, removing from the AUTOEXEC.BAT file
 V1 146
 Run command, using to start applications V2 82–83
 Run Minimized option for applications V2 77, 83

S

Save As command, on the File menu V2 90
 Save command, on the File menu V2 90
 Save Settings On Exit command, File Manager V2 108
 Saving Clipboard contents V1 63, V2 97
 Saving files V2 90
 SCHDPLUS.INI file V1 105
 Schedule+
 See also online Help for Schedule+
 colors, adjusting V1 105
 described V1 xiii, 72
 fonts, adjusting V1 105
 quitting Mail while running V1 41
 Scheduling appointments *See* Schedule+
 Scheduling options, 386 enhanced mode V2 202
 Screen colors, changing V2 167
 Screen fonts V2 172–174
 Screen images, capturing
 copying onto the Clipboard V2 94–95
 troubleshooting V2 243
 Screen readers, obtaining V1 103
 Screen savers
 described V2 20
 using V2 171–172
 Screen-enlargement utilities, obtaining V1 103
 Scroll bars
 how to use V2 66
 illustrated V2 51
 Scroll command, MS-DOS–based applications V2 62, 242
 Scrolling keys V2 221
 SCSI hard disk V2 215
 Search command, File Manager V2 115
 Search feature in online Help V2 102

- Search Results window in File Manager V2 115
- Searching
 for files or directories V2 115
 for information in Help V2 101–102
- Security
See also Passwords
 file access V1 23
 Mail V1 37
 PC Fax
 backing up or restoring private keys V1 58
 described V1 54
 disabling security V1 56
 exchanging security keys V1 56
 fax security password V1 56
 reading key-encrypted faxes V1 59
 reading password-encrypted faxes V1 55
 sending digitally signed faxes V1 58
 sending key-encrypted faxes V1 58
 sending password-encrypted faxes V1 54
 setting up and starting security V1 55–56
- Select command, MS-DOS-based applications V2 242
- Select Computer dialog box, ClipBook Viewer V1 65, 66
- Select Files command, File Manager V2 110
- Selecting
 check boxes V2 72
 current directory V2 110
 directories in directory windows V2 109
 files in directory windows V2 109–110
 list items V2 57–58
 menu items V2 58–59
 menus V2 59
 option buttons V2 71
 text
 basic techniques V2 92–93
 extending selections V2 93
 in dialog boxes V2 69
 keyboard methods V2 93, 221
 vs. choosing, defined V2 57
- Selection cursor
 adjusting for improved visibility V1 105
 defined V2 68
- Sending faxes
 described V1 48
 formatting in attached documents V1 49
 from Mail V1 48–49
 key-encrypted or digitally signed V1 58
 password-encrypted V1 54
 Print command, using V1 49
 Send command, using V1 49
- Sending faxes (*continued*)
 troubleshooting
 adding a shared modem V1 152
 fax suspended in queue V1 152
 Mail locks up V1 152
 modem speed V1 152
 system locks up V1 151
 TrueType fonts, using V1 49
- Sending messages
See also Sending faxes
 Chat V1 70
 Mail V1 37–38, 39–40
 WinPopup V1 73–74
- Serial mouse, troubleshooting V2 239
- Serial ports
See also Serial printers
 assigning to a printer V2 127
 configuring V2 188–189
 defined V1 15
 enhancements, described V2 21
 serial mouse, using with V2 239
 troubleshooting
 errors during high-speed communications
 V2 263–264
 trouble accessing a port V2 262–263
- Serial printers, troubleshooting
 flow-control problem V2 256
 interrupt interrupt (IRQ) conflict V2 251
 port settings conflict with printer V2 250
 printer output is garbled V2 253
 “Server unavailable” message V2 246
- Servers
 connecting to directories on V1 86–87
 defined V1 11
 set command V1 154, V2 194, 270
 Set Default Printer command, Print Manager V1 30
 Set Up Applications command, Setup program V2 79, 154
- Setting up applications
See also Setup program
 by using File Manager V2 78
 by using Program Manager V2 75–78
 by using Setup V2 79, 153–154
- Setting up Mail
See also Maintaining Mail
 creating an account V1 35, 95
- Setting up network adapters
 base I/O port V1 114–115
 base memory address V1 115
 connector, specifying V1 116
 default settings V1 110

Setting up network adapters (*continued*)

- DIP-switch settings V1 112
- hardware settings, recording V1 113
- interrupt request level (IRQ) setting V1 113–114
- jumper settings V1 111
- software configuration V1 121–122
- troubleshooting V1 146–149

Setting up networks V1 85–86

Setting up PC Fax

- active fax modem, specifying V1 46
- configuring fax modems V1 44–45
- disk space required V1 43
- driver for CAS modems, installing V1 44
- hardware for fax modems, installing V1 44
- sharing fax modems
 - setting up to share a modem V1 46–48
 - setting up to use a shared modem V1 45–46
- telephone line vs. separate line, using V1 44

Setting up printers V2 126–128

Setting up sharing V1 19–20

Setting up the workgroup post office (WGPO) V1 90–92

Setting up Windows 3.1

- copying and expanding files on Setup disks V2 238
- Custom Setup V2 4–5
- Express Setup V2 3–4
- network setup V2 8–9
- running Setup V2 5
- troubleshooting
 - incompatible memory-resident programs V2 236
 - setting up special hardware V2 235–236
 - Setup repeatedly prompts for the same disk V2 235
 - Setup stops before it is complete V2 233–234
 - Windows won't start V2 236
- upgrading from Windows version 3.0 V2 6–7

Setting up Windows for Workgroups 3.11

- Custom Setup V1 15
- Express Setup V1 15
- for use with other networks V1 85–86
- running Setup V1 13–14
- setting options for sharing resources V1 20
- troubleshooting V1 140–141

Settings command, MS-DOS–based applications V2 158–160

setup command V1 14, V2 5

setup /a command V2 10

setup /i command V1 139, 141, V2 234, 237

setup /n command V2 9

Setup disks, copying and expanding files V2 238

Setup program

- applications, setting up V2 79, 153–154
- AUTOEXEC.BAT file, changes Setup makes V2 11
- character set, changing V2 181
- CONFIG.SYS file, changes Setup makes V2 11
- Custom Setup V1 15, V2 4–5
- deleting unnecessary Windows files V2 200–201

Setup program (*continued*)

device drivers

- adding or updating V2 186–188
- installing V2 184

Express Setup V1 15, V2 3–4

hardware detection, skipping V1 139, 141

network setup V2 8–9

program items, creating for applications V2 79

results of upgrading from Windows version 3.0 V2 6, 10–11

running V1 13–14, V2 5

summary of results V2 10

troubleshooting

- conflicting memory-resident program (TSR) V1 140, V2 236
- setting up special hardware V2 235–236
- Setup repeatedly prompts for the same disk V2 235
- Setup stops before it is complete V2 233–234
- Windows won't start after Setup V1 140–141
- your system locks up during Setup V1 139

SETUP.REG file V2 246

SETUP.TXT online document V1 xvi, V2 xvii, 234

Share As command, File Manager

- sharing directories and setting options for sharing V1 23
- sharing the post office V1 93

Share command, ClipBook Viewer V1 64

Share name, format of V1 21

Share Printer As command, Print Manager V1 29

Shared copy of Windows

- setting up V2 8
- trouble using V2 266

Shared Mail folders

- checking the status of V1 96–97
- compressing V1 97

Sharing ClipBook pages

- embedding or linking objects from another computer V1 66
- how to share Local ClipBook pages V1 64
- how to stop sharing Local ClipBook pages V1 65

Sharing directories

- CD-ROM drive V1 144
- closing shared files V1 24
- connecting to shared directories V1 21–22
- described V1 xii
- disconnecting from a network drive V1 22
- displaying names of people sharing files V1 24
- enabling and disabling sharing V1 80–81
- fax modem, creating a shared directory for V1 47–48
- File Manager window, illustrated V1 20
- how to share directories V1 23
- how to stop sharing directories V1 24
- network servers, connecting to directories on V1 86–87
- passwords, assigning V1 23
- setting up sharing V1 19–20

- Sharing fax modems
 - creating a shared directory for a fax modem V1 47–48
 - setting up to share a modem V1 46–48
 - setting up to use a shared modem V1 45–46
 - stop sharing V1 48
- Sharing information
 - See also* Chat; Mail; PC Fax; Sharing directories; Sharing printers
 - overview of V1 5
- Sharing printers
 - connecting to network printers V1 27–28, 87
 - described V1 xii
 - disconnecting from a network printer V1 28
 - displaying names of people sharing printers V1 29
 - enabling and disabling sharing V1 80–81
 - how to share printers V1 29
 - how to stop sharing printers V1 29
 - network printers, connecting to V1 87
 - passwords, assigning V1 29
 - setting up sharing V1 19–20
- Sharing resources, multitasking options for V2 202
- “Sharing violation” message V2 266
- shell command, CONFIG.SYS file V2 194
- Shortcut-key combinations
 - See also* Keyboard shortcuts
 - for commands on menus V2 59
 - reserving for an application V2 77
 - troubleshooting V2 241–242
- Sight impairment, products and services supporting V1 103
- Signing in to Mail V1 36
- Single-handed typing, keyboard layouts for V1 102–103
- Size command, on the Control menu V2 61
- Size of windows, changing V2 63–65
- Small computer system interface (SCSI) hard disk V2 215
- SMARTDrive cache V1 83
- SMARTDrive program
 - command line, AUTOEXEC.BAT file V2 212–215
 - disabling if interfering with Setup V2 235
 - disk caching, described V2 201–202
 - double buffering V2 11, 215
- Snapshot of the screen
 - copying onto the Clipboard V2 94–95
 - troubleshooting V2 243
- Soft fonts
 - printing problems V2 255
 - using V2 173
- Software requirements V1 x, xi, V2 xvi
- Sort By Date command, File Manager V2 108
- Sort By Name command, File Manager V2 108
- Sort By Size command, File Manager V2 108
- Sort By Type command, File Manager V2 108
- Sorting contents of directory windows V2 108
- Sorting files in directory windows V1 25
- Sound
 - assigning to system events V2 177–178
 - multimedia features, described V2 18
- Sound Blaster port V2 180
- Sound cards
 - MIDI sound capabilities V2 177
 - setting up device drivers for V2 185–186
 - specifications V2 177
- Sound files
 - assigning to system events V2 177–178
 - playing
 - by using Media Player V2 134
 - by using Sound Recorder V2 137
 - recording or editing V2 137
 - .WAV filename extension V2 177
- Sound objects, linked V2 149, 248
- Sound Recorder
 - See also* online Help for Sound Recorder
 - described V2 137
 - keyboard shortcuts V2 228
- Source directory or file, moving or copying files V2 114
- Source document, object linking and embedding V2 142
- SPART.PAR file V2 196
- Speed of computer system, increasing
 - See also* Managing memory and performance
 - by compacting your hard disk V2 199
 - by setting multitasking options V2 202
 - by setting TEMP to a RAM drive V2 195
 - by using SMARTDrive V2 201–202, 212–215
- Speed of printing, new features that increase V2 17
- Speeding up applications
 - 32-bit disk access V1 81–82
 - 32-bit file access V1 82–83
- Split bar in directory windows V2 106
- Standard mode
 - freeing memory by using PIF Editor V2 260
 - memory required for running Windows V2 12
 - starting Windows in V2 13
 - swap files V2 197–198
 - system requirements for using V2 xvi
- Starting
 - applications
 - by using MS-DOS Prompt V2 83, 157
 - by using the Run command V2 82–83
 - from a directory window V2 82
 - from a group V2 81
 - from the StartUp group V2 81

Key

V1

Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for
Windows User's Guide

V2

Microsoft Windows User's
Guide

- Starting (*continued*)
 - applications (*continued*)
 - MS-DOS–based applications V2 157
 - “out-of-memory” message V2 259
 - Help V2 99–100
 - Mail V1 34
 - memory-resident programs V2 162, 195
 - Postoffice Manager V1 94
 - Windows
 - enhanced mode V2 12
 - from the AUTOEXEC.BAT file V2 12
 - network, starting before Windows V2 232
 - sample command lines V2 13
 - specifying an application or MS-DOS command V2 13
 - standard mode V2 12
 - troubleshooting V2 236–237
 - without command-line options V2 12
 - Windows for Workgroups
 - network features, troubleshooting V1 140, 142
 - starting and logging on V1 16–17
 - starting the network before Windows V1 145
 - without the network V1 140
 - Windows Tutorial from within Windows V2 45
 - WinPopup V1 74
- Startup disk
 - creating when troubleshooting V2 269
 - formatting V2 116
- Startup files
 - See also* AUTOEXEC.BAT file; CONFIG.SYS file
 - streamlining V2 193–195
 - testing V2 269
- StartUp group
 - described V2 74
 - starting applications V2 81
- Startup messages, recording V1 140
- Startup options for LAN Manager or Windows NT V1 88
- Startup settings, changing V1 78–79
- Status bar, File Manager V2 106, 107
- Status messages *See* Messages
- Stop bits
 - changing the setting V2 189
 - common setting V2 256
- Stop Sharing command
 - ClipBook Viewer V1 65
 - File Manager V1 24
- Stop Sharing Printer command, Print Manager V1 29
- Subdirectories, displaying V2 111
- Super VGA display driver V2 243, 244
- Support services for individuals with disabilities V1 101–106
- Support Services, Customer V2 7
- Swap files
 - 386 enhanced mode V2 196–197
 - standard mode V2 197–198
 - troubleshooting application problems
 - “out-of-memory” message V2 259
 - slow-running application V2 243
- Swapdisk setting, SYSTEM.INI file V2 197
- Swapfile program, Windows version 3.0 V2 196
- Switch To command, on the Control menu
 - described V2 61
 - opening Task List V2 86
- Switchbox, printing problems when using V2 250
- Switching
 - between a window and a full screen V2 158, 220
 - between applications V2 85, 220
 - between documents V2 86
 - fast application-switching, described V2 41
 - to and from pop-up programs V2 163
 - to Program Manager V2 81
- Synthesizers
 - device drivers, setting up V2 185–186
 - MIDI setups for V2 179–180
- .SYS filename extension V2 239
- SYSINI.WRI online document V1 xvi, V2 xvii
- System disk
 - creating V1 153
 - creating before modifying startup files V2 193
 - creating when troubleshooting V2 269
 - formatting V2 116
- System files
 - icon representing, illustrated V2 106
 - renaming V2 115
- System Information screen, correcting hardware settings V1 140
- System performance
 - See also* Managing memory and performance
 - improvements, described V2 21
- System requirements, hardware and software V1 x, xi, V2 xvii
- System settings
 - changing V2 186–188
 - preserved when upgrading Windows V2 6
- SYSTEM.INI file
 - See also* SYSINI.WRI online document
 - adjustments for impaired motion or vision V1 104
 - COMIrqSharing setting V2 263
 - COMxProtocol = XOFF setting V2 264
 - documentation for V2 xvii
 - EMMExclude setting V1 115, 141, V2 237–238
 - FontChangeEnable setting V2 245
 - password list, creating V1 143
 - swapdisk setting V2 197
 - UART buffer setting V2 264
 - VirtualHDirq setting V1 141, V2 238

T

T-connector, illustrated V1 123

Tables

- base I/O port numbers V1 114–115
- hardware settings V1 113
- interrupt request level (IRQ) settings V1 113
- thick-Ethernet system components V1 126–127
- thin-Ethernet system components V1 123–124
- token-ring network components V1 131
- twisted-pair Ethernet system components V1 128–129
- Workgroup Add-On requirements V1 x, xi

Task List

- arranging icons V2 87
- arranging windows V2 87
- opening V2 86
- switching between applications V2 85–86

Tasking options, Settings command (MS-DOS–based applications) V2 159

Telephone numbers

- filing in Cardfile V2 131–132
- Microsoft Customer Support Services V2 7
- Microsoft Download Service (MSDL) V1 102, V2 7
- National Information System V1 106
- Recording for the Blind, Inc. V1 103
- Trace R&D Center V1 106

TEMP directory, created by Setup V2 11

TEMP environment variable

- printing problems V2 251
- set by the Setup program V2 11
- setting to a RAM drive V2 195

Temporary files, removing V2 200

Terminal

- See also* online Help for Terminal
- described V2 138
- troubleshooting V2 264–265

Terminate option, Settings command (MS-DOS–based applications) V2 160

Terminators

- thick-Ethernet system V1 126–127
- thin-Ethernet system V1 124

Testing AUTOEXEC.BAT and CONFIG.SYS files V1 154, V2 269

TESTPS.TXT file V2 251

Text

- copying
 - from MS-DOS–based applications V2 160
 - from Windows-based applications V2 94–97
- deleting V2 93
- editing V2 92–93, 222

Text (continued)

- entering (typing) V2 91
- moving within V2 91
- pasting
 - into MS-DOS–based applications V2 161
 - into Windows-based applications V2 96
- replacing V2 93
- selecting
 - basic techniques V2 92–93
 - canceling selections V2 92
 - extending selections V2 93
 - in dialog boxes V2 69
 - keyboard methods V2 93, 221

Text box, in dialog boxes V2 69

Text editor (Notepad) V2 135

Text files (Windows online documents)

- described V1 xvi, V2 xvii
- opening and reading V2 268

Text mode vs. graphics mode V2 244

Thick-Ethernet system V1 125–127

Thicknet system V1 125–127

Thin-Ethernet system V1 123–125

Thinnet system V1 123–125

Third-party device drivers, installing V2 184

Tile command, Task List V2 87

Time, analog or digital clock V2 133

Title bar

- flashing to signal a message V2 88
- illustrated V2 51

.TMP filename extension V2 200

Token-ring network V1 130–131, 146

Toolbar, ClipBook Viewer

- buttons, illustrated and described V1 62–63
- connecting to another ClipBook V1 65
- copying Local ClipBook pages V1 64
- disconnecting from another ClipBook V1 66
- embedding or linking objects V1 66
- saving Clipboard contents V1 63
- sharing Local ClipBook pages V1 64
- stop sharing Local ClipBook pages V1 65

Toolbar, File Manager

- buttons for displaying files V1 25
- buttons for sharing directories V1 21
- connecting to directories on network servers V1 86
- connecting to shared directories V1 22
- disconnecting from shared directories V1 22
- drive, changing V1 21
- mail, sending V1 25
- sharing directories and setting options for sharing V1 23

Key

V1 Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for Windows User's Guide V2 Microsoft Windows User's Guide

Toolbar, File Manager (*continued*)

- sharing the post office V1 93
- stop sharing a directory V1 24

Toolbar, Mail

- deleting a Mail message V1 40
- replying to a Mail message V1 40
- sending a fax V1 48
- sending a Mail message V1 37
- sending a password-encrypted fax V1 54

Toolbar, Print Manager

- buttons for controlling documents and printers V1 31
- buttons for sharing printers V1 26–27
- canceling printing V1 30
- connecting to network printers V1 28, 87
- default printer, selecting V1 30
- disconnecting from network printers V1 28
- sharing printers and setting options for sharing V1 29
- stop sharing a printer V1 29

Toolbox in Paintbrush V2 136**Tour of Windows operating system** V2 23–44**Trace R&D Center** V1 106**Transceiver, thick-Ethernet system** V1 126, 127**Transferring information**

- See also* Chat; Mail; PC Fax; Sharing directories; Sharing printers
- between computers, using Terminal V2 138
- between MS-DOS-based applications V2 160–161
- between Windows-based applications V2 94–97
- overview of V1 5

Transmission Retry setting, Print Manager V2 258**Triangle on menus, meaning of** V2 59**Troubleshooting****application problems**

- application quits unexpectedly V2 245
- application stops responding V2 242
- capturing a screen image (snapshot) V2 243
- font size, changing V2 244
- key or key combination doesn't work V2 241–242
- pasting into MS-DOS-based applications V2 244
- slow-running application V2 243
- Super VGA display driver V2 243

AUTOEXEC.BAT file

- streamlining V1 153–154
- testing V2 269

computer restarts or stops unexpectedly V2 245**CONFIG.SYS file**

- streamlining V1 153–154
- testing V2 269

copying and expanding files on Setup disks V2 238**expanded-memory managers** V1 141**Mail**

- corrupted message file V1 151
- passwords V1 151
- post office, creating V1 150

Troubleshooting (*continued*)**memory management** V2 258–262**messages from startup, recording** V1 140**Microsoft Diagnostics (MSD) program, using** V2 269**Microsoft Network Diagnostics, running** V1 148**mouse problems**

- mouse doesn't work with MS-DOS-based applications V2 240
- mouse doesn't work with Windows V2 239
- pointer doesn't move V2 239
- pointer jumps around V2 240

MSD (Microsoft Diagnostics) program, running V1 148**network adapters**

- DIP-switch settings V1 148
- interrupt request level (IRQ) V1 147
- jumper settings V1 148
- overview V1 146–147

network connections V1 149–150**network features**

- CD-ROM drive, sharing directories V1 144
- connecting to a Windows NT or LAN Manager server V1 145
- LAN Manager server not listed V1 144
- logon password, what to do if you forget it V1 143
- network features not available V1 142
- other computers not listed V1 143–144
- starting the network before Windows V1 145

networks

- can't connect to a network drive V2 266
- guidelines for using V2 232
- high memory area, running network software in V2 266
- "sharing violation" message V2 266
- upper memory area, running network software in V2 266

Novell NetWare

- connecting to servers V1 145–146
- server not listed in Connect dialog box V1 146

object linking and embedding

- Cardfile V2 249
- Insert Object dialog box V2 247
- Object Packager, Picture option unavailable V2 248
- Paste command gives varied results V2 247
- Paste Link command unavailable V2 249
- server application unavailable V2 246
- sound object, Manual Update setting V2 248
- updating linked objects V2 248–249

passwords

- logon password V1 143
- Mail passwords V1 151

PC Fax

- attaching documents to faxes V1 152
- fax addresses, trouble adding to the Personal Address Book V1 152

Troubleshooting (*continued*)

PC Fax (*continued*)

- fax suspended in queue V1 152
- Mail locks up V1 152
- modem speed V1 152
- shared modem, adding V1 152
- shared modem, configuring V1 151
- system locks up when you send a fax V1 151

printing problems

- can't connect to a network printer V2 266
- can't print from Windows V2 251
- cartridge or soft fonts don't print V2 255
- fonts on screen differ from printed fonts V2 254
- format of printed page is incorrect V2 252
- page only prints partially V2 256
- Paintbrush graphics are too small when printed V2 257
- printer doesn't print V2 250, 258
- printer loses text V2 256
- printer output is garbled V2 253
- printer runs out of memory V2 257
- TrueType fonts don't print V2 254–255

registration database V2 245–246

serial communications

- errors during high-speed communications V2 263–264
- MS-DOS–based applications V2 264
- trouble accessing a port V2 262–263

setting up Windows 3.1

- incompatible memory-resident programs V2 236
- setting up special hardware V2 235–236
- Setup repeatedly prompts for the same disk V2 235
- Setup stops before it is complete V2 233–234

setting up Windows for Workgroups 3.11

- conflicting memory-resident program (TSR) V1 140
- Setup program stops before completing V1 139
- Windows won't start after Setup V1 140–141
- your system locks up V1 139

starting the network before Windows V1 145

starting Windows

- enhanced mode not available V2 237–238
- Windows won't start V2 236–237
- without the network V1 140

starting Windows for Workgroups V1 140–141

- system disk, creating V2 269
- system stops responding V2 245
- Terminal V2 264–265
- testing your Windows configuration V2 269
- two versions of Windows, using V2 267

TrueType fonts

- adding V2 174–176
- described V2 15, 174
- printing problems V2 254–255
- removing V2 176–177
- using exclusively V2 176
- using with PC Fax V1 49

Tutorial for Windows

- described V2 5, 18
- running from within Windows V2 45

Twisted-pair Ethernet system V1 128–129

.TXT filename extension V2 267

Typing with a single hand, keyboard layouts for V1 102–103

Typing with motion impairment, keyboard layouts for V1 102–103

Typographic conventions V2 xviii

U

UART (Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter) chip V2 264

UMBs *See* Upper memory blocks

Underlined terms in online Help V2 103

Undo command, on application Edit menus V2 93

Undoing changes in text V2 93

Up icon in directory windows V2 106, 110

Update command, Paintbrush V2 145

Updating directory windows V2 108

Updating linked objects V2 149, 248–249

Upgrading

- from Windows for Workgroups version 3.1 V1 xi
- from Windows version 3.0 V2 6–7
- from Windows version 3.1 V1 x–xi

Upper memory area

- described V2 192
 - network software, troubleshooting V2 266
 - providing access to V2 203, 212
 - settings preserved when upgrading Windows V2 6
- #### Upper memory blocks (UMBs)
- defined V2 192
 - preventing EMM386 from loading into V2 208
 - preventing SMARTDrive from loading into V2 214

V

Version of active application, checking V2 101

Video Memory option, PIF Editor V2 261

Video Mode option, PIF Editor V2 244, 260

Key

V1

Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for
Windows User's Guide

V2

Microsoft Windows User's
Guide

Videodisc players
 playing by using Media Player V2 134
 setting up device drivers for V2 185–186

Virtual memory
 changing swap-file settings V2 196–197
 described V2 192
 enabling 32-bit disk access V1 81
 enabling 32-bit file access V1 82

VirtualHDirq option, starting Windows with V2 237–238

VirtualHDirq setting, SYSTEM.INI file V1 141

Vision impairment, products and services supporting V1 103

Voice-output screen readers, obtaining V1 103

W

Wallpaper
 displaying V2 170–171
 memory management V2 259

.WAV filename extension V2 177

WDL (Windows Driver Library) V1 102, V2 7, 183

WGPO *See* Workgroup post office

Wildcards
 renaming files or directories V2 115
 searching for files or directories V2 115
 selecting a group of files V2 110

win command V2 12
 creating the BOOTLOG.TXT file V1 140
 EMMEExclude option V1 140
 using without command-line options V1 16

VirtualHDirq option V1 141

win /3 command V2 13

win /b command V1 140

win /d:v command V1 141, V2 237

win /d:x command V1 140, V2 237

win /n command V1 140

win /s command V2 13

WIN.INI file
See also WININI.WRI online document
 adjustments for impaired motion or vision V1 104
 documentation for V2 xvii
 LPT1.DOS port V2 252
 size limitation V2 255

WIN386.SWP file V2 196, 201

Window
 application windows
 arranging V2 87
 described V2 53–54
 illustrated V2 50
 borders V2 51, 52
 closing V2 67
 dialog boxes V2 67–72
 document window, described V2 53–54
 elements of V2 51–52
 moving V2 62

Window (*continued*)
 opening *See* Opening files; Starting applications
 scrolling through information in V2 66
 size, changing
 by dragging a border or corner V2 63–65
 by enlarging to maximum size V2 64
 by reducing to an icon V2 63–64
 by restoring to previous size V2 65

snapshot
 copying onto the Clipboard V2 95
 troubleshooting V2 243

switching between a window and a full screen V2 220

title bar (illustrated) V2 51

Window option, Settings command V2 159

Window title, changing V2 76

Windows command line V2 13

Windows Driver Library (WDL) V1 102, V2 7, 183

Windows for Workgroups version 3.1, upgrading from V1 xi

Windows for Workgroups version 3.11
See also Improving performance; Troubleshooting
 Access Pack for Windows, obtaining V1 102
 adjustments for impaired motion or vision V1 104–105
 described V1 ix
 Dvorak keyboard layouts, obtaining V1 102–103
 logging on
 how to log on V1 16–17
 startup settings, changing V1 78–79
 without a password V1 79

new features, described V1 ix, xii–xv
 overview of networking V1 1–11
 setting up
 Custom Setup V1 15
 Express Setup V1 15
 for use with other networks V1 85–86
 running Setup V1 13–14
 setting options for sharing resources V1 20
 troubleshooting V1 139–141

starting V1 16
 starting without the network V1 140

Windows NT Advanced Server V1 85

Windows NT operating system
 connecting to servers, troubleshooting V1 145
 logging on to a domain automatically V1 79
 passwords V1 79, 88
 setting options in Control Panel V1 88
 sharing resources V1 85

WinPopup, sending and receiving messages V1 73–74

Windows Online Tutorial
 described V2 5, 18
 running from within Windows V2 45

Windows Setup icon
 network adapter settings, changing V1 148
 protocols, checking V1 143

- Windows Setup program *See* Setup program
- Windows text files (online documents)
described V1 xvi, V2 xvii
opening and reading V2 268
- Windows Tutorial
described V2 5, 18
running from within Windows V2 45
- Windows version 3.0, upgrading from V2 6–7
- Windows version 3.1
configuration, minimum V2 269
guided tour V2 23–44
mode, determining V2 101
new features V2 15–21
problems *See* Troubleshooting
quitting V2 44
requirements, hardware and software V2 xvi
setting up
Custom Setup V2 4–5
Express Setup V2 3–4
network setup V2 8–9
running Setup V2 5
troubleshooting V2 233–239
- starting
from the AUTOEXEC.BAT file V2 12
mode, specifying V2 12
network, starting before Windows V2 232
sample command lines V2 13
specifying an application or MS-DOS command V2 13
troubleshooting V2 236–237
without command-line options V2 12
upgrading from V1 x–xi
upgrading from Windows version 3.0 V2 6–7
using two versions of Windows V2 267
- Windows-based applications *See* Applications
- WININI.WRI online document V1 xvi, V2 xvii
- WinMeter, described V1 73
- WinPopup
See also online Help for WinPopup
described V1 73–74
starting V1 74
startup setting for V1 79
- WINSTART.BAT batch file V2 195
- Word processing with Write V2 138
- Workgroup Add-On for Windows
See also Windows for Workgroups version 3.11
features, described V1 ix, xii–xv
requirements, hardware and software V1 x, xi
- Workgroup post office (WGPO)
See also MAIL.WRI online document
adding a person's name to V1 94–95
computer, leaving on at all times V1 91
connecting to V1 33–34
creating V1 90–92
disk space requirements V1 90
MSMAIL.INI file V1 98
sharing the post office directory V1 93
troubleshooting V1 150
users connected to different post offices V1 89
- Workgroups
Chat messages, exchanging V1 70
closing files in shared directories V1 24
defined V1 2
monitoring connections and shared resources V1 71
monitoring CPU or printer use V1 73
overview of V1 2–7
setting up sharing of resources V1 19–20
settings, changing V1 78
sharing directories
connecting to shared directories V1 21–22
disconnecting from network drives V1 22
displaying names of people sharing files V1 24
how to share directories V1 23
how to stop sharing directories V1 24
passwords, assigning V1 23
sharing printers
connecting to network printers V1 27–28
disconnecting from a network printer V1 28
how to share printers V1 29
how to stop sharing printers V1 29
passwords, assigning V1 23
- Working directory for an application V2 77
- Workstation, diskless V2 8
- .WRI filename extension V2 267
- Write
See also online Help in Write
described V2 138
editing embedded objects V2 145
editing linked objects V2 148
embedding objects in documents V2 145
keyboard shortcuts V2 228
linking objects to documents V2 148

X

XMS Memory option, PIF Editor V2 260

Key

V1	Microsoft Workgroup Add-On for Windows User's Guide	V2	Microsoft Windows User's Guide
----	--------------------------------------------------------	----	-----------------------------------

